

**THE**

**Carl W. Hart**

# ULTIMATE

# PHRASAL VERB BOOK

**SECOND EDITION**

**FOR ESL AND EFL STUDENTS**

**Understanding Phrasal Verbs  
Is Vital to Understanding English**

**400 common phrasal verbs with  
examples**

**turn into  
end up  
work out  
get over  
come up with  
look forward to  
... and hundreds more**

**Plus—  
Sample sentences to  
demonstrate usage  
Hundreds of exercises to  
sharpen your fluency**

**BARRON'S**

Copyrighted material



© Copyright 2009, 1999 by Carl W. Hart

All rights reserved.

No part of this book may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any other means without the written permission of the copyright owner.

*All inquiries should be addressed to:*

Barron's Educational Series, Inc.

250 Wireless Boulevard

Hauppauge, New York 11788

**www.barronseduc.com**

*Library of Congress Catalog Card No.: 2008051605*

ISBN-13: 978-0-7641-4120-1

ISBN-10: 0-7641-4120-1

### **Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data**

Hart, Carl W.

The ultimate phrasal verb book / by Carl W. Hart. —2nd ed.

p. cm.

Includes index.

ISBN-13: 978-0-7641-4120-1

ISBN-10: 0-7641-4120-1

1. English language — Verb phrase—Problems, exercises, etc. 2. English language—Textbooks for foreign speakers. I. Title.

PE1319.H35 2009

428.2'4 — dc22

2008051605

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

9 8 7 6 5 4 3



# 1. FOCUS ON: separable and nonseparable phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs are either *separable* or *nonseparable*. Unfortunately, there is no rule that will help you to look at a phrasal verb and always know whether it is separable or nonseparable.

## Separable phrasal verbs

Separable phrasal verbs can be separated by their object. When the object is a noun, it is optional whether the object is placed between the verb and the particle or placed after the particle. Both sentences below are correct:

*I **took** my shoes **off**.*  
*I **took off** my shoes.*

However, when a pronoun is used instead of a noun, the pronoun must be placed between the verb and the particle:

*I **took** them **off**.*  
*~~I **took off** them.~~*

But in one type of sentence, separable phrasal verbs must be separated — when the phrasal verb has two objects:

*She **put** a blanket **on**.*  
*She **put on** a blanket.*

*She **put** a blanket **on** the bed.*  
*~~She **put on** a blanket the bed.~~*

## Nonseparable phrasal verbs

Nonseparable phrasal verbs cannot be separated by their object:

*He **ran into** a tree.*  
*~~He **ran** a tree **into**.~~*

Throughout this book, phrasal verbs that can be separated have three dots (...) between the verb and the particle.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	come from & comes from	coming from	came from	come from

**1. come from** *p.v.* When you **come from** a place, you were born there or lived there previously. When you **come from** a family or a social situation, your past experience helps to explain your present attitudes and behavior.

*Mike **comes from** Alaska, so he's used to cold weather.*  
*Jane had a difficult childhood. She **came from** a broken home.*



**2. come from** p.v. When something **comes from** a source, that is where it originated.

*The word “algebra” **comes from** Arabic.*  
*The mechanic heard a strange sound **coming from** the engine.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
figure out	figure out & figures out	figuring out	figured out	figured out

**1. figure ... out** p.v. [the object can be a noun or a noun clause] When you **figure out** something, such as the answer to a question, the solution to a problem, or why a person is a certain way or acts a certain way, you think about and succeed in understanding it.

*Joe’s so hostile all the time. I can’t **figure him out**.*  
*I looked everywhere for my keys, but I couldn’t **figure out** where I put them.*

give back	give back & gives back	giving back	gave back	given back
-----------	------------------------	-------------	-----------	------------

**1. give ... back** (to) p.v. When you return something to someone, you **give it back**.

*Can I use your pen? I’ll **give it back** after the test.*  
*Timmy, **give** that toy **back** to your sister right now!*

look for	look for & looks for	looking for	looked for	looked for
----------	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. look for** p.v. When you **look for** things or people, you try to find them.

*I **looked for** you at the party, but I didn’t see you.*  
*Excuse me, can you help me? I’m **looking for** 303 Main Street.*

put on	put on & puts on	putting on	put on	put on
--------	------------------	------------	--------	--------

**1. put ... on** p.v. When you place something on your body or apply something to your body, you **put it on**.

*I **put on** my new dress before going to the party.*  
*Erik forgot to **put** suntan lotion **on**, and now he’s as red as a lobster.*

**2. put ... on** p.v. When you place something on another surface or apply something to another surface, you **put it on**.

*I **put** the book **on** the table.*  
*Jerry **put** too much fertilizer **on** his lawn, and now he has to cut it twice a week.*

**3. put ... on** p.v. When you attach or affix something to another thing, you **put it on**.

*The Wilsons **put** a new roof **on** their house last year.*  
*I told the tailor to **put** red buttons **on** the dress he’s making for me.*

**4. put ... on** p.v. When you **put on** weight, you gain weight.



Did you see Mike? He’s **put on** so much weight that I didn’t recognize him.  
I need to go on a diet. I’ve been **putting** a lot of weight **on** lately.

**5. put ... on** p.v. When you organize or perform something for other people’s entertainment, such as a play or a concert, you **put it on**.

That opera hasn’t been **put on** for more than 200 years.  
The club **put** a show **on** to raise money for the party.

**6. put ... on** p.v. [informal] When you **put** people **on**, you kid or tease them.

You won the lottery? You’re **putting** me **on**!  
Don’t **put** me **on** — tell me the truth.

**put-on** n. Something done with the intention of fooling or deceiving people is a **put-on**.

He didn’t really win the lottery. It was all a big **put-on** to impress his girlfriend.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
run into	run into & runs into	running into	ran into	run into

**1. run into** p.v. When you are driving and hit another vehicle or something near the road, such as a tree or a telephone pole, you **run into** it.

Ali was driving too fast, and he **ran into** a telephone pole.  
I was **run into** by a semi truck.

**2. run into** p.v. When you meet people unexpectedly or unintentionally, you **run into** them. **Bump into** is the same as **run into**.

We **ran into** Karen and her new boyfriend at the supermarket yesterday.  
I owe Frank \$300, so I hope I don’t **run into** him.

**3. run into** p.v. When you unexpectedly encounter difficulties or problems, you **run into** them.

I thought it would be easy to fix my car, but I’ve been **running into** problems.  
Janice **ran into** one problem after another at work today.

**4. run into** p.v. When the total of something grows to a large amount or number, it **runs into** that amount or number.

If you fixed everything on that old car that needs fixing, it would **run into** thousands of dollars.  
The number of starving people in the country **ran into** millions.

show up				
	show up & shows up	showing up	showed up	shown up

**1. show up** p.v. When you appear somewhere, you **show up**. **Turn up** is similar to **show up**.



*I was supposed to meet my sister for lunch, but she hasn't **shown up** yet.*  
*Over a hundred people **showed up** for the news conference.*

2. **show up** p.v. When something appears or becomes visible, it **shows up**.  
*It's hard to photograph polar bears because they don't **show up** well against the snow.*  
*The spots won't **show up** until the last stages of the disease.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	take off	taking off	took off	taken off

1. **take ... off** p.v. When you remove something from your body, you **take** it **off**.  
*I was so tired when I got home that I **took** my clothes **off** and went straight to bed.*  
***Take off** your shoes. You're getting mud on the carpet.*
2. **take ... off** p.v. When you remove something from a surface, you **take** it **off**.  
*I **took** the book **off** the table.*  
*You need to **take** the old wax **off** the floor before you wax it again.*
3. **take ... off** p.v. When you remove something from something it is attached or affixed to, you **take** it **off**.  
*Chuck always **takes** the skin **off** chicken before he cooks it.*  
*After Jane **took** the flat tire **off** her bicycle, she put on the new one.*
4. **take ... off** p.v. When you **take** time **off** from work or study, you do something different, instead of working or studying.  
*I can't work tomorrow. I have to **take** the day **off** for some tests at the hospital.*  
*Our company always lets us **take** the week between Christmas and New Year's Day **off**.*

5. **take off** p.v. When an airplane leaves the ground and flies up into the air, it **takes off**.  
*Our plane **took off** an hour late because of the snow.*  
*Put on your seat belt. We're **taking off** now.*

**takeoff** n. **Takeoff** is when an airplane leaves the ground and flies up into the air.  
*The **takeoff** was delayed because of the snow.*

6. **take off** p.v. When a business or other organized activity becomes very successful, it **takes off**.  
*The new restaurant's business is **taking off** because it got a good review in the newspaper.*  
*If this business **takes off**, we could make a lot of money.*

7. **take off** p.v. [informal] When you leave suddenly or quickly, you **take off**.



After he found out the FBI was looking for him, he **took off** in a hurry.

This party's boring — let's **take off**.

**8. take ... off** p.v. When you reduce the price of something that is for sale by a certain amount, you **take** that amount **off** the price.

The sign in the store window said, "Every Monday **take** 10 percent **off** all marked prices."

The car dealer **took** \$2,000 **off** the list price.

**EXERCISE 1a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

**Example:** Sergeant Jones is very strict with his children. He comes  
from a military family.

1. After the police arrived, we \_\_\_\_\_ quickly.
2. Sales of air conditioners really \_\_\_\_\_ when the temperature got over 100 degrees last summer.
3. Megan \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of weight \_\_\_\_\_ when she was pregnant.
4. I'm going to install a new program tonight, and I hope I don't \_\_\_\_\_ any problems.
5. The invisible ink \_\_\_\_\_ only under ultraviolet light.
6. I was expecting 100 people at the party, but only around 50 \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Jane was lucky. She \_\_\_\_\_ a good family.
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ wax \_\_\_\_\_ on my car to protect the paint.
9. My cousin is so strange that even his mother can't \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I don't feel well. I think I'll \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow \_\_\_\_\_ and stay home.
11. We were scared to death when we heard voices \_\_\_\_\_ the attic.
12. My son always forgets to \_\_\_\_\_ his coat before he goes outside.
13. I was surprised when our plane \_\_\_\_\_ on time.
14. We \_\_\_\_\_ our dog all night, but we couldn't find him.
15. Paul finally \_\_\_\_\_ my CDs \_\_\_\_\_ after I asked him for them about a million times.
16. I'm not going to the party because I don't want to \_\_\_\_\_ Kevin.

separable and nonseparable phrasal verbs

- 17. The real estate agent said that we were asking too much for our house and that we should \_\_\_\_\_ at least \$10,000 \_\_\_\_\_ it if we want to sell our house.
- 18. \_\_\_\_\_ those muddy shoes before you come inside.
- 19. Sending my son to Stanford and my daughter to Yale is going to \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money.
- 20. \_\_\_\_\_ the ornaments \_\_\_\_\_ the Christmas tree isn't as much fun as putting them on.
- 21. You can't be serious — you're \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_!
- 22. Don't forget to \_\_\_\_\_ a stamp \_\_\_\_\_ that letter before you mail it.
- 23. A special performance of *The Nutcracker* was \_\_\_\_\_ at the children's hospital.
- 24. The maid \_\_\_\_\_ the dirty sheets \_\_\_\_\_ the bed.
- 25. Be careful! You almost \_\_\_\_\_ that truck back there.

EXERCISE 1b — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

**Example:** I can't *figure out*. (the answer, it)

I can't figure out the answer.  
I can't figure the answer out.  
I can't figure it out.

1. I finally *figured out*. (the instructions, them)

2. *Give back* when you are finished. (my tools, them)



3. She *put on*. (her slippers, them)

---

---

---

4. I *took off*. (my shoes, them)

---

---

---

5. The hurricane *took off*. (the roof, it)

---

---

---

EXERCISE 1c — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

**Example:** I can't understand where my wallet is. What can't I do?

You can't figure out where your wallet is.

- 1. A lot of guests didn't come to the wedding. What didn't a lot of guests do?
- 2. Raul thought about the math problem, and he knows the answer now. What did Raul do?
- 3. The jet is leaving the ground and flying into the air. What is the jet doing?
- 4. In Question 3, what would you call what the airplane did?
- 5. Omar speaks Arabic because he was born in Egypt. Why does Omar speak Arabic?
- 6. We left Bob's house quickly. What did we do?
- 7. I met Uncle John at the baseball game today. What did I do today?
- 8. The source of the smoke was a window on the tenth floor. What did the smoke do?
- 9. You almost hit a tree while you were driving your car. What did you almost do?

10. Mr. Taylor attached his name to his mailbox. What did Mr. Taylor do?
11. I have to remove the flat tire from my car. What do I have to do?
12. We didn't have any problems cooking the turkey. What did we do?
13. I'm removing the dirty dishes from the table. What am I doing?
14. Sales of the company's new product were very successful. What did sales of the company's new product do?
15. Linda is trying to find her golf ball. What is Linda doing?
16. Susie's blue eyes aren't visible in this photo. What don't Susie's eyes do in this photo?
17. Jim always forgets to place salt and pepper on the table. What does Jim always do?
18. Bill didn't go to work last Friday. What didn't Bill do?
19. Sally returned Frank's camera. What did Sally do?

---

## 2. FOCUS ON: **phrasal verbs and *do*, *does*, and *did***

Like ordinary verbs, phrasal verbs form negatives and questions with *do*, *does*, and *did*.

### Present tense questions

In the present tense, questions are formed with *do* (except when the subject is *he*, *she*, *it*, or the name of one person or thing):

*Why do I always **fall for** losers?*

*Do you sometimes **doze off** in class?*

*Do we ever **give in** to pressure?*

*How do these bottle tops **come off**?*

When the subject is *he*, *she*, *it*, or the name of one person or thing, *does* is used. Remember that the -s form of the verb is not used in questions:

*Does this welding torch **throw** sparks **up** into the air?*

### Present tense negatives

In the present tense, negatives are formed with *do not* or *don't* (except when the subject is *he*, *she*, *it*, or the name of one person or thing):



*I used to **doze off** while driving, but I don't anymore.*  
*I think he has the flu because people don't usually **throw up** when they have a cold.*  
*We don't usually **fall for** crazy stories like that.*  
*If his dogs do not **stay off** our lawn, I'm going to call the dogcatcher.*

When the subject is *he, she, it*, or the name of one person or thing, *does not* or *doesn't* is used. Remember that the *-s* form of the verb is not used in negatives:

*If Mark doesn't **pull through**, his children will not have a father.*

**Past tense questions**

In the past tense, questions are formed with *did*. Remember to use the infinitive form of the verb:

*I'm so embarrassed. Why did I **fall for** his lies?*  
*Did the patient **pull through**?*  
*How many times did he **throw up**?*  
*Did we **give in** to their demands?*  
*Did they **hear about** the explorer who was eaten by piranhas?*

**Past tense negatives**

In the past tense, negatives are formed with *did not* or *didn't*. Remember to use the infinitive form of the verb:

*I was really sick, but I didn't **throw up**.*  
*You didn't **fall for** that nonsense, I hope.*  
*He pulled and pulled, but the bowling ball did not **come off**.*  
*We didn't **hear about** the half-price sale until it was too late.*  
*I'm sorry. We tried everything, but she didn't **pull through**.*

Infinitive

	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
come off	come off & comes off	coming off	came off	come off

**1. come off** *p.v.* When something **comes off**, it becomes detached from what it was attached or fastened to.

*Be careful with this old book. The cover's **coming off**.*  
*That paint won't **come off** your hands unless you use turpentine.*

**2. come off** *p.v.* When an event **comes off**, it is successful.

*The party **came off** well. Everyone had a lot of fun.*  
*The attack didn't **come off** the way the general planned it.*

**3. come off** *p.v.* When you say "**Come off** it" to people, you are saying that you think something they have said is untrue or foolish.

*It's 2:00 A.M., you come home smelling like beer, and you say you were working late at the office? Oh, **come off** it!*

phrasal verbs and do, does, and did

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
doze off	doze off & dozes off	dozing off	dozed off	dozed off

1. **doze off** p.v. When you fall into a light sleep, you **doze off**.  
*I went to a movie last night, but it was so boring I **dozed off**.*  
*If I have a drink at lunch, I'm sure to **doze off** at my desk.*

fall for	fall for & falls for	falling for	fell for	fallen for
----------	----------------------	-------------	----------	------------

1. **fall for** p.v. When someone successfully tricks or deceives you, you **fall for** the trick or deception or you **fall for** it.  
*I feel like an idiot. The salesman promised me it was a real diamond, not glass, and I **fell for** it.*  
*Your girlfriend told you that the guy she was dancing with at the party was her brother? How could you **fall for** a story like that?*
2. **fall for** p.v. When you suddenly feel a strong attraction to someone or something, you **fall for** that person or thing.  
*Jim met Sam's sister last week, and now he calls her every day. I guess he really **fell for** her in a big way.*  
*When I saw this house, I **fell for** it immediately, and I made an offer the same day.*

give in	give in & gives in	giving in	gave in	given in
---------	--------------------	-----------	---------	----------

1. **give in** (to) p.v. When someone pressures or forces you to do something or allow something even though you do not want to, you **give in** or **give in** to their request or demand.  
*My son drove me crazy asking me to buy him a new bicycle, and I finally **gave in**.*  
*The strike lasted for eight months, but the company never **gave in** to the workers' demands.*

hear about	hear about & hears about	hearing about	heard about	heard about
------------	--------------------------	---------------	-------------	-------------

1. **hear about** p.v. When you hear and learn information about someone or something, you **hear about** it.  
*Have you **heard about** the new Thai restaurant downtown?*  
*I **heard about** the earthquake on CNN.*

pull through	pull through & pulls through	pulling through	pulled through	pulled through
--------------	------------------------------	-----------------	----------------	----------------

1. **pull through** p.v. When you recover from a serious illness or injury, you **pull through**.  
*The doctor didn't think the patient's chances were very good, but he **pulled through**.*  
*Erik is very sick, but he's young and strong, so I'm sure he'll **pull through**.*



Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
stay off	stay off & stays off	staying off	stayed off	stayed off
throw up	throw up & throws up	throwing up	threw up	thrown up

1. **stay off** p.v. When you **stay off** something, you don't walk or sit on it.

*You kids can play in the living room, but **stay off** the Persian rug.*  
*What can I do to get my cat to **stay off** the kitchen counter?*

1. **throw up** p.v. When people **throw up**, they vomit.

*Alex was so sick that he **threw up** all over my shoes.*  
*I feel like I'm going to **throw up**.*

2. **throw ... up** p.v. When something causes small particles of dirt, dust, or a liquid to rise into the air, it **throws** them **up**.

*Be careful with that chain saw — it'll **throw** sawdust **up** in your eyes.*  
*Don't stand too close to the fire. It's **throwing up** sparks.*

EXERCISE 2a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section.**  
**Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Heather calls Tom every day. I have a feeling she's \_\_\_\_\_ him.
2. I went to the shoe repair guy because the heel \_\_\_\_\_ my shoe.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ ten minutes after the movie started, and I missed the whole thing.
4. The bride drank too much champagne at her wedding reception, and she \_\_\_\_\_ all over her new husband.
5. I needed a car to go to the party, so I asked my father for his car so I could go to the library to study, and he \_\_\_\_\_ it.
6. Uncle Fred's really sick. If he \_\_\_\_\_, it'll be a miracle.
7. I just shampooed the carpet in the living room, so \_\_\_\_\_ it.
8. The surprise party \_\_\_\_\_ perfectly.
9. I don't care if you beg me all night — I'm not going to \_\_\_\_\_!
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ your brother's accident last night. Is he all right?

11. Don't get close to the fire. It's \_\_\_\_\_ ashes and sparks.
12. Do you really expect me to believe a crazy story like that? \_\_\_\_\_ it!

**EXERCISE 2b — Change the sentences to questions using *do*, *does*, or *did*.**

**Example:** Francisco usually *dozes off* after dinner.

Does Francisco usually doze off after dinner?

1. The sick boy *threw up*.
2. Rosa *falls for* every boy she meets.
3. The tops *come off* easily.
4. The dog *stays off* the bed.
5. Erik *heard about* the new job.

**EXERCISE 2c — Change the sentences to negatives using *do not* or *don't*, *does not* or *doesn't*, or *did not* or *didn't*.**

**Example:** Francisco *dozes off* after dinner.

Francisco *doesn't* doze off after dinner.

1. I always *give in* to her demands.
2. Mr. and Mrs. Taylor *fell for* the salesman's promises.
3. These machines *throw up* sparks.
4. The patient *pulled through*.
5. The plot *came off* as planned.

**EXERCISE 2d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. My mother told me not to walk on the kitchen floor. What did my mother tell me?
2. When Dan saw that new motorcycle, he decided he had to buy it no matter how much it cost.  
How did Dan feel about the motorcycle?



- 3. The students are so tired that they are starting to sleep in class. What are the students doing?
- 4. Nicole learns about everything that happens in town. What does Nicole do?
- 5. The meeting didn't happen the way I planned it. What didn't the meeting do?
- 6. You had an accident after one of the wheels separated from your car. Why did you have an accident?
- 7. You can ask a thousand times if you want to, but I'm not agreeing to your demands. What am I not doing to your demands?
- 8. My cousin made a lot of promises to me, and I believed them. How did I react to her promises?
- 9. Dr. Wood said Ted's disease is very serious, and she doesn't think there's much hope that he'll recover. What doesn't Dr. Wood think?
- 10. Timmy is very sick, and he was vomiting all night. What was Timmy doing all night?

EXERCISE 2e, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from Section 1. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review Section 1.**

- |            |           |          |          |
|------------|-----------|----------|----------|
| come from  | give back | put on   | show up  |
| figure out | look for  | run into | take off |

- 1. Look what time it is! We have to be at work in 15 minutes. We'd better \_\_\_\_\_ right now.
- 2. I waited for Joe for three hours, but he never \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. The maid \_\_\_\_\_ the clean sheets \_\_\_\_\_ the bed.
- 4. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ a job closer to home.
- 5. Potatoes originally \_\_\_\_\_ South America.
- 6. That's mine! \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ right now or I'm telling Mom!
- 7. They were injured when they \_\_\_\_\_ a truck.
- 8. The mechanic can't \_\_\_\_\_ what the problem is with my car.

3. FOCUS ON: three-word phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs are not always composed of two words. Three-word phrasal verbs are composed of a verb and two particles: the first particle is normally an adverb, and the second a preposition. Like two-word phrasal verbs, three-word phrasal verbs are either separable or nonseparable:

*I know it's been a long day, but do you **feel up to** playing tennis after dinner?*  
*Jake always **went in for** fishing when he was a kid.*  
*It was nice to meet you, and I **look forward to** seeing you again.*  
*I'm sorry I can't say yes about the motorcycle, but I have to **go along with** your mother's decision.*  
*I've **put up with** these love handles long enough — next week I'm getting liposuction.*  
*Mr. Baker tried to **screw** his ex-wife **out of** her share of the lottery prize.*  
*You **talk down to** me like I'm some kind of idiot.*  
*Karen's nervous about the job interview. She just wants to **get it over with** so she can stop worrying about it.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
feel up to	feel up to & feels up to	feeling up to	felt up to	feel up to

1. **feel up to** p.v. When you **feel up to** doing something, you have the confidence or energy to do it.

*I'm sorry to cancel, but I just don't **feel up to** going dancing tonight.*  
*The top of the mountain is only 1,000 feet away — do you **feel up to** it?*

get over with	get over with & gets over with	getting over with	got over with	gotten over with
---------------	--------------------------------	-------------------	---------------	------------------

1. **get ... over with** p.v. [always separated] When you want to **get** something **over with**, it is because it is something unpleasant that you want to finish so that you can stop worrying about it or dreading it.

*Let's fix both cavities today, doctor. I just want to **get it over with**.*  
*I think it's better to **get** the exam **over with** in the first period rather than to be nervous about it all day long.*

go along with	go along with & goes along with	going along with	went along with	gone along with
---------------	---------------------------------	------------------	-----------------	-----------------

1. **go along with** p.v. When you agree with people or agree with what they are saying, you **go along with** them.

*I understand your concern, Linda, but I have to **go along with** Maria on this matter.*  
*What's my opinion? I **go along with** Omar.*



**2. go along with** *p.v.* When you obey a rule or follow a decision, you **go along with** it.

*Mrs. Taylor wasn't happy about the committee's decision, but she **went along with** it anyway.*  
*I don't care what the boss says — I'm not **going along with** any changes that will mean longer hours for less money.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
go in for	go in for & goes in for	going in for	went in for	gone in for

**1. go in for** *p.v.* When you **go in for** a certain activity, you like it and do it regularly.  
*Bryan really **goes in for** any kind of outdoor activity.*  
*When I was a kid I **went in for** football, but I don't watch it much anymore.*

look forward to	look forward to & looks forward to	looking forward to	looked forward to	looked forward to
-----------------	------------------------------------	--------------------	-------------------	-------------------

**1. look forward to** *p.v.* When you **look forward to** something or **look forward to** doing something, you are excited about something in the future because you enjoy it or because it will benefit you in some way.  
*It's been four years since my brother went overseas. I'm **looking forward to** seeing him again.*  
*I **look forward to** an opportunity to meet with you in person.*

put up with	put up with & puts up with	putting up with	put up with	put up with
-------------	----------------------------	-----------------	-------------	-------------

**1. put up with** *p.v.* When you **put up with** something you do not like or are not happy about, you accept it and do not try to change it.  
*Her neighbors have loud parties every night, but she doesn't complain. She just **puts up with** it.*  
*My husband said, "I've **put up with** your brother long enough!"*

screw out of	screw out of & screws out of	screwing out of	screwed out of	screwed out of
--------------	------------------------------	-----------------	----------------	----------------

**1. screw ... out of** *p.v. [informal]* When you get money or something valuable from people in a dishonest way, you **screw** them **out of** it.  
*The criminal **screwed** me **out of** my life savings.*  
*Their sleazy son-in-law **screwed** them **out of** thousands of dollars.*

talk down to	talk down to & talks down to	talking down to	talked down to	talked down to
--------------	------------------------------	-----------------	----------------	----------------

**1. talk down to** *p.v.* When you **talk down to** people, you use a tone of voice or an attitude that shows you think they are less intelligent, less educated, or from a lower level of society than you.

*I was furious about the way he **talked down to** me!*

*Bob hates Jane because of the way she **talks down to** him.*

**EXERCISE 3a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Thanks for inviting me, but I don't \_\_\_\_\_ card games.
2. I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ my husband's smoking any longer.  
I told him to choose between cigarettes or me.
3. I'm sorry, but I think your plan is a big mistake, and I can't \_\_\_\_\_ it.
4. Even though Mr. Watson is the richest man in town, he never \_\_\_\_\_ people.
5. It's been only two weeks since the tragedy. I'm sure they don't \_\_\_\_\_ going to the party.
6. If that crook thinks he's going to \_\_\_\_\_ me \$500, he's crazy!
7. The whole family's going to be here for Thanksgiving, and Mom is really \_\_\_\_\_ it.
8. I volunteered to give my speech first just so I could \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Even if you don't like the rules, you have to \_\_\_\_\_ them.

**EXERCISE 3b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Jerry's brother-in-law talks to him like he's an idiot. How does Jerry's brother-in-law talk to Jerry?
2. Nicole can't work tomorrow, and she's nervous about telling her boss. What should Nicole do?
3. They paid \$5,000 too much for their house because the salesman lied to them. What did the salesman do to them?

- 4. Sally’s going to fly in an airplane for the first time, and she’s very excited about it. How does Sally feel about flying in an airplane?
- 5. The winters in Minneapolis are terrible, but you can’t move or change the weather. What do you have to do?
- 6. Erik just got out of the hospital, and he doesn’t feel strong enough to go back to work. Why can’t Erik go back to work?
- 7. I thought the new policy was an excellent idea, and I agreed with it 100 percent. How did I feel about the new policy?

EXERCISE 3c, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from Section 2. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review Section 2.**

- |          |          |              |          |
|----------|----------|--------------|----------|
| come off | fall for | hear about   | stay off |
| doze off | give in  | pull through | throw up |

- 1. Miguel told me he didn’t steal my TV, but I didn’t \_\_\_\_\_ his lies.
- 2. Jim is really sick, and he stayed home from school today. He \_\_\_\_\_ twice last night.
- 3. After a few weeks, the gold on this cheap jewelry starts to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. My son kept asking me to buy him a new bicycle, and I finally \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. If that cat doesn’t learn to \_\_\_\_\_ the table, it will have to go.
- 6. After Betty’s temperature got up to 105 degrees, we started to think she might not \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7. The meeting was so boring that I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. I just \_\_\_\_\_ your father’s death. I’m very sorry.



4. FOCUS ON: **present and past continuous phrasal verbs**

Like one-word verbs, phrasal verbs can normally be used in the *continuous* tense (also called the *progressive* tense) using the *-ing* form of the verb (also called the *present participle*) and a form of *be*:

*The principal told me you'd been **cheating on** the test.*  
*I've been **going after** my master's for nearly five years.*  
*Which dictionary is he **looking up** the words in?*  
*How will she be **paying for** her tuition bill?*  
*The compass needle couldn't be **pointing to** the south.*  
*We would be **planning for** a bigger crowd if the weather weren't so bad.*  
*They should be **wrapping** the meeting **up** in a few minutes.*  
*Thanks for all your help. I'm sorry for **putting you to** so much trouble.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	cheat on	cheating on	cheated on	cheated on

**1. cheat on** *p.v.* When you **cheat on** your sexual partner, you have sex or a romantic relationship with another person.

*Sarah filed for divorce after she caught George **cheating on** her.*  
*Can you believe it? She was **cheating on** me with my best friend!*

**2. cheat on** *p.v.* When you do something dishonest so that you can do better on a test, you **cheat on** the test.

*The teacher caught Ali **cheating on** the exam.*  
*If I didn't **cheat on** the tests, I'd never pass any of my classes.*

go after	go after & goes after	going after	went after	gone after

**1. go after** *p.v.* When you chase and try to physically stop or to attack people, you **go after** them.

*A policeman saw him stealing the car and **went after** him.*  
*Captain Morgan was ordered to **go after** the enemy soldiers.*

**2. go after** *p.v.* When law enforcement officials try to prosecute people through a legal procedure, they **go after** them.

*Federal prosecutors are now **going after** the top drug dealers.*  
*The senator introduced a bill designed to **go after** deadbeat dads.*

**3. go after** *p.v.* When a business tries to increase its profits by trying to increase its market share or its number of customers, it **goes after** them.

The tobacco company denied **going after** the teenage market.  
The CEO said he wanted to **go after** new customers in China.

**4. go after** *p.v.* When you **go after** something, you try to obtain it even though it may be difficult to do.

Sofia **went after** a degree in accounting.  
Todd trained for a year before **going after** the record in the 100-yard dash.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
look up	look up & looks up	looking up	looked up	looked up

**1. look ... up** *p.v.* When you get information from a reference book, such as a word from a dictionary or a telephone number from a telephone book, you **look** the word or number **up**.

The teacher told the students to **look** the new words **up** in a dictionary.  
I **looked up** his number, but it's not in the phone book.

**2. look ... up** *p.v.* When you locate and visit people you have not seen for a long time, you **look** them **up**.

I was in Dallas on business, and I **looked up** Dan Jones, my old college roommate.  
If you're ever in my town, **look** me **up**.

**3. look up** *p.v.* When a situation is **looking up** or starting to **look up**, it is improving.

Business was pretty bad for a while, but things are starting to **look up**.  
I'm much happier than I was last year. Things are **looking up**.

pay for	pay for & pays for	paying for	paid for	paid for
---------	--------------------	------------	----------	----------

**1. pay ... for** *p.v.* When you give someone money in exchange for something, you **pay for** it or **pay** someone **for** it.

Can I **pay for** this stuff with a credit card?  
Keith **paid** the waiter **for** his dinner.

**paid for** *part.adj.* After you have paid for something, it is **paid for**.

My car is old, but at least it's **paid for**.

**2. pay for** *p.v.* When you are punished for something, you **pay for** what you have done.

I caught the guy who's spreading these false rumors about me, and he **paid for** ruining my reputation.  
Young people think that drugs are harmless, but they'll **pay for** their foolishness someday.

present and past continuous phrasal verbs

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
plan for	plan for & plans for	planning for	planned for	planned for

**1. plan for** p.v. When you make preparations for something in the future, you **plan for** it.

*The festival was a disaster because they didn't **plan for** such a huge crowd.*  
*It's never too early to start **planning for** retirement.*

point to	point to & points to	pointing to	pointed to	pointed to
----------	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. point to** p.v. When you indicate people or things with your hand or a finger, you **point to** them. When an arrow or a sign indicates something, it **points to** it.

*The waitress couldn't hear me, so I **pointed to** my empty glass and she understood.*  
*The prosecutor asked, "Can you **point to** the man you saw carrying the gun?"*

**2. point to** p.v. When a situation or occurrence causes you to consider something else, it **points to** that thing.

*These terrible test scores **point to** a need for some major changes in our educational system.*  
*The fact that all the people with food poisoning ate tuna salad sandwiches **pointed to** contaminated mayonnaise as the source of the illness.*

put to	put to & puts to	putting to	put to	put to
--------	------------------	------------	--------	--------

**1. put ... to** p.v. When you confront people with a difficult or thought-provoking question, accusation, or proposition, you **put it to** them.

*He didn't want to tell me the truth, but I really **put it to** him, and he finally told me the whole story.*  
*When Prof. Kline **put** his theory **to** me like that, I realized what he was talking about.*

**2. put ... to** p.v. When you **put** people **to** trouble or **put** them **to** an expense, you cause them to do extra work or to spend money.

*Thanks for helping me with my flat tire. I'm sorry to **put** you **to** so much trouble.*  
*I know my father would pay my dental bill if I asked him, but I hate to **put** him **to** such an expense.*

**3. put ... to** p.v. When you **put** part of your body or something in your hand **to** something, you touch or press it to something.

*The neighbors were arguing again, so we **put** our ears **to** the wall to try to hear what they were saying.*  
*When he **put** a gun **to** my head, I realized he wasn't joking.*



Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
wrap up	wrap up & wraps up	wrapping up	wrapped up	wrapped up

**1. wrap ... up** *p.v.* When you enclose an object in some kind of paper, usually gift wrapping paper or packaging paper, you **wrap it up**.

*I have to **wrap** this gift **up** before I go to the party.*  
*The movers **wrapped up** the china with newspapers.*

**wrapped up** *part.adj.* After you enclose an object in some kind of paper, usually gift wrapping paper or packaging paper, it is **wrapped up**.

**2. wrap ... up** *p.v.* When you conclude an event that has been happening for some time, you wrap it up. **Wind up** is similar to **wrap up**.

*We **wrapped up** the meeting around 4:00 and went home.*  
*The salesman blabbered for two hours before I finally told him to **wrap it up**.*

EXERCISE 4a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. It's 12:30. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ this meeting \_\_\_\_\_ and go to lunch.
2. There was no way he could deny his guilt after the prosecutor \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ him.
3. The high crime rate \_\_\_\_\_ a need for more police officers.
4. You'll \_\_\_\_\_ what you did to me if it's the last thing I ever do!
5. The principal gave a zero to each of the students who \_\_\_\_\_ the test.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ my ear \_\_\_\_\_ the wall to try to hear what Sally was saying about me.
7. Mike is \_\_\_\_\_ the words \_\_\_\_\_ in the dictionary.
8. The police officers \_\_\_\_\_ the robbers, but they didn't catch them.
9. Linda told Ned that she would divorce him if he ever \_\_\_\_\_ her again.
10. Yes, it was quite a surprise — we didn't \_\_\_\_\_ twins.
11. We saw an arrow \_\_\_\_\_ the door at the end of the hallway.
12. After she won the silver medal, she \_\_\_\_\_ the gold.
13. Most insurance companies won't \_\_\_\_\_ plastic surgery.
14. I returned to my hometown for the first time in 40 years and \_\_\_\_\_ my first girlfriend.

present and past continuous phrasal verbs

- 15. The guy in the seafood store \_\_\_\_\_ the fish \_\_\_\_\_ in old newspapers.
- 16. The FBI is \_\_\_\_\_ major drug dealers.
- 17. These last six months have been difficult for Sally, but now things are starting to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 18. The company started in California, but now it's \_\_\_\_\_ customers all over the country.
- 19. You \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of trouble to help you move your piano, and you didn't even say thank you.

EXERCISE 4b — **Write sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

- 1. I was *looking up* in the dictionary. (a word, it)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2. I was in Boston *looking up*. (some old army buddies, them)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3. Dad's upstairs *wrapping up*. (Mom's birthday present, it)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4. The committee is *wrapping up*. (their discussion, it)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 4c — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. He showed me where the bathroom was with his finger. What did he do?
2. We're preparing for 300 wedding guests. What are we doing?
3. The situation is getting better. What is the situation doing?
4. The little boy ran away, and his father chased him and tried to catch him. What did the father do?
5. Sofia is going to try to break the record in the high jump. What is Sofia going to try to do?
6. Tom went to a lot of trouble to get his guest bedroom ready for me when I visited him. What did I do to Tom?
7. I'm giving money to the cashier for the book I want to buy. What am I doing?
8. In Question 7, how would you describe the book after I give the money to the cashier?
9. The people in the meeting are concluding the meeting. What are they doing?
10. When Rosa was in New Orleans, she looked for and visited a childhood friend. What did Rosa do to her friend?
11. Jim asked you a really difficult question. What did Jim do to you?
12. Megan is trying to find Erik's telephone number in a telephone book. What is Megan doing?
13. Tom is married, but he slept with another woman. What did Tom do to his wife?

EXERCISE 4d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

come from, 2	figure out, 1	hear about, 2	pull through, 2
fall for, 2	give in, 1	look for, 1	show up, 1

1. My father said, " \_\_\_\_\_ your mother on our first date, and we got married three months later."
2. Carmen's family \_\_\_\_\_ Michoacan around 20 years ago.
3. Paul was supposed to meet us at 8:00, but he never \_\_\_\_\_.



stress in two-word phrasal verbs

- 4. These instructions don't make any sense at all. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. After Aunt Mary's stroke, her chances didn't look good, but she \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. My daughter begged me to let her get her ears pierced, and I finally \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7. My father was listening to the radio, and he said he \_\_\_\_\_ a new car that runs on water.
- 8. I spent two hours \_\_\_\_\_ the remote control before I found it.

5. FOCUS ON: stress in two-word phrasal verbs

Nonseparable phrasal verbs

**Intransitive** nonseparable phrasal verbs (verbs that do not allow an object) are usually stressed on the particle:

*The barn got hit by lightning, and it **burned DOWN**.*  
*Ned drank so much that he **passed OUT** on the bathroom floor.*

**Transitive** nonseparable phrasal verbs (verbs that require an object) are usually stressed on the verb:

*Hank's been **CHEATING on** his wife for years.*  
*I told the teacher my dog ate my homework, but she didn't **FALL for** it.*

Separable phrasal verbs

Separable phrasal verbs (which are always transitive) are usually stressed on the particle:

*The British soldiers tried to **burn DOWN** the White House.*  
*The teacher **passed** them **OUT**.*

As the examples above show, a single phrasal verb can belong to more than one category depending on its meaning.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
break down	break down & breaks down	breaking down	broke down	broken down

- 1. **break down** p.v. When something mechanical **breaks down**, it does not function.

*I was late for work because my car **broke down**.*

*This photocopier is a piece of junk — it **breaks down** every day.*

**broken-down** *part.adj.* When something is old, in bad condition, or not functioning properly, it is **broken-down**.

*My car is a **broken-down** piece of junk.*

**breakdown** *n.* A **breakdown** is a situation in which something mechanical has **broken down**.

*After that last **breakdown**, I decided it was time for a new car.*

**2. break down** *p.v.* When an arrangement, agreement, negotiation, plan, or marriage **breaks down**, one or more persons involved is not cooperating or participating because of a disagreement or problem.

*After he started drinking heavily, their marriage started to **break down**.*

*The peace negotiations **broke down** because neither side was willing to compromise.*

**breakdown** *n.* A situation in which an arrangement, agreement, negotiation, plan, or marriage has **broken down** is a **breakdown**.

*Neither side would give an inch, and there was a **breakdown** in the negotiations.*

**3. break down** *p.v.* When you **break down**, you lose self-control and become emotionally or mentally confused.

*When the judge sentenced Jones to life in prison, he **broke down** and begged for mercy.*

*Tom **breaks down** whenever he thinks of the tragedy.*

**breakdown** *n.* A situation in which someone has **broken down** and is very upset or confused is a **breakdown**.

*Marty had a complete mental **breakdown** and started to see invisible people.*

**4. break down** *p.v.* When something decomposes or reduces to its smallest parts or is reduced by someone to its smallest parts, it **breaks down**.

*After the poison **breaks down**, it's quite harmless.*

*Anticoagulant drugs are used to **break down** blood clots.*

**5. break ... down** *p.v.* When you reduce a process, situation, problem, plan, or idea to its basic parts to make it easier to understand, you **break it down**.

*The professor's plan seemed really complicated, but after he **broke it down** for us, we understood it a little better.*

*If you **break** the manufacturing process **down** into steps, it's easier to train new workers.*

**6. break ... down** *p.v.* When you use force to go through a door that is locked, you **break it down**.

The police **broke** the door **down** and arrested the bank robbers.  
A door had to be **broken down** to rescue the people trapped by the fire.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
burn down	burn down & burns down	burning down	burned down	burned down

1. **burn ... down** p.v. When a building or other structure **burns down** or someone **burns it down**, it is completely destroyed by fire.

Though most of Chicago **burned down** in 1871, a few buildings survived.  
The owner was arrested for deliberately **burning** his factory **down**.

call in	call in & calls in	calling in	called in	called in
---------	--------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

1. **call in** p.v. When you call your place of employment to say you cannot work that day because you are sick, you **call in** or **call in** sick.

The manager was angry when her secretary **called in** three days in a row.  
**Calling in** sick too often is a good way to get fired.

2. **call ... in** p.v. When you request the help of people or of an organization with more experience, power, or knowledge to help with a problem or difficult project, you **call them in**.

When the local police couldn't handle the riot, the National Guard was **called in**.  
The local police chief considered **calling** the FBI **in** to help solve the crime.

find out	find out & finds out	finding out	found out	found out
----------	----------------------	-------------	-----------	-----------

1. **find ... out** p.v. [not usually separated — the object can be a noun, a noun clause, or a complete sentence] When you **find out** information or a fact, you learn or become aware of that information or fact.

If you don't know when the movie starts, look in the newspaper to **find out**.  
I met a nice man at the party, but I never **found out** his name.  
I met a nice man at the party, but I never **found out** what his name was.  
I was surprised when I **found out** that he can speak 14 languages.  
I was surprised when I **found out** he can speak 14 languages.  
I tried to get the information, but I couldn't **find it out**.

hand back	hand back & hands back	handing back	handed back	handed back
-----------	------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

1. **hand ... back** (to) p.v. When you return something to a person by holding it in your hand and extending your arm, you **hand it back** or **hand it back** to that person.

The teacher will **hand** the tests **back** in third period.  
The guard **handed** my ID card **back** to me.



Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
look at	look at & looks at	looking at	looked at	looked at

1. **look at** p.v. When you focus your eyes on people or things, you **look at** them.

*I **looked at** her and told her I loved her.*  
***Look at** me when I talk to you!*

2. **look at** p.v. When you examine something or a situation and decide what to do about it, you **look at it**.

*The mechanic **looked at** my car but couldn't find anything wrong with it.*  
*Your finger might be broken. You should have Dr. Smith **look at** it.*

3. **look at** p.v. When you think a certain way or when you have an opinion about something, that is the way you **look at it**.

*The way I **look at** it, Congress is to blame for this situation, not the President.*  
*What should be done about this situation depends on how you **look at** it.*

4. **look at** p.v. [informal — always continuous] When you say that people are **looking at** an amount of money or a length of time, you mean that this is how much you think something will cost or how long something will take.

*That was a serious injury. You're **looking at** months and months of physical therapy.*  
*Putting a new roof on this house isn't going to be cheap. You're **looking at** at least \$15,000.*

pile up	pile up & piles up	piling up	piled up	piled up
---------	--------------------	-----------	----------	----------

1. **pile ... up** p.v. When things increase in number and start to form a pile, they **pile up**. When people add things to a pile, they **pile** them **up**.

*The snow **piled up** so high that I couldn't open my door.*  
*In the fall we **pile** the dead leaves **up** in the driveway and burn them.*

**piled up** part.adj. When things are in a pile, they are **piled up**.

*A lot of dirty laundry is **piled up** in the basement.*

2. **pile up** p.v. When work or something else that must be done increases faster than you can do it, it **piles up**.

*I'm really worried about money. My bills are **piling up** faster than I can pay them.*  
*My work really **piled up** while I was on vacation.*

set up	set up & sets up	setting up	set up	set up
--------	------------------	------------	--------	--------

1. **set ... up** p.v. When you arrange the parts of something so that they are in their proper position and can function, you **set it up**.

*The kids got a swing set for Christmas, and Dad had to **set it up** in the snow.*

*When you're camping, be sure to **set** your tent **up** before it gets dark.*

**set up** *part.adj.* After the parts of something are in their proper position and function properly, they are **set up**.

*The party is starting in one hour. Are the tables **set up**?*

**setup** *n.* A collection or arrangement of parts or equipment necessary for a certain procedure or task is a **setup**.

*The nurse prepared **setups** for the hospital emergency room.*

**2. set ... up** *p.v.* When you plan and organize an activity or project, you **set it up**.

*I **set up** a 4:00 meeting with Jones and his lawyer.*

***Setting up** a meeting of all 50 governors took a lot of planning.*

**set up** *part.adj.* When an activity or project is planned, arranged, or organized, it is **set up**.

*The arrangements for the wedding were very complicated, but everything is **set up** now.*

**setup** *n.* How an activity or project is planned or arranged is the **setup**.

*What's the **setup** for the Fourth of July picnic?*

**3. set ... up** *p.v. [informal]* When you commit a crime but make it appear that another, innocent person is guilty of the crime, you **set** the innocent person **up**.

*Joe robbed the bank and tried to **set me up** by leaving some of the stolen money in my apartment and then telling the police about it.*

*The detective didn't believe me when I told him I was **set up**.*

**setup** *n. [informal]* An attempt by someone to make it appear that an innocent person is guilty of a crime is a **setup**.

*I told the detective it was a **setup** and that I could prove I had been at the racetrack when the bank was robbed.*

**EXERCISE 5a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. When he heard that his brother had been killed, he \_\_\_\_\_ and cried.
2. We're expecting company. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ the card table in the dining room?
3. Can you help wash the dishes, please? They're really beginning to \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I gave the cashier my credit card, and then she \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to me.

- 5. I don't know the answer, but I'll try to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. We were very busy at work today. Two people \_\_\_\_\_ sick.
- 7. Raul \_\_\_\_\_ his watch and told me he had to leave.
- 8. My car is a real piece of junk. It \_\_\_\_\_ at least once a week.
- 9. I'm a little confused about your theory. Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ for me?
- 10. I'll tell the judge that I'm innocent and that Ned Kelly \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
- 11. Hey, any way you \_\_\_\_\_ it, one thing's for sure — we have to get more criminals off the streets and into the jails.
- 12. This is the FBI — open the door or we'll \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_!
- 13. Maybe I can fix your computer. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ it after dinner.
- 14. The family doctor has never seen a case of malaria before, so he is \_\_\_\_\_ a specialist.
- 15. Some chemical compounds start to \_\_\_\_\_ after only a few hours.
- 16. The arsonist tried to \_\_\_\_\_ several houses in the neighborhood.
- 17. The secretary is \_\_\_\_\_ a meeting.
- 18. The civil war started again after the peace talks \_\_\_\_\_.
- 19. Jim buys a newspaper every day, but he never puts it in the garbage when he is finished. Newspapers are slowly \_\_\_\_\_ in his basement.
- 20. The mechanic said, "To fix a car after an accident that bad, I'd say you're \_\_\_\_\_ at least \$4,000."

EXERCISE 5b — **Review the explanation at the beginning of this section of how two-word phrasal verbs are pronounced. Then, say each sentence in Exercise 5a aloud and circle the verb or particle that is stressed.**

EXERCISE 5c — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

- 1. The firefighters *broke down*. (the door, it)



2. They *burned down*. (the old barn, it)

3. He *called in*. (Dr. Shapiro, her)

4. Our teacher *handed back*. (the papers, them)

5. I *set up*. (the ironing board, it)

EXERCISE 5d — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. Jane arranged a baby shower. What did she do?
- 2. In Question 1, how would you describe the baby shower after Jane arranged it?
- 3. I get magazines in the mail faster than I can read them. What are my magazines doing?
- 4. In Question 3, how would you describe my magazines?
- 5. Todd returned the pen to Mark. What did Todd do?
- 6. Uncle Fred’s car had a mechanical problem, and it stopped running. What did it do?

- 8. In Question 6, what did Uncle Fred have?
- 9. The soldiers destroyed the building with fire. What did the soldiers do?
- 10. The soldiers destroyed the building with fire. What did the building do?
- 11. When the detective told Jake he could get the death penalty, he became very nervous and upset. What did Jake do?
- 12. In Question 11, what did Jake have?
- 13. Your boss was angry because you didn't call to tell her that you were sick and couldn't work. Why was your boss angry?
- 14. Judy took her new computer out of the box, connected all the cables, and got it ready to use. What did she do to her computer?
- 15. In Question 14, after Judy took her new computer out of the box, connected all the cables, and got it ready to use, how would you describe it?
- 16. The door was locked, but Hank forced it open and got inside. What did Hank do?
- 17. I learned that Ali's excuse was a big lie. What did I do?

EXERCISE 5e, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

come off, 2	go in for, 3	talk down to, 3
feel up to, 3	look forward to, 3	throw up, 2
get over with, 3	put up with, 3	
go along with, 3	stay off, 2	

- 1. Her husband is a real jerk. How does she \_\_\_\_\_ him?
- 2. I wasn't sure if Charles \_\_\_\_\_ going scuba diving again so soon after the shark attack.
- 3. I'm telling you for the last time! \_\_\_\_\_ the grass!
- 4. Can you help me with this jar? The top won't \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. I've never been to Italy, and I'm really \_\_\_\_\_ going there.

stress in three-word phrasal verbs

6. I'm sorry I can't agree with you Dad, but I have to \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ Mom.
7. When I had food poisoning, I \_\_\_\_\_ all night long.
8. You can be sure Paul will take his vacation out west. He really \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ outdoor stuff like camping and mountain climbing.
9. Can you believe the nerve of that guy in the meeting yesterday? He \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ me as if I were the stupidest guy on Earth!
10. I'm tired of arguing about the divorce settlement. I just want to \_\_\_\_\_ it  
\_\_\_\_\_.

6. FOCUS ON: stress in three-word phrasal verbs

The pronunciation of three-word phrasal verbs is generally quite simple: the second, or middle, particle is stressed regardless of whether the phrasal verb is separable or inseparable:

*I think I've **come UP with** an answer to your problem.*  
*The detective didn't **get** any information **OUT of** him.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	boil down to boil down to & boils down to	boiling down to	boiled down to	boiled down to

1. **boil down to** p.v. When you say that something **boils down to** something else, you are saying that it is the basic cause of a more complicated situation or problem.

*Most of the crime in this city **boils down to** drugs.*  
*My decision to stay at this awful job **boils down to** one thing — money.*

come down with	come down with & comes down with	coming down with	came down with	come down with

1. **come down with** p.v. When you are starting to get sick, you are **coming down with** something or **coming down with** an illness.

*I don't feel well. Maybe I'm **coming down with** something.*  
*My grandmother said, "If you don't wear an undershirt, you'll **come down with** pneumonia."*



Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
come up with	come up with & comes up with	coming up with	came up with	come up with

1. **come up with** *p.v.* When you think of an idea, plan, or solution, you **come up with** it. **Come up with** is similar to **think up**.

*It took me all night, but I **came up with** the answer.*  
*Lydia wants to **come up with** a great idea for the party.*

get around to	get around to & gets around to	getting around to	got around to	gotten/got around to
---------------	--------------------------------	-------------------	---------------	----------------------

1. **get around to** *p.v.* When you do something after waiting for some time because you are lazy, inefficient, or do not want to do it, you **get around to** it.

*I didn't **get around to** doing my taxes until April 14.*  
*Don't worry about the broken window. I'll **get around to** it one of these days.*

get out of	get out of & gets out of	getting out of	got out of	gotten/got out of
------------	--------------------------	----------------	------------	-------------------

1. **get out of** *p.v.* When you **get out of** something or **get out of** doing something you must do but do not want to do, you find a way to avoid it.

*Sam **got out of** gym class by pretending to be sick.*  
*The boss wants me to work a double shift, but I'll **get out of** it.*  
*I **got out of** going to church with my wife by pretending to be sick.*

2. **get ... out of** *p.v.* If an activity gives you pleasure, satisfaction, or some other benefit, you **get** pleasure, satisfaction, or some other benefit **out of** it.

*I sat through that boring class for three months and didn't learn a thing. I didn't **get** anything **out of** it.*  
*The judge didn't **get** any pleasure **out of** imposing such a harsh penalty.*

3. **get ... out of** *p.v.* When you use force, pressure, or deceit to get something, such as information or money, from people, you **get** it **out of** them.

*They tortured him for days, but they couldn't **get** any information **out of** him.*  
*It took me a while, but I **got** the whole story **out of** her.*

go back on	go back on & goes back on	going back on	went back on	gone back on
------------	---------------------------	---------------	--------------	--------------

1. **go back on** *p.v.* When you make a promise, but you do not do what you promised to do, you **go back on** your promise.

*I promised to take my son to a baseball game, and I'm not **going back on** my word.*  
*The President **went back on** his pledge not to raise taxes.*

stress in three-word phrasal verbs

Infinitive				
present tense		-ing form	past tense	past participle
go through with				
go through with & goes through with		going through with	went through with	gone through with

**1. go through with** *p.v.* When you do something that you have decided to do even though it may be dangerous or unpleasant or others may object, you **go through with** it.

*The spokeswoman said the company would **go through with** its plan to move the company to Mexico.*  
*Despite his family's opposition, Erik **went through with** his decision to quit his job and start his own business.*

monkey around with				
monkey around with & monkeys around with		monkeying around with	monkeyed around with	monkeyed around with

**1. monkey around with** *p.v. [informal]* When you adjust or try to repair mechanical devices even though you do not have permission or do not have the skill to do it properly, you **monkey around with** them.

*I **monkeyed around with** my camera, and I think maybe I fixed it.*  
*Frank was **monkeying around with** my printer, and now it doesn't work.*

EXERCISE 6a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. I'm not surprised that Ali stayed home from work today. Yesterday he thought he might be \_\_\_\_\_ a cold.
- 2. Last year, the company \_\_\_\_\_ its plan to move from downtown to the suburbs.
- 3. I've thought and thought, but I can't \_\_\_\_\_ any reason why your idea won't work.
- 4. Fixing the leak in the roof is going to be a big job, but I have to \_\_\_\_\_ it before the next rain.
- 5. Heather didn't want to tell me why she was mad, but I finally \_\_\_\_\_ the reason \_\_\_\_\_ her.
- 6. I don't \_\_\_\_\_ much satisfaction \_\_\_\_\_ teaching students who don't want to be in the class.

7. The explanation for our failure to solve this problem isn't complicated. It really \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ a lack of funding.
8. I think you should take your VCR to a repair shop. If you \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ it, you'll just make it worse.
9. I'm supposed to report for jury duty on Monday, but I don't want to. I've got to think of a  
way to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
10. You lied to me! You promised me you would quit smoking, and now you've \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ your word.

**EXERCISE 6b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Tom was very nervous about getting married, but he did it. What did Tom do?
2. We were in Paris for five days, but we never found time to go to the Eiffel Tower.  
What didn't we do?
3. My father said I had to cut the grass, but I told him I would do it tomorrow. What did I do?
4. Janice really likes teaching because it gives her a lot of satisfaction. Why does Janice  
like teaching?
5. Ms. Cummings thought of a way to manufacture her company's products more cheaply.  
What did Ms. Cummings do?
6. There are many reasons why one house sells for a higher price than another house, but the  
main reason is the house's location. Why does one house sell for more than another?
7. You feel a little sick now, and you think you'll have a cold tomorrow. What's happening to  
you today?
8. I don't really know what to do, but I'll try to fix the air conditioner anyway. What will I do to the  
air conditioner?
9. My wife didn't talk to me all day, but she said nothing was wrong. I asked her again and again  
what the problem was, and she finally told me. What did I do?
10. Raquel promised Alex she would go to the dance with him, but she went with Carlos instead.  
What did Raquel do?



**EXERCISE 6c, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

burn down, 5	go after, 4	look up, 4	point to, 4
cheat on, 4	hand back, 5	pile up, 5	put to, 4
find out, 5	look at, 5	plan for, 4	wrap up, 4

1. We've been at this meeting all afternoon. Don't you think we should \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and go home?
2. If we send out 75 invitations to the wedding, and everyone we invited brings his or her spouse, we should \_\_\_\_\_ 150 guests.
3. Lydia \_\_\_\_\_ her best friend from college \_\_\_\_\_ when she was in Las Vegas.
4. The students who \_\_\_\_\_ the test by writing the answers on their hands were expelled from school.
5. This camera isn't working right. I'm going to take it to Jim at the photo shop and ask him to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
6. Bill won't be happy if he \_\_\_\_\_ that you scratched his car.
7. My son's thinking about \_\_\_\_\_ his master's degree.
8. Evidence gathered after the air plane crash \_\_\_\_\_ engine failure as the cause.
9. I really \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ her, and she admitted that I was right.
10. We'd better do the laundry soon; it's starting to \_\_\_\_\_.
11. The police officer \_\_\_\_\_ my driver's license \_\_\_\_\_ to me along with a ticket.
12. The detective thinks the owner \_\_\_\_\_ his restaurant for the insurance money.

**EXERCISE 6d — Review the explanation at the beginning of Section 5 of how two-word phrasal verbs are pronounced. Then, say each sentence in Exercise 6c aloud and circle the verb or particle that is stressed.**

## 7. FOCUS ON: separable phrasal verbs with long objects

We have seen that the object of separable verbs can be placed between the verb and the particle or after the particle:

clear: *I **looked up** the word.*  
clear: *I **looked** the word **up**.*

When the object is short — one word or just a few words in length — the meaning is clear either way. However, when the object is several words long, it can be awkward and confusing to place the object between the particles:

clear: *I **looked up** the words that our teacher said were really important and would probably be on the final exam.*  
confusing: *I **looked** the words that our teacher said were really important and would probably be on the final exam **up**.*

It boils down to the following.

Short objects can be placed between the verb and the particle or after the particle:

*She **put on** her dress.*  
*She **put** her dress **on**.*

pronouns, such as *him*, *her*, and *it* must be placed between the verb and the particle:

*She **put** it **on**.*

and long objects should be placed after the particle to avoid confusion:

*She **put on** the new dress with the red, yellow, and blue flowers that she bought last week for 40 percent off.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
cut up	cut up & cuts up	cutting up	cut up	cut up

**1. cut ... up** *p.v.* When you use a knife or pair of scissors to cut something so that there are many small pieces, you **cut it up**.

*The boy's mother is **cutting** a piece of meat **up** for him.*  
*I was so angry at her that I **cut** her picture **up** and flushed it down the toilet.*

**cut up** *part.adj.* After something has been **cut up**, it is **cut up**.

*This steak is for Aunt Kathy, but give the **cut-up** one to Uncle Fred — he doesn't have any teeth.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
hold up	hold up & holds up	holding up	held up	held up

**1. hold ... up** *p.v.* When a wall, column, or other structure supports the weight of something above it, such as a ceiling, it **holds it up**.

*The workers were injured when they removed a column **holding** the roof **up**.*  
*The house was **held up** by jacks while the foundation was repaired.*

**2. hold ... up** *p.v.* When you prevent something from happening or cause it to happen late, you **hold it up**. When things or people delay you, they **hold you up**.

*The band hasn't arrived yet, and they're **holding up** the whole wedding.*  
*I'm sorry I'm late. I was **held up** by traffic.*

**holdup** *n.* Something that prevents something else from happening or causes it to happen late is a **holdup**.

*Why haven't you finished this work yet? What's the **holdup**?*

**3. hold ... up** *p.v.* When you use a gun or other weapon to rob a person, bank, or store, you **hold it up**. **Stick up** is the same as **hold up**.

*The jewelry store owner was **held up** by three men wearing ski masks.*  
*Some idiot tried to **hold** the bank **up** with a toy gun.*

**holdup** *n.* When someone uses a gun or other weapon to rob a person, bank, or store, it is a **holdup**. A **stickup** is the same as a **holdup**.

*The robber fired his gun in the air and yelled, "This is a **holdup**."*  
*There was a **holdup** at First National Bank this morning.*

**4. hold up** *p.v.* When an object remains in good condition after heavy use, it **holds up**.

*These cheap shoes won't **hold up** more than six weeks.*  
*Some Roman aqueducts have **held up** for 2,000 years.*

**5. hold up** *p.v.* When a plan, idea, or agreement is still believed in or respected after a period of time, it has **held up**.

*Einstein's theories have **held up** despite occasional challenges.*  
*The ceasefire is **holding up** longer than anyone expected.*

let out	let out & lets out	letting out	let out	let out
---------	--------------------	-------------	---------	---------

**1. let ... out** *p.v.* When you allow animals or people to leave a place by giving permission or opening a door, you **let them out**.

*The guard **lets** the prisoners **out** of their cells every day at 1:00.*  
*I opened the door and **let** the dog **out**.*



**2. let ... out** *p.v.* When you make an item of clothing bigger by changing the seams, you **let it out**.

*After I gained 20 pounds, I had to have all my pants **let out**.  
The tailor **let** her old dress **out** so that she could wear it again.*

**3. let ... out** *p.v.* When you reveal secret or sensitive information, you **let it out**.

*This information is secret. Don't **let it out**.  
I was furious when my secretary **let out** that I had interviewed for a new position.*

**4. let out** *p.v.* When you make a sound that shows your emotion or feelings, you **let out** that sound.

*Heather knew Jim was lying again, and **let out** a sigh.  
The lion **let out** a loud roar before he attacked the hunter.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
point out	point out & points out	pointing out	pointed out	pointed out

**1. point ... out** *p.v.* When you bring things or people to someone's attention or indicate the location of things or people with your hand or index finger, you **point them out**.

*As we walked through the museum, the tour guide **pointed** several famous paintings **out**.  
General Johnston showed the satellite photo to the reporter and **pointed out** the enemy tanks.*

**2. point ... out** *p.v.* When you are writing or speaking and you stress or emphasize some important information you think the reader or listener needs to know, you **point out** the information.

*I **pointed** several flaws **out** in Prof. Taylor's theory.  
He said that he thought my plan was basically good but that he wanted to **point out** several possible problems.*

run over				
	run over & runs over	running over	ran over	run over

**1. run over (to)** *p.v.* When you run from where you are to where someone else is, you **run over** or **run over** to that person.

*I saw a man hitting a child, and I **ran over** and stopped him.  
When I saw Melanie, I **ran over** to her and gave her a big hug.*

**2. run ... over** *p.v.* When you drive over people or things with a car, truck, or other vehicle causing damage, injury, or death, you **run them over**.

*John was **run over** by a bus and injured.  
I **ran over** a glass bottle and got a flat tire.*

**3. run over** *p.v.* When liquid in a container fills the container and goes over the top, it **runs over**.

*Keep an eye on the bathtub so that it doesn't **run over**.  
There's too much water in this pot. It's going to **run over** the side.*

**4. run over** *p.v.* When you go beyond a limit, you **run over** or **run over** the limit.

*I hope the 11:00 meeting doesn't **run over**. I'm meeting a client for lunch at 12:00.  
The speaker was given 15 minutes for her speech, but she **ran over**.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
see about	see about & sees about	seeing about	saw about	seen about

**1. see ...about** *p.v.* When you talk to someone to get permission for something or to arrange something, you **see about** it or **see** someone **about** it.

*Is Luis going to **see about** changing his flight from the fifth to the sixth?  
The carpet in my office is filthy. I need to **see** the maintenance guy **about** getting it shampooed.*

**2. see about** *p.v.* When you are upset about a change or a new policy, and you want to say that you will take some action or talk to someone in authority to prevent or reverse the change or new policy, you say "I'll **see about** that" or "We'll **see about** that."

*Now they're saying I can't even smoke in my own office. I'll **see about** that!  
Those crooks in City Hall want to double my real estate taxes. We'll just **see about** that.*

take apart	take apart & takes apart	taking apart	took apart	taken apart
------------	--------------------------	--------------	------------	-------------

**1. take ...apart** *p.v.* When you completely separate the parts of something, you **take it apart**. **Take apart** is the opposite of **put together**.

*I had to **take** my bike **apart** when I moved.  
The mechanic **took** the engine **apart**.*

take in	take in & takes in	taking in	took in	taken in
---------	--------------------	-----------	---------	----------

**1. take ...in** *p.v.* When you bring a car or other household appliance to a mechanic or repair person, you **take it in**.

*Sally **took** her car **in** to have the oil changed.  
The VCR is broken again. I need to **take it in**.*

**2. take ...in** *p.v.* When you **take in** a play, movie, museum, or other attraction, you go to it or see it.

*We stopped in Charleston and **took in** the sights.  
After dinner we **took in** a movie.*

**3. take ...in** p.v. When you allow people to live with you, you **take** them **in**.

*Judy's brother had nowhere to go, so she **took** him **in**.*

*The Ortegas offered to **take** their neighbors **in** after the fire.*

**4. take ...in** p.v. [usually passive] When you are **taken in** by someone, that person successfully tricks or deceives you.

*Stalin was **taken in** by Hitler's assurances.*

*They were completely **taken in** by Jake's elaborate hoax.*

**5. take ...in** p.v. When you make an item of clothing smaller by changing the seams, you **take** it **in**. **Take in** is the opposite of **let out**.

*She likes some of her maternity clothes so much that she's going to **take** them **in** after the baby is born.*

*If I lose any more weight, I'll have to have all my pants **taken in**.*

**EXERCISE 7a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. When the bullet hit him, he \_\_\_\_\_ a slight gasp and fell dead.
2. My friends were supposed to be here an hour ago. What is \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Will you please drive more carefully! You almost \_\_\_\_\_ that lady back there.
4. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ that she was going to go to Las Vegas with her boss, and the whole office was talking about it.
5. Take two pounds of beef, \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_, and put it in a frying pan.
6. The expedition leader spoke to us and \_\_\_\_\_ the importance of taking plenty of water with us in the desert.
7. Open the gate and \_\_\_\_\_ the horses \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I'm embarrassed to admit I was \_\_\_\_\_ by his lies.
9. After Todd's parents died, his Aunt Judy and Uncle Henry \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The soldier was \_\_\_\_\_ his rifle \_\_\_\_\_ and cleaning it.
11. In Ecuador I rode on a steam locomotive that's still \_\_\_\_\_ after 80 years.



12. After we saw the Empire State Building, we \_\_\_\_\_ a Broadway play.
13. These aluminum poles \_\_\_\_\_ the tent.
14. Nicole went to the computer store \_\_\_\_\_ getting more memory installed in her computer.
15. I had my old uniform \_\_\_\_\_ so that I could wear it to the reunion.
16. A robber \_\_\_\_\_ a bank with a shotgun last night.
17. When I got into the tub, the water \_\_\_\_\_ the side and onto the floor.
18. The health department inspector walked around the restaurant and \_\_\_\_\_ several rats \_\_\_\_\_ to the owner.
19. Jim's phone was ringing, so I \_\_\_\_\_ to his desk and answered it.
20. The suit was too big, but the store's tailor said he could \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
21. I heard a weird noise coming from my car's transmission. I think I'd better \_\_\_\_\_ my car \_\_\_\_\_.
22. It's an unusual arrangement, but it has \_\_\_\_\_ for several years.
23. The conference is scheduled to end Tuesday at 5:00, but there's a good chance that it will \_\_\_\_\_.
24. I was just notified that I'm going to be transferred to Mongolia. We'll \_\_\_\_\_ that! I'm going to talk to the boss.
25. The robber was shot while trying to \_\_\_\_\_ an off-duty police officer.

**EXERCISE 7b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses.**

1. The cook *cut up*. (the meat, it)

---



---



---

2. The snowstorm *held up*. (air travelers, them)

---



---



---

3. Don't *let out*. (the dog, it)

---

---

---

4. The real estate agent *pointed out*. (the swimming pool, it)

---

---

---

5. The truck *ran over*. (the man, him)

---

---

---

6. I'm going to *take apart*. (the broken doorknob, it)

---

---

---

7. The tailor *took in*. (the pants, them)

---

---

---

EXERCISE 7c — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. I don't like this hotel room. I'm going to ask the desk clerk about changing to a different room. What am I going to do?
- 2. No one believes in the scientist's theories anymore. What haven't the scientist's theories done?
- 3. Janice is going to make her pants smaller. What is she going to do?
- 4. Mr. Ortega was tricked by the salesman. What happened to Mr. Ortega?

5. A car drove over you. What happened to you?
6. The jeweler showed me several flaws in the diamond. What did the jeweler do?
7. The game started late because it was raining. What did the rain do?
8. Susie is using scissors to make several small pieces of paper from a larger piece of paper. What is Susie doing?
9. The posts are supporting the porch. What are the posts doing?
10. The woman told the bank teller to give her all the money in the cash register or she would shoot him. What did the woman do?
11. In Question 10, what happened at the bank?
12. I put my broken TV in my car, drove to the repair shop, and carried the TV in. What did I do to my TV?
13. Bill separated all the parts of his typewriter. What did Bill do?
14. There was too much water in the bathtub, and it spilled onto the floor. What did the water do?
15. After my parents died, my grandparents let me live with them. What did my grandparents do?
16. Mr. Young told some people about the secret information. What did Mr. Young do with the secret information?
17. I saw an empty luggage cart at the airport, and I went to it quickly and grabbed it. What did I do?
18. When the thief started to open the woman's door, a scream came from her mouth. What did the woman do?
19. I've been using this lawn mower for twenty-five years, and it still works fine. What has the lawn mower done?
20. The cowboy opened the gate so that the cattle could leave the corral. What did the cowboy do?
21. Dr. Smith went to a museum while he was in Rome. What did Dr. Smith do?
22. The meeting was supposed to end at 2:00, but it hasn't ended yet. What is the meeting doing?
23. I'm making my pants bigger. What am I doing?



EXERCISE 7d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

boil down to, 6	figure out, 1	go through with, 6
come down with, 6	get around to, 6	look forward to, 3
come off, 2	get out of, 6	monkey around with, 6
come up with, 6	go after, 4	put on, 1
doze off, 2	go back on, 6	

1. I thought about what I was going to say to her, but when the time came, I was so nervous I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ it.
2. The President's news conference didn't \_\_\_\_\_ well because it revealed his poor understanding of the situation.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ watching Aunt Kathy's vacation videotape by saying I had to study for a test.
4. I don't usually \_\_\_\_\_ doing my Christmas shopping until December 24.
5. I've been \_\_\_\_\_ this broken refrigerator all day, but I still don't know what's wrong with it.
6. Mexico City's problems \_\_\_\_\_ one thing — too many people.
7. Have you seen my pen? I can't \_\_\_\_\_ what happened to it.
8. If you \_\_\_\_\_ a coat of paint \_\_\_\_\_ that old house, it wouldn't look so bad.
9. One police officer helped the mugging victim while her partner \_\_\_\_\_ the mugger.
10. My son promised that he would stop cutting school, and so far he hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ that promise.
11. The company \_\_\_\_\_ a way to decrease labor costs without lowering wages.
12. I have never been to Thailand, and I'm really \_\_\_\_\_ going there.
13. She was so tired she \_\_\_\_\_ as soon as she sat down.
14. The show was canceled after the star \_\_\_\_\_ laryngitis.

## 8. FOCUS ON: present perfect phrasal verbs

The *present perfect* is used to talk about the past and the present at the same time:

*They have **torn down** the building.* (The building is not there now because they tore it down in the past.)

or to say that something is completed:

*She has **picked out** some library books.*

The present perfect is formed with *have*, or when the subject is *he, she, it*, or the name of one person or thing, *has*, and the *past participle* of the verb:

- present: *The tree **falls over**.*
- past: *The tree **fell over**.*
- present perfect: *The tree has **fallen over**.*

Remember that *have* can be combined with pronouns as *'ve*:

*Theyve never **heard of** him.*

and *has* with nouns and pronouns as *'s*:

- The trees **fallen over**.*
- Hes never **heard of** her.*

Be careful not to confuse the *'s* contraction of *has* and the *'s* contraction of *is*:

- Shes **picked out** some library books. (She has ...)*
- Shes **picking out** some library books. (She is ...)*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	burn out	burning out	burned out	burned out

**1. burn out** *p.v.* When a fire, candle, or other flame stops burning because it has no more fuel, it **burns out**.

- We need more wood. The fire has **burned out**.*
- Don't worry. The sun won't **burn out** for another four billion years.*

**burned-out** *part.adj.* After a fire, candle, or other flame stops burning because it has no more fuel, it is **burned-out**.

*The **burned-out** rocket landed in the ocean.*

**burned-out** *part.adj.* When people are extremely tired, either physically or psychologically, because of stress or hard work, they are **burned-out**.

*Teaching those awful students for so many years has left him **burned-out**.*  
*Taking care of four small children day after day would leave any mother **burned-out**.*

**2. burn out** *p.v.* When a light bulb stops producing light because it has reached the end of its useful life, it **burns out**.

*These new bulbs are guaranteed not to **burn out** for ten years.*  
*I can't see what I'm doing because this bulb has **burned out**.*

**burned-out** *part.adj.* A light bulb that no longer produces light because it has reached the end of its useful life is **burned-out**.

*I climbed the ladder and unscrewed the **burned-out** bulb.*

**3. burn ... out** *p.v.* When people are forced to leave their home or some other shelter or hiding place because of fire or fire damage, they are **burned out**.

*The only way to get the enemy soldiers out of the tunnels was to **burn them out**.*  
*Seven families were **burned out** of their homes by the huge fire.*

**burned-out** *part.adj.* Something that has been damaged or destroyed by fire is **burned-out**.

*After the war, nothing was left but **burned-out** cars and buildings.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
fall over	fall over & falls over	falling over	fell over	fallen over

**1. fall over** *p.v.* When people or things **fall over**, they fall to the ground from an upright position.

*That tree has been dead for 50 years, but it still hasn't **fallen over**.*  
*I almost **fell over** when I heard the terrible news.*

**2. fall over** *p.v.* When you **fall over** yourself or (usually) **fall all over** yourself, you try so hard to serve someone or to make someone like you that you appear foolish.

*The supervisor **fell all over** himself trying to satisfy the customer.*  
*Mike was **falling all over** himself trying to impress Heather.*

fight back	fight back & fights back	fighting back	fought back	fought back
------------	--------------------------	---------------	-------------	-------------

**1. fight back** *p.v.* When you **fight back**, you fight, either physically or with words, someone or something that attacked you first.

*The soldiers **fought back** bravely, but the situation was hopeless.*  
*After being accused of corruption, the senator said she would **fight back** and prove her innocence.*



**2. fight back** *p.v.* When you **fight back** an emotional response, such as tears or fear, you try very hard to overcome the emotion.

*The mother **fought back** tears when she saw the little white coffins.  
I had to **fight back** the urge to punch him in the nose.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
hear of	hear of & hears of	hearing of	heard of	heard of

**1. hear of** *p.v.* When you learn about something for the first time, you **hear of** it.

*Do I know Fred Smith? No, I've never **heard of** him.  
I told my real estate agent, "If you **hear of** a good deal on a three-bedroom house, please call me right away."*

**2. hear of** *p.v.* When you learn information about something that makes you angry and you say you will not **hear of** it, you mean that you will not tolerate or allow it.

*Our daughter wants to fly to Mexico with her boyfriend? I won't **hear of** it!  
I told him that his scheme was outrageous and that I wouldn't **hear of** such a thing.*

pick out	pick out & picks out	picking out	picked out	picked out
----------	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. pick ... out** *p.v.* When you choose something from a group because you prefer it to the others in the group, you **pick it out**.

*Have you **picked out** a dress to wear to the party yet?  
Mike's dog had puppies, and he asked me to **pick one out**.*

**2. pick ... out** *p.v.* When you are able to find and recognize something in a group, you **pick it out**.

*Even though the class photo was fifty years old, I **picked** my father **out** easily.  
The police detective asked me if I could **pick** the mugger **out** from a group of photos.*

ring up	ring up & rings up	ringing up	rang up	rung up
---------	--------------------	------------	---------	---------

**1. ring ... up** *p.v.* When you want to buy something in a store, a cashier uses a cash register to **ring up** what you want to buy in order to determine how much money you must pay.

*Well, I guess I'll take this one. Can you **ring it up** please?  
I couldn't believe it when the clerk finished **ringing** it all **up** — \$946!*

tear down	tear down & tears down	tearing down	tore down	torn down
-----------	------------------------	--------------	-----------	-----------

**1. tear ... down** *p.v.* When you **tear down** a building, you deliberately and completely destroy it.

They **tore** so many old buildings **down** in my hometown that I barely recognize it.  
A lot of smaller homes in the suburbs are being **torn down** and replaced with larger ones.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
work in	work in & works in	working in	worked in	worked in

**1. work ... in** p.v. When you make room, with some difficulty, for something in a schedule or plan, you **work** it **in**.

We're going to be in Chicago for only a couple of days, but I'll try to **work in** a Cubs game.  
I told him my schedule was pretty tight, but that I'd try to **work** the meeting **in**.

EXERCISE 8a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. The Leaning Tower of Pisa still hasn't \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Every year I have to replace the Christmas tree lights that have \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The enemy was so strong that there was no way we could have \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.
4. They'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ most of the buildings that were damaged by  
the earthquake.
5. Sarah always tries to \_\_\_\_\_ a little sightseeing on her business trips.
6. My brother is pretty easy to \_\_\_\_\_ in a crowd — he's almost seven  
feet tall.
7. If you haven't \_\_\_\_\_ a book yet, you'd better hurry — the library's  
closing in five minutes.
8. The firefighters decided to let the fire in the lumberyard \_\_\_\_\_ itself \_\_\_\_\_.
9. That cashier has been yakking with his friends for ten minutes and still hasn't \_\_\_\_\_  
our stuff \_\_\_\_\_.
10. A screen door on a submarine? That's the most ridiculous thing I've ever \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.

present perfect phrasal verbs

11. When I told the waiter I was the owner of the restaurant, he \_\_\_\_\_ all \_\_\_\_\_ himself trying please me.
12. The taco stand moved across the street after it was \_\_\_\_\_ by the fire.
13. When I found out that one of my employees cheated a customer, I said I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ such a thing in my store.
14. I had to \_\_\_\_\_ my fear as I waited for my turn to jump from the plane.

EXERCISE 8b — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

1. The sheriff *burned out*. (the escaped convicts, them)

---

---

---

2. Bill has *picked out*. (a new car, one)

---

---

---

3. The clerk hasn't *rung up* yet. (these CDs, them)

---

---

---

4. The new owners have *torn down*. (the garage, it)

---

---

---

5. The mayor tried to *work in*. (a tour of the factory, it)

---

---

---



**EXERCISE 8c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Make all the phrasal verbs present perfect.**

1. I asked my father if I could smoke in the house, and he became angry and said he wouldn't allow it. What did my father say about smoking in the house?
2. The forest fire has stopped because there aren't any more trees left to burn. What has the fire done?
3. The cashier has totaled how much we must pay for our groceries. What has the cashier done?
4. They have chosen a hotel for their wedding reception. What have they done?
5. Sally's mother couldn't stop her tears. What couldn't Sally's mother do?
6. One of my car's headlights isn't working anymore. What did the headlight do?
7. In Question 6, how would you describe the headlight?
8. The stack of books was too high, and now the books are on the floor. What did the books do?
9. The coffee shop had to move to a different location because of a fire. What happened to the coffee shop?
10. In Question 9, how would you describe the coffee shop's previous location?
11. After they attacked us, we didn't attack them. What didn't we do?
12. I've made room in my busy day for a game of tennis. What have I done?
13. I asked Jim if anyone had ever told him about the new seafood restaurant in the mall. What did I ask Jim?
14. They've completely destroyed the old factory. What have they done?
15. The sergeant tried extremely hard to show the captain how well he was training the soldiers. What did the sergeant do?

**EXERCISE 8d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

cut up, 7

go in for, 3

point out, 7

see about, 7

fall for, 2

hold up, 7

pull through, 2

show up, 1

get over with, 3

let out, 7

put up with, 3

take apart, 7

give in, 2

look up, 4

run over, 7

take in, 7

1. My bicycle was really dirty, so I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and cleaned it.
2. It was a very serious injury, and no one expected Raul to \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I've been waiting for the TV repair guy all day, but he still hasn't \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I feel just awful. I was driving to work, and I \_\_\_\_\_ a dog.
5. The detectives weren't \_\_\_\_\_ by the crook's explanation.
6. The detectives didn't \_\_\_\_\_ the crook's explanation.
7. Mrs. Taylor's husband doesn't have any teeth, so she has to \_\_\_\_\_ all his food \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The freight train \_\_\_\_\_ traffic for 20 minutes, so we were late for work.
9. In his report yesterday, the head of marketing \_\_\_\_\_ several ways to increase the company's sales.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ the word *Internet* \_\_\_\_\_ in an old dictionary, but I couldn't find it.
11. Susie's mother told her, "I'm not going to \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ of this house until you finish your homework."
12. The company finally \_\_\_\_\_ to demands that it hire more women and minorities.
13. I'm having root canal surgery next week. I'll be glad to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
14. David called the travel agency to \_\_\_\_\_ getting his ticket changed.
15. Karen loves to ski. In fact, she \_\_\_\_\_ most winter sports.

16. Betty told the doctor she couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ the pain any longer, and she asked him for morphine.

9. FOCUS ON: **two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object, part 1**

With some two-word verbs you must use a second particle when the verb has an object:

- The criminal **broke out**.*
- ~~The criminal **broke out** prison.~~*
- The criminal **broke out** of prison.*
  
- Tom and Jerry don't **get along**.*
- ~~Tom and Jerry don't **get along** each other.~~*
- Tom and Jerry don't **get along** with each other.*

Sometimes, as with **break out** and **break out of**, there is no change in meaning. Sometimes, as with **hang up** and **hang up on**, there is a small change in meaning. And sometimes, as with **hook up** and **hook up to**, the second particle is necessary not when there is one object but only when there are two:

- I **hooked up** my new CD player.*
- ~~I **hooked up** my new CD player my stereo.~~*
- I **hooked up** my new CD player to my stereo.*

There is no good way to always know which second particle must be used or if and how it will change the meaning of the verb. The best thing to do is to simply memorize each case.

Throughout this book, two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object are shown with the second particle in parentheses: **break out** (of).

Do not confuse two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object with three-word phrasal verbs. Three-word phrasal verbs always have three words — there is no two-word version, or if there is a phrasal verb with the same verb and first particle, it has a different meaning and is classified as a different verb. For example, **break out** and **break out (of)** are included in one definition because they have the same meaning, but **put up** and **put up with** have different meanings and are classified separately.



two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object, part 1

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
break out	break out & breaks out	breaking out	broke out	broken out

**1. break out** (of) *p.v.* When you escape from a place where you are a prisoner, you **break out** or **break out** of that place.

*Kevin **broke out** of prison last month.*  
*The police have been looking for him ever since he **broke out**.*

**breakout** *n.* An escape from prison is a **breakout**.

*There hasn't been a successful **breakout** from the state prison in more than 25 years.*

**2. break out** *p.v.* When fighting begins suddenly, it **breaks out**.

*Rioting **broke out** after the general canceled the election.*  
*Millions will be killed if nuclear war **breaks out**.*

catch up	catch up & catches up	catching up	caught up	caught up
----------	-----------------------	-------------	-----------	-----------

**1. catch up** (with) *p.v.* When you move faster and reach the same level or place as people who are moving faster or doing better than you were, you **catch up** or **catch up** with them.

*We left an hour before Luis, but he drove fast and quickly **caught up**.*  
*After missing several weeks of class, Raquel is so far behind that she'll never **catch up**.*  
*Pepsi has **caught up** with Coca-Cola in some markets.*  
*The mugger was running so fast that the angry mob couldn't **catch up** with him.*

**caught up** *part.adj.* After you have moved faster and reached the same level or place as people who had been moving faster or doing better than you are, you are **caught up**.

*When I was sick, I missed a lot of schoolwork, but I worked hard and now I'm **caught up**.*

**2. catch up** (on) *p.v.* When you study or learn something you are interested in but have not had time for, you **catch up** on it.

*I wonder what the latest gossip is. Let's call Michael so we can **catch up**.*  
*After I returned from vacation, I read the newspaper to **catch up** on the local news.*

**caught up** *part.adj.* After you have studied or learned something you are interested in but have not had time for, you are **caught up**.

*Now that I've read the newspapers I missed while I was on vacation, I'm **caught up**.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
chicken out	chicken out & chickens out	chickening out	chickened out	chickened out

1. **chicken out (of)** *p.v. [informal]* When you do not do something because you are afraid, you **chicken out** or **chicken out** of it.

*I was going to ask Heather to go to the dance with me, but I **chickened out**.*  
*Miguel's mad at himself because he **chickened out** of asking his boss for a raise yesterday.*

get along	get along & gets along	getting along	got along	gotten/got along
-----------	------------------------	---------------	-----------	------------------

1. **get along (with)** *p.v.* When you **get along** with people, you have peaceful, harmonious relations with them. **Get on** is similar to **get along**.

*Jim and his cousin aren't good friends, but they **get along**.*  
*I haven't **gotten along** with my neighbors for years.*

2. **get along** *p.v.* When you are able to do some sort of work without any serious problems, you **get along**.

*How are you **getting along** in your new job?*  
*Oh, I'm **getting along** OK, thank you.*

give up	give up & gives up	giving up	gave up	given up
---------	--------------------	-----------	---------	----------

1. **give up (on)** *p.v.* When you stop trying to do something because you think you will never succeed, you **give up** or **give up** on it.

*Forget it! This is impossible — I **give up**!*  
*I've tried for years to have a nice looking lawn, but I've just **given up** on it.*

2. **give ... up** *p.v.* When you are running from or fighting with the police or enemy soldiers and you surrender, you **give up** or **give** yourself **up**.

*When the bank robbers realized they were surrounded by police, they **gave up**.*  
*The suspect got tired of hiding from the police, and he **gave** himself **up**.*

3. **give ... up** *p.v.* When you stop doing something you do regularly, such as a sport or a job, you **give it up**.

*My father didn't **give** sky diving **up** until he was 82.*  
*I had to **give up** my second job because I was so exhausted all the time.*

hang up	hang up & hangs up	hanging up	hung up	hung up
---------	--------------------	------------	---------	---------

1. **hang up (on)** *p.v.* When you stop talking on the telephone and end the telephone call, you **hang up** the telephone. When you are angry and **hang up** the telephone without saying good-bye to someone, you **hang up** on the person you are talking to.

two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object, part 1

*After I finished talking to her, I said good-bye and **hung up**.*  
*When he called me a moron, I got so mad that I **hung up** on him.*

**2. hang ... up** *p.v.* When you hang something in a high place so that it cannot touch the ground, you **hang it up**.

*When I get home, the first thing I do is **hang** my coat **up**.*  
*Timmy never **hangs** anything **up**. He just leaves it on the floor.*

**hung up** *part.adj.* After you have hung something in a high place so that it cannot touch the ground, it is **hung up**.

*Timmy, why are your clothes on the floor and not **hung up**?*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
hook up	hook up & hooks up	hooking up	hooked up	hooked up

**1. hook ... up** (to) *p.v.* When you connect one electronic device to another, you **hook it up** or **hook it up** to something.

*I bought a new printer, but I haven't **hooked it up** yet.*  
*I **hooked** my sound system **up** to my TV, and now the TV has much better sound.*

**hooked up** *part.adj.* After one electronic device has been connected to another, it is **hooked up**.

*There's a DVD player on my TV, but don't try to use it because it's not **hooked up**.*

**hookup** *n.* A **hookup** is an electrical connection.

*The cable TV **hookup** usually costs \$50, but it's free this month.*

**2. hook up** (with) *p.v. [informal]* When you meet people somewhere, usually after you have done some things separately, you **hook up** or **hook up** with them.

*You do your shopping, I'll go to the post office, and we'll **hook up** around 2:30, OK?*  
*I'll **hook up** with you at 12:00 at the corner of State and Madison, and we'll have lunch.*

work up	work up & works up	working up	worked up	worked up
---------	--------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

**1. work up** (to) *p.v.* When you gradually improve at something difficult that you do regularly, you **work up** to that improvement.

*You can't lift 200 pounds on your first day of weight training. You have to **work up** to it.*  
*When I started running, I couldn't go more than a mile, but now I've **worked up** to five miles.*

**2. work up** *p.v.* When you gradually develop the energy, confidence, courage, and so on, to do something difficult or something you do not want to do, you **work up** the



energy, confidence, courage, and so on. When you gradually develop a feeling, you **work up** the feeling.

*It took me a long time to **work up** the nerve to ask my boss for a raise.*

*If I **work up** some energy, I'll wash the car.*

*I really **worked up** a sweat in the gym today.*

*Raking leaves all day sure **works up** an appetite.*

**worked up** (about) *part.adj. [informal]* When you are anxious, worried, or upset about something, you are **worked up** or **worked up** about it.

*Mark has been acting nervous all day. What's he all **worked up** about?*

*Relax, we're only a few minutes late. It's nothing to get **worked up** about.*

**EXERCISE 9a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. My elbow has gotten so bad that I think I might have to \_\_\_\_\_ tennis.
2. After several years of tension between the two countries, war \_\_\_\_\_ in 1972.
3. Maria, how are you \_\_\_\_\_ at your new job?
4. I am so lazy today. I just can't \_\_\_\_\_ the energy to finish my school project.
5. The murderer was tired of running from the police, so he \_\_\_\_\_ himself \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The other runners were so far ahead that I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Susie, \_\_\_\_\_ your clothes right now!
8. For a long time I could type only around 25 words per minute, but I've slowly \_\_\_\_\_ to 60.
9. I'm really behind in my work. If I don't take work home with me, I'll never \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Lydia is a nice, easygoing person. She's very easy to \_\_\_\_\_ with her.
11. I tried and tried to learn to speak Japanese, but I finally \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Hello Mark? I'm really angry, and I've got some things to tell you, and don't you dare \_\_\_\_\_ on me!

two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object, part 1

- 13. Dan is so shy. He was supposed to give a speech today at school, but he \_\_\_\_\_.
- 14. OK, here's the plan: You go to the bookstore, I'll get my laundry, and we'll \_\_\_\_\_ around 11:00.
- 15. I wonder what's been happening while we were on vacation. I think I'll read the newspaper so I can \_\_\_\_\_.
- 16. This is a maximum security prison. No one has ever \_\_\_\_\_.
- 17. Bob tried to \_\_\_\_\_ my new dishwasher, but he didn't do it right, and he flooded the kitchen.

EXERCISE 9b — **Complete the sentences with the correct second particles.**

- 1. I called my girlfriend to apologize for forgetting her birthday, but she *hung up* \_\_\_\_\_ me.
- 2. When I started lifting weights, I could lift only 30 kilograms, but little by little I *worked up* \_\_\_\_\_ 50.
- 3. He's very sick, but the doctors haven't *given up* \_\_\_\_\_ him yet.
- 4. Sofia was going to bleach her hair, but she *chickened out* \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 5. Don't invite Carmen to Rosa's birthday party. They don't *get along* \_\_\_\_\_ each other.
- 6. The bank robber was carrying 2,000 quarters, so it was easy for the police *catch up* \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- 7. No prisoner has ever *broken out* \_\_\_\_\_ this prison.
- 8. I need a different cable to *hook* my monitor *up* \_\_\_\_\_ my computer.
- 9. You've been gone a long time, and you have to *catch up* \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of things.

EXERCISE 9c — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

- 1. Tonight I'm going to try to *hook up*. (my fax machine, it)

2. After my accident, I had to *give up*. (scuba diving, it)

3. You can *hang up* in the closet. (your coat, it)

EXERCISE 9d — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. When I went on vacation three weeks ago, my sister and her husband were talking about getting a divorce. Now that I’m back from vacation, I want to know what happened while I was gone. What do I want to do?
- 2. Lydia has to stop driving because her eyesight is so bad. What does Lydia have to do?
- 3. Susie was walking with us, but she stopped to look in a store window, and we continued walking. What does Susie need to do now?
- 4. I spilled wine on your white carpet, and you became angry and upset. How would you describe yourself?
- 5. Connecting a printer to a computer is easy. What is easy?
- 6. In Question 5, how would you describe the printer after it is connected to a computer?
- 7. Several prisoners are going to try to escape from the state prison tonight. What are the prisoners going to try to do tonight?
- 8. In Question 7, if the prisoners are successful, what would their escape be called?
- 9. Linda and Nicole don’t like each other, and they argue sometimes. What don’t Linda and Nicole do?



two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object, part 1

- 10. We argued with our daughter for months, but we stopped trying to get her to stop smoking. What did we do?
- 11. Fights start in that club all the time. What happens in that club all the time?
- 12. Paul slowly developed the courage to ask his boss for a raise. What did Paul do?
- 13. In Question 12, what didn't Paul do?
- 14. The police told the robber to surrender. What did the police tell the robber?
- 15. Karen is trying to gradually be able to lift 100 pounds. What is Karen doing?
- 16. Betty was so angry with her boyfriend that she put the telephone receiver down without saying good-bye. What did Betty do to her boyfriend?

EXERCISE 9e, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

burn out, 8	find out, 5	pick out, 8	ring up, 8
cheat on, 4	hand back, 5	pile up, 5	run into, 1
fall over, 8	hear of, 8	point to, 4	tear down, 8
fight back, 8	look at, 5	put to, 4	work in, 8

- 1. Who is he? I've never \_\_\_\_\_ him before, and I don't know anything about him.
- 2. My mail \_\_\_\_\_ while I was on vacation.
- 3. Thanks for all your help. I'm sorry to \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ so much trouble.
- 4. That dead tree is rotten. I'm surprised it hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
- 5. I \_\_\_\_\_ several cars last weekend, but I can't decide which one to buy.
- 6. Can you help me \_\_\_\_\_ a tie \_\_\_\_\_ to wear with this shirt?
- 7. What a surprise! I \_\_\_\_\_ my fifth grade teacher at the mall today.
- 8. Charles \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful Mercedes-Benz across the street and said it was his.
- 9. OK, class, you've got until the bell rings. When you're finished with your tests, \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ to me.

10. Everyone in town knows that Jake has been \_\_\_\_\_ his wife for years.
11. I'm not sure if there will be time to meet with you today, but I'll try to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The invasion was so sudden that there was no way to \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The cashier \_\_\_\_\_ our stuff and said, "That comes to \$142.56."
14. Bob's not in a good mood today. He just \_\_\_\_\_ that he needs surgery.
15. It was fun to visit my hometown, but I was sad to see that my old house was being \_\_\_\_\_.
16. I need to buy a new 100-watt bulb. This one \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.

## 10. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs used as nouns, part 1

Many two-word phrasal verbs can be used as nouns. All the verbs in this section have a noun form. Notice that the two-word noun is sometimes written with a hyphen:

verb: **go ahead**      noun: **go-ahead**

and sometimes as one word:

verb: **lay off**      noun: **layoff**

Unfortunately, there is no rule that will help you to always know which form to use. Also, not everyone agrees which nouns should be hyphenated and which should be written as one word, so you will occasionally see a noun written both ways. If you are not sure, check your dictionary.

### Infinitive

	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
fall off	fall off & falls off	falling off	fell off	fallen off

**1. fall off** p.v. When people or things drop to a lower level from a higher place, they **fall off** the place where they were.

*The dish **fell off** the table and broke.*

*Be careful you don't **fall off** your bicycle.*

phrasal verbs used as nouns, part 1

**2. fall off** *p.v.* When the quality, degree, or frequency of something decreases, it **falls off**.

*Sales of fountain pens **fell off** after the ballpoint pen was invented.*  
*The quality of his work has **fallen off** as he has gotten older.*

**falloff** *n.* A decrease in the quality, degree, or frequency of something is a **falloff**.

*The chairman was asked to explain the **falloff** in the company's sales.*  
*The restaurant experienced a big **falloff** in business after the food poisoning incident.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
fill in	fill in & fills in	filling in	filled in	filled in

**1. fill ...in** *p.v.* When you **fill in** a form, you put information in the correct spaces. **Fill out** is the same as **fill in**.

*Maria **filled in** the job application and gave it to the secretary.*  
*The teacher gave us the quiz and told us to **fill** the blanks **in** with the correct answers.*

**filled in** *part.adj.* After you write all the information in the correct spaces of a form, the form is **filled in**.

*Are those forms blank or **filled in**?*  
*This check isn't any good — the amount isn't **filled in**.*

**2. fill ...in** *p.v.* When people want or need more information about a plan, situation, or occurrence and you supply that information, you **fill** them **in**.

*Something interesting happened while you were gone. I'll **fill** you **in** later.*  
*I fell asleep during the meeting. Can you **fill me in**?*

**3. fill in (for)** *p.v.* When you temporarily do someone else's job, you **fill in** for that person.

*The regular bartender is on vacation, so Todd is **filling in**.*  
*She's the star of the show. No one can **fill in** for her.*

**fill-in** *n.* Someone who temporarily does someone else's job is a **fill-in**.

*Jerry is Ann's **fill-in** while she's on vacation.*  
*The regular driver is in the hospital, and the **fill-in** doesn't know the route.*

go ahead	go ahead & goes ahead	going ahead	went ahead	gone ahead
----------	-----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. go ahead (with)** *p.v.* When you take an action that you have already considered doing, you **go ahead** with the action.

*I've decided to **go ahead** with my plan to reorganize the company.*  
*After she learned about Jim's health problems, Raquel **went ahead** with the marriage anyway.*



**2. go ahead** *p.v.* When you tell people to **go ahead**, you tell them to do something without any further delay or hesitation. If you are in a position of authority and you tell someone to **go ahead** with an action, you give permission for that action.

*What are you waiting for? **Go ahead**.*

*Yes, **go ahead** and leave work early. It's no problem.*

**go-ahead** *n.* When you give people permission to perform an action, you give them the **go-ahead**.

*We approved his plan and gave him the **go-ahead**.*

*The Food and Drug Administration gave the pharmaceutical company the **go-ahead** to test the drug on humans.*

### Infinitive

	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
grow up	grow up & grows up	growing up	grew up	grown up

**1. grow up** *p.v.* When you **grow up**, you gradually change from a child to an adult.

*I **grew up** on a small farm in North Dakota.*

***Growing up** without a father wasn't easy.*

**grown-up** *part.adj.* [informal — used primarily by children] When children behave in a mature way, they are **grown-up**. Something that relates to adults, and not children, is **grown-up**.

*Susie is only eleven, but she acts very **grown-up**.*

*Timmy doesn't like **grown-up** books because they don't have any pictures.*

**grown-up** *n.* [informal — used primarily by children] A **grown-up** is an adult.

*There were children and **grown-ups** at the party.*

*Only **grown-ups** are allowed to sit in the front seat of the car.*

**2. grow up** *p.v.* When you tell people to **grow up**, you are saying that their behavior is childish and immature.

*You're acting like a baby. Why don't you **grow up**!*

*When he put his fist through the wall, I said, "Oh, **grow up**!"*

### hand out

	hand out & hands out	handing out	handed out	handed out
--	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. hand ... out** *p.v.* When you distribute something to other people, you **hand it out**. **Give out** is similar to **hand out**.

*The teacher **handed** the tests **out** to the class.*

*Emergency loan applications were **handed out** to the flood victims.*

**handout** *n.* Something given free to people in need to help them is a **handout**.

**Handouts** of food and clothing were given to the homeless people.  
Even though my father was poor, he was too proud to ask for a **handout**.

**handout** *n.* Printed material given to students or other people to provide them with important information.

The teacher prepared a **handout** for his students.  
There are several **handouts** on a table by the library entrance.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
kick back	kick back & kicks back	kicking back	kicked back	kicked back

**1. kick ...back** (to) *p.v.* When you **kick back** money or **kick back** money to businesspeople or government officials, you illegally and secretly give them a percentage of the money that they spend with your company as a reward for giving you the business.

The prosecutor said that five percent of every contract was **kicked back** to the head of the purchasing department.  
She offered to **kick** ten percent **back** if I'd switch to her company.

**kickback** *n.* Money you illegally and secretly give to businesspeople or government officials as a reward for giving you business is a **kickback**.

The FBI agent heard the governor asking for a **kickback**.  
The reporter discovered that the loan was really a **kickback**.

**2. kick back** *p.v. [informal]* When you **kick back**, you relax.

It's been a tough week. Tonight I'm going to **kick back** and watch TV.  
Let's **kick back** and watch the football game tonight.

lay off	lay off & lays off	laying off	laid off	laid off
---------	--------------------	------------	----------	----------

**1. lay ...off** *p.v.* When a company no longer needs workers because it does not have enough business, it temporarily or permanently **lays off** the workers.

Ford **laid off** 20,000 workers during the last recession.  
My wife had to go back to work after I was **laid off** from my job.

**layoff** *n.* Jobs cut by a company because it does not have enough business are **layoffs**.

The company said there wouldn't be any **layoffs**, despite the decline in profits.

**2. lay off** *p.v. [informal]* When you **lay off** people, you stop criticizing, teasing, or pressuring them.

You've been bugging me all day. If you don't **lay off**, you're going to be sorry.  
**Lay off** Nancy — she's having a bad day.

**3. lay off** *p.v.* When you **lay off** something, such as a food or an activity, you stop consuming the food or doing the activity.

*Listen to the way you're coughing. You've got to **lay off** cigarettes.*  
*After Ned had a heart attack, he **laid off** cheese and butter sandwiches.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
screw up	screw up & screws up	screwing up	screwed up	screwed up

**1. screw ... up** *p.v. [informal]* When you damage something or do something wrong or badly, you **screw up** or you **screw up** what you are doing.

*I tried to fix my computer, but I couldn't do it, and I just **screwed it up** instead.*  
*Mark sent his wife a letter that he had written to his girlfriend. He sure **screwed up**.*

**screwed up** *part.adj.* When people or things are **screwed up**, they are damaged or confused.

*My back is really **screwed up**. I can't go to work today.*  
*George was a nice guy, but a little **screwed up** in the head.*

**screwup** *n.* A problem or confused situation caused by someone's mistake is a **screwup**.

*Two babies were switched because of a **screwup** in the maternity ward.*  
*There was a **screwup** in the finance department, and the bill was paid twice.*

**2. screw ... up** *p.v. informal]* When people make a mistake that causes a problem for you, they **screw you up**.

*The travel agent forgot to reconfirm my flight, and it really **screwed me up**.*  
*You really **screwed me up** when you lost my car keys.*

EXERCISE 10a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. The teacher asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ the exams \_\_\_\_\_ to the other students.
- 2. Why don't you let a mechanic fix the car? If you try to do it yourself, you'll just \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. Nobody likes the new priest in our church, and attendance has \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. My feet were killing me a couple of weeks ago, so I \_\_\_\_\_ jogging for a while, and now they're fine.
- 5. It really \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ when you told my boss what I said about him.



6. The Ortegas won't take a vacation this year because Mr. Ortega has been \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ and they need to save money.
7. When my mother was \_\_\_\_\_, there wasn't any TV. People went to the movies or read instead.
8. The head of purchasing at my company went to jail because he made all the suppliers \_\_\_\_\_ \$2,000 of every contract.
9. My husband told me my plan to enter medical school was crazy, but I \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ with it anyway.
10. The secretary in the human resources department said, "Here's an application. Take it and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_."
11. If you want to borrow my car tonight, \_\_\_\_\_. I'm not going anywhere.
12. The other mountain climbers are nervous about Jim because they think he's going to \_\_\_\_\_ a cliff.
13. You've been criticizing me for the last three hours! Will you \_\_\_\_\_!
14. The manager asked his assistant to \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ about the problems in the warehouse.
15. It's Friday night. Let's buy some pizza and \_\_\_\_\_.
16. I can't work tomorrow. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ for me?
17. You're acting like a big baby. \_\_\_\_\_!

**EXERCISE 10b — Complete the sentences with nouns from this section.**

1. At the party, the children ate in the living room, and the \_\_\_\_\_ ate in the dining room.
2. The boss said, "One more \_\_\_\_\_ and you're fired."
3. The reporter discovered that the mayor was taking \_\_\_\_\_ from the construction company.
4. Every year at this time the king gives \_\_\_\_\_ to the poor.
5. Ned will be my \_\_\_\_\_ while I'm on my honeymoon.

- 6. The teacher prepared a \_\_\_\_\_ to give to the students.
- 7. The CEO said he regretted the \_\_\_\_\_ , but there was no other way for the company to avoid bankruptcy.
- 8. The team lost every game of the season and suffered a 60 percent \_\_\_\_\_ in attendance.
- 9. The president called the general and gave him the \_\_\_\_\_ for the attack.

EXERCISE 10c — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

1. You haven't *filled in*. (all the spaces, them)

2. Is the teacher *handing out*? (the tests, them)

3. The company is going to *lay off*. (my brother, him)

4. I'm sorry I *screwed up*. (your plan, it)

**EXERCISE 10d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. I wasn't sure if my plan would work, and I thought about it for a long time before I finally decided to try it. What did I do with my plan?
2. The secretary gave me an application and told me to put the correct information in the spaces. What did the secretary tell me to do?
3. In Question 2, how would you describe the application after I put the correct information in the spaces?
4. The mechanic is trying to fix my car's transmission, but she's making a lot of mistakes. What is the mechanic doing to my car's transmission?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe the transmission after the mechanic finishes fixing it?
6. You give \$3,000 to the mayor every month so that he will give your company city business. What do you do every month?
7. In Question 6, what is the \$3,000 that you give to the mayor every month?
8. Business is bad at Nancy's company, and they told her that they don't need her anymore. What happened to Nancy?
9. The hotel clerk forgot to call me in the morning to wake me up, so I was late for a very important meeting. What did the hotel clerk do to me?
10. I was born in Hawaii, and I lived there until I was 18. What did I do in Hawaii?
11. Sally's parents told her she can't watch a TV show because it's for adults. What did Sally's parents tell her about the TV show?
12. New home construction will decrease if there is a recession. What will new home construction do if there is a recession?
13. In Question 12, if there is a decrease in new home construction, what would it be called?
14. Timmy was teasing Susie all day until his mother told him to stop. What did Timmy's mother tell him to do?



15. Ali is doing Omar’s job while Omar is on vacation. What is Ali doing?
16. Blankets and boxes of food will be given to the people whose homes were destroyed by the tornado. What will be done with the blankets and boxes of food?
17. Sarah had to answer the phone while she was watching a TV show. After she returned to the TV room, Sarah’s friend Sally told Sarah everything she had missed. What did Sally do for Sarah?

EXERCISE 10e, Review — **Complete the sentences with these nouns from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

- breakdown, 5      holdup, 7      put-on, 1      takeoff, 1
- breakout, 9      hookup, 9      setup, 5

1. The pilot said that the \_\_\_\_\_ would be on time.
2. There was a \_\_\_\_\_ on the highway, and traffic was barely moving at all.
3. A cable \_\_\_\_\_ is usually \$39.95, but this month it’s free.
4. The guards suspected the prisoners were planning a \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Waiter, we’ve been waiting for our dinner for an hour. What’s the \_\_\_\_\_?
6. I told my lawyer that it was a \_\_\_\_\_ and that I was innocent.
7. When the detectives came and arrested Hank, we didn’t think it was real — just a big \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 10f, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

- catch up, 9      get along, 9      hook up, 9      talk down to, 3
- chicken out, 9      give up, 9      pick out, 8      work up, 9

1. Don’t try to run ten miles at first; you have to \_\_\_\_\_ to it.
2. After searching for three days without any luck, the rescue team \_\_\_\_\_ on finding any survivors.
3. The police showed me some pictures to see if I could \_\_\_\_\_ the guy who mugged me.

4. You go to the bank, I'll go to the post office, and we'll \_\_\_\_\_ with each other at the corner in 45 minutes.
5. I wasn't happy about having Nancy for a partner on the project. I don't \_\_\_\_\_ with her.
6. Just because you went to college and I didn't doesn't make it OK for you to \_\_\_\_\_ me.
7. The teacher said, "Your daughter has missed a lot of school, and she'll need to work hard to \_\_\_\_\_ with the rest of the class."
8. Maria got scared and \_\_\_\_\_ of jumping off the high diving board.

## 11. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs used in compound nouns

As we saw in Section 10, many two-word phrasal verbs can be used as nouns. Many of these nouns formed from two-word phrasal verbs can be combined with ordinary nouns to form *compound nouns*:

noun: **backup**      compound noun: **backup** disk  
 noun: **follow-up**      compound noun: **follow-up** call

Like ordinary compound nouns, the first noun has a function similar to that of an adjective:

question: *What kind of clothes?*  
 answer: *Dirty clothes.*  
    adjective  
 question: *What kind of clothes?*  
 answer: *Workout clothes.*  
    noun

The adjective *dirty* and the noun *workout* serve the same function: modifying the noun *clothes*.

Always stress the first word in a compound noun:

noun: **BACKup**                      compound noun: **BACKup** disk  
 noun: **FOLLOW-up**                  compound noun: **FOLLOW-up** call

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
back up	back up & backs up	backing up	backed up	backed up

**1. back ... up** *p.v.* When you walk backward, you **back up**. When you drive a vehicle in reverse, you **back up** or **back** the vehicle **up**.

*The fire was so hot that we had to **back up**.  
I put the car in reverse and **backed it up**.*

**2. back up** *p.v.* When you are explaining something, and you repeat something that you already said, you **back up**.

*You're going too fast. Can you **back up** a little and explain your plan again?  
Sorry, I forgot part of the story. Let me **back up** a little.*

**3. back ... up** *p.v.* When you make a claim or statement and then show people evidence or give them information proving that the claim or statement is true or correct, you **back it up**.

*No one believed Jim's accusations because he couldn't **back them up** with any evidence.  
The IRS asked me for some receipts to **back up** my deductions.*

**4. back ... up** *p.v.* When you support people in a conflict or a confrontation, you **back** them **up**. When you support people by doing some work or a difficult assignment, you **back** them **up**.

*Linda said she would **back me up** if I complained about our supervisor.  
The general **backed up** his threats with 400,000 soldiers.  
Jerry is the restaurant's main cook, and Tanya **backs him up** when it gets busy.*

**backup** *n.* Someone or something that supports or is ready to provide support in a conflict or a confrontation by doing some work or a difficult assignment is a **backup**.

*When the rioters grew more violent, the police called for **backup**.  
The firefighter entered the burning building without a **backup**.*

**5. back ... up** *p.v.* When you duplicate important information, such as a computer program or data, so that you will still have it if the original information is lost or damaged, you **back it up**.

*If you're going to install that new software, be sure you **back up** your entire hard disk first.  
I **back** my work **up** every day before I go home.*

**backup** *n.* A duplicate of important information, such as a computer program or data, is a **backup**.

*I keep a **backup** of my important computer files on my other computer.  
The major gave a **backup** copy of the battle plan to his secretary.*



**backed up** *part.adj.* After you duplicate important information, such as a computer program or data, the original is **backed up**.

*I accidentally erased your book from your computer. I hope your work was **backed up**.*

**6. back ... up** *p.v.* When a piece of equipment or machinery is very important and another is kept available in case the one that is normally used fails, the second piece of equipment or machinery **backs up** the first.

*The hospital bought a generator to **back up** the unreliable city power supply.  
We kept the old computer to **back** the new one **up**.*

**backup** *n.* When a piece of equipment or machinery is very important and another is kept available in case the one that is normally used fails, the second piece of equipment or machinery is a **backup**.

*The skydiver checked his main parachute and his **backup** before the flight.  
The school had to close when the main power and the **backup** both failed.*

**7. back ... up** *p.v.* When something **backs up**, it is being prevented from moving, progressing, or flowing normally.

*An accident **backed** traffic **up** for three miles.  
The assembly line is going to **back up** if Erik doesn't get the parts he needs soon.*

**backup** *n.* A **backup** is a situation in which something is being prevented from moving, progressing, or flowing normally.

*I sat in that **backup** for three hours without moving an inch.  
The huge number of Christmas cards and packages caused a **backup** at the post office.*

**backed up** *part.adj.* When something is being prevented from moving, progressing, or flowing normally, it is **backed up**.

*Let's take the train downtown. Traffic is always **backed up** at this time of the morning.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	cut off & cuts off	cutting off	cut off	cut off

**1. cut ... off** *p.v.* When you completely remove part of something with a knife, saw, or pair of scissors, you **cut it off**.

*He **cut off** a piece of cheese so that I could taste it.  
One of the kings of England had his head **cut off**.*

**2. cut ... off** *p.v.* When you stop the supply or flow of something, such as water, electricity, or money, you **cut it off** or you **cut off** the people receiving it.

*I won't be surprised if my electricity is **cut off**. I haven't paid the bill in three months.  
The bartender told the drunk guy that she was **cutting** him **off**.*

**cutoff** *n.* The time when something, such as water, electricity, or money, is **cut off** is the **cutoff**, **cutoff** point, or **cutoff** date.

*I got a notice saying that if I don't pay my water bill soon, the **cutoff** date will be March 10.*  
*Ninety is the **cutoff** — students with lower scores on the exam won't be accepted into the advanced program.*

**3. cut ... off** *p.v.* When you abruptly and rudely drive a vehicle in front of other people's vehicles, causing them to suddenly slow down or stop, you **cut** them **off**.

*I had to slam on the brakes when some guy **cut** me **off** on the way to work.*  
*The lady in the red car tried to **cut** me **off**, but I wouldn't let her get in front of me.*

**4. cut off** *p.v.* When someone is **cut off** while speaking on the telephone, the connection is accidentally broken.

*I was in the middle of an important call when I was **cut off**.*  
*Getting **cut off** happens all the time when you're on the phone to China.*

**5. cut off** *p.v.* When you create a physical or psychological barrier between yourself and other people, you **cut** yourself **off** from them. When you are separated from other people because of a barrier or a great distance, you are **cut off** from them.

*After Dan joined a cult, he completely **cut** himself **off** from his family and friends.*  
*A flash flood **cut** us **off** from the rest of the expedition.*

**cut off** *part.adj.* When you are separated from other people because of a barrier or a great distance, you are **cut off**.

*The bridge was destroyed by the earthquake, and now we're **cut off**.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	drop off & drops off	dropping off	dropped off	dropped off

**1. drop ... off** *p.v.* When you take things or people to another place and leave them there, you **drop** them **off**.

*Can you **drop** me **off** at the train station on your way to work?*  
*Luis **dropped off** his laundry at the cleaners.*

**drop-off** *n.* Something that has been **dropped off** is a **drop-off**. The place where something or someone is **dropped off** is a **drop-off** point, **drop-off** window, and so on.

*Luis left his laundry at the **drop-off** window.*  
*The north side of the train station parking lot is for **drop-offs**.*

**2. drop off** *p.v.* When a business's sales, the occurrence of some event, or the interest some people have in something declines, it **drops off**.

*Attendance at baseball games has been **dropping off** in the last few years.*  
*After CDs were introduced, sales of records **dropped off** sharply.*



phrasal verbs used in compound nouns

**drop-off** *n.* A decline in a business’s sales, in the occurrence of an event, or in **the** interest some people have in something, is a **drop-off**.

*There has been a **drop-off** in traffic deaths thanks to strict traffic safety laws.*  
*The **drop-off** in car sales was explained by the recession.*

- 3. drop off** *p.v.* When the level of the ground declines steeply, it **drops off**.  
*Be careful hiking this trail. It **drops off** steeply on the other side of the mountain.*  
*The island has no beach at all. The land **drops off** straight into the sea.*

**drop-off** *n.* A steep decline in the level of the ground is a **drop-off**.  
*The bus driver didn’t see the **drop-off**, and the bus plunged into the river.*  
*It was hard to see the **drop-off** because of the dense jungle.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
follow up	follow up & follows up	following up	followed up	followed up

- 1. follow up** (on) *p.v.* When you **follow up** on something, you return to something that was important to you previously because you now have more information or more time or because you want to make sure some effort you made previously is correct or effective.  
*I saw a beautiful house with a “for sale” sign and I **followed up** on it when I got home.*  
*The doctor told me I’d need to **follow up** the treatment with physical therapy.*

**follow-up** *n.* A **follow-up**, **follow-up** call, **follow-up** visit, and so on, is a return to something that was important to you previously because you now have more information or more time or because you want to make sure some effort you made previously is correct or effective.  
*The customer service manager made a **follow-up** call to make sure I was happy with the repair job.*  
*The doctor asked me to see him two months after the operation for a **follow-up**.*

take out				
	take out & takes out	taking out	took out	taken out

- 1. take ... out** (of) *p.v.* When you **take** something **out** or **take it out** of a container, storage place, or building, you remove it. **Put in/into** is the opposite of **take out**.  
*I want to **take** some books **out** of the library tonight.*  
*Jake **took out** a gun and shouted, “This is a holdup!”*  
*Nancy **took** \$500 **out** of the bank.*

**takeout** *n.* **Takeout** is food that is taken from a restaurant to be eaten at another location. **Carryout** and **carryout** food are the same as **takeout** and **takeout** food.  
*I don’t feel like cooking tonight. Let’s get **takeout**.*  
*That **takeout** chicken is good, but it sure is greasy.*



**2. take ... out** (of) *p.v.* When you remove something because you do not want it or because it is damaged, you **take it out** or **take it out** of something. **Put in/into** is the opposite of **take out**.

*The teacher said my story would be a lot better if I **took** this part **out** of the third paragraph.*  
*The school will be closed while the asbestos insulation is being **taken out** and replaced.*

**3. take ... out** (of) *p.v.* When you **take** money **out** or **take** money **out** of a bank or a bank account, you withdraw the money. **Put in** is the opposite of **take out**.

*I had to **take** money **out** of my savings account to pay for my medical bills.*  
*Nicole's at the bank **taking** \$1,000 **out**.*

**4. take ... out** *p.v.* When you **take** people **out**, you go with them to do something enjoyable — dinner in a restaurant, a movie, and so on — and pay for it yourself.

*What do you think about **taking** Mom **out** for Mother's Day?*  
*Jim **took** his girlfriend **out** last Friday.*

**5. take ... out** *p.v. [informal]* When you **take** people **out**, you kill them.

*The snipers will try to **take out** the kidnapper when he opens the door.*  
*The hit man **took** Vito **out** with a shotgun blast to the head.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
try out	try out & tries out	trying out	tried out	tried out

**1. try ... out** *p.v.* When you **try** something **out**, you try it to see if you want to buy it or to see if you want to start using it regularly.

*I'm not going to spend \$2,000 on a bicycle unless I **try** it **out** first.*  
*You can **try** it **out** for 30 days without any obligation.*

**tryout** *n.* When you give something a **tryout**, you test it to see if you want to buy it or start using it regularly.

*I gave Betty's new diet a **tryout**, but I actually gained weight.*  
*The airline gave the new plane a thorough **tryout** before making a decision.*

**2. try ... out** *p.v.* When you **try** people **out**, you give them a chance to show that they can perform a job well before hiring them or before giving them more difficult work to do.

*The manager agreed to **try** him **out** for a week.*  
*I told the supervisor that if she **tried** me **out**, she'd see that I could do the job.*

**tryout** *n.* When you give people a **tryout**, you give them a chance to show that they can perform a job well before giving them more difficult work to do.

***Tryouts** for the football team will be next Saturday and Sunday.*  
*If you give Mike a **tryout**, I'm sure you won't be disappointed.*

**3. try out (for)** *p.v.* When you **try out** or **try out** for something, you try to show that you can perform a job well in order to get hired.

*A lot of guys will **try out**, but only a handful will make the team.*  
*Daniela's mother told her, "**Trying out** for the cheerleading squad isn't as important as doing your homework."*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
wake up	wake up & wakes up	waking up	woke up	woken up

**1. wake ... up** *p.v.* When you stop sleeping, you **wake up**. When you cause other people to stop sleeping, you **wake** them **up**.

*Ali is so sleepy in class that the teacher must **wake** him **up** every five minutes.*  
*I **woke up** at 2:00 A.M. and couldn't get back to sleep.*

**wake-up** *part.adj.* When you are staying at a hotel and you ask the desk clerk to call you at a certain time to **wake** you **up**, you ask for a **wake-up** call.

*I asked the desk clerk to give me a **wake-up** call at 7:30.*

**2. wake ... up** *p.v.* When you learn something that causes you to understand the truth about something or someone, it **wakes** you **up** or **wakes** you **up** to the truth about something or someone.

*I used to smoke, but when my best friend died of lung cancer, it really **woke** me **up**.*  
*Hey, **wake up**! Nicole is lying to you. Can't you see that?*

work out	work out & works out	working out	worked out	worked out
----------	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. work out** *p.v.* When a situation **works out** a certain way, it happens that way. When a situation does not **work out**, it is not satisfactory.

*The switch to the new system **worked out** a lot better than anyone expected.*  
*She said that living with her in-laws wasn't **working out** very well.*

**2. work out** *p.v.* When a situation **works out**, the end result is successful.

*Yes, I thought your idea was terrible, but I must admit it **worked out**.*  
*The marriage didn't **work out**, and they were divorced after six months.*

**3. work out** *p.v.* When a calculation or measurement **works out** to be a certain amount, this amount is the result of the calculation or measurement.

*The cost of the food we need for the party **works out** to more than \$1,500.*  
*The monthly payment on a 6 percent loan **works out** to \$642.*

**4. work ... out** *p.v.* When you **work out** a calculation, measurement, or other problem, you do the work necessary to determine the result of the calculation or measurement or think about how to solve the problem.



Maria **worked out** how much paint we will need for the living room — 25 gallons.

I've forgotten how to **work out** math problems without a calculator.

You need to go to the airport, I need to go to work, and we have only one car. How are we going to **work this out**?

**5. work out** p.v. When you **work out** a solution or plan, you decide what to do after careful consideration, either alone or in discussion with other people.

The opposing lawyers **worked out** a compromise.

I think I've **worked out** a way to buy a new car without borrowing money.

**6. work out** p.v. When you exercise in order to improve your health or physical appearance, you **work out**.

Bob **works out** in the gym for two hours every night.

I am so fat. I need to start **working out** again.

**workout** n. A series of exercises done in order to improve your health or physical appearance is a **workout**. **Workout** clothes are clothes you wear while exercising.

I'm really sore from that **workout** last night.

The trainer designed a **workout** for each player on the team.

**workout** n. When you say that you gave a mechanical device or system a **workout**, you mean that you caused it to perform some lengthy or difficult work.

Driving to Alaska sure gave this old truck a **workout**.

The snack bar got a real **workout** when three buses full of hungry tourists stopped at the same time.

**EXERCISE 11a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. I almost had an accident on the way to work when another driver \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
2. With so many delivery truck drivers out sick with the flu, deliveries are starting to \_\_\_\_\_.
3. You should always \_\_\_\_\_ your important computer files.
4. The art restorers are trying to \_\_\_\_\_ a way to clean the painting without damaging it.
5. I hit a tree while I was \_\_\_\_\_ my car \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The butcher has only nine fingers. He \_\_\_\_\_ the other one \_\_\_\_\_.



7. Professor Taylor has some interesting theories, but can he \_\_\_\_\_ them  
\_\_\_\_\_ with any evidence?
8. After every sale, a good salesperson \_\_\_\_\_ with a call to make sure  
the customer is satisfied.
9. I'm going to leave early tomorrow so that I can \_\_\_\_\_ my suit \_\_\_\_\_ at the  
cleaners.
10. No one believed I was telling the truth until Charles \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
11. I usually \_\_\_\_\_ around 7:00, but this morning I overslept.
12. Lydia had planned to spend the summer in Italy, but it didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The sniper was ordered to \_\_\_\_\_ the enemy leader.
14. The designers put in manual controls to \_\_\_\_\_ the automatic system.
15. David and Maria \_\_\_\_\_ how much their wedding is going to cost.
16. The cost of their wedding \_\_\_\_\_ to \$225 per person.
17. Be careful — the north side of the mountain \_\_\_\_\_ sharply.
18. Hello? Hello? The phone is dead. I guess we were \_\_\_\_\_.
19. Next weekend we're \_\_\_\_\_ Mom and Dad \_\_\_\_\_ for their 50th wedding  
anniversary.
20. The professor's lecture was really confusing, so I asked him to please \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ and explain it again.
21. The bank robbers tried to escape through the back door, but the police went to the back  
of the bank and \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
22. People's fascination with the quintuplets \_\_\_\_\_ quickly after  
the sextuplets were born.
23. Bob bought some new skis, and this weekend he's going to \_\_\_\_\_ them  
\_\_\_\_\_.
24. I wasn't very responsible when I was younger, but having children really \_\_\_\_\_  
me \_\_\_\_\_.
25. Ned used to exercise every day, but he hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ in months.

26. The baseball manager decided to \_\_\_\_\_ the new pitcher to see what he could do.
27. I like most of this article you wrote about me, but there’s one thing I’d like you to \_\_\_\_\_.
28. Sam had a lot of big ideas when he was young, but his life sure hasn’t \_\_\_\_\_ the way he expected.
29. The electricity was \_\_\_\_\_ after a tree fell during the storm and cut some power lines.
30. I \_\_\_\_\_ my ID card \_\_\_\_\_ of my pocket and showed it to the guard.
31. Lydia has never \_\_\_\_\_ a penny \_\_\_\_\_ of her savings account.

EXERCISE 11b — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

1. Did you *back up*? (your work, it)
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
2. They’re *cutting off*. (the power, it)
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
3. I *dropped off* at the airport. (Frank, him)
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
4. Mom asked me to *take out*. (the garbage, it)
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

phrasal verbs used in compound nouns

5. Alex *tried out*. (his new bicycle, it)

---

---

---

6. Mike has *woken up*. (Ali, him)

---

---

---

**EXERCISE 11c — Write answers to the questions using nouns and compound nouns from this section. There may be more than one way to answer a question.**

- 1. The photographer always keeps two cameras with him. One is his main camera. He'll use the second if there's a problem with the first. What is the second camera?
- 2. The phone company says my telephone service will stop on July 1 if I don't pay my bill before that date. What is July 1?
- 3. Dr. Smith is a new doctor. If he's not sure how to treat a patient, he'll call Dr. Wood for help. What is Dr. Wood to Dr. Smith?
- 4. You used the new exercise equipment to see if you wanted to buy it. What did you do to the exercise equipment?
- 5. The police arrested Mrs. Taylor's husband because he was beating her. A social worker visited Mrs. Taylor a few days later to talk to her. What did the social worker do?
- 6. The clothes I wore yesterday while I was exercising got very dirty. What got dirty?
- 7. We got food from a Chinese restaurant and ate it at home. What kind of food did we eat?
- 8. Because of construction, traffic on the interstate stopped and there was a long line of cars. What was on the interstate?
- 9. The number of arrests for burglary is a lot lower this year than last year. What has happened to the number of arrests for burglary?
- 10. Sally lost something very important on her computer because she didn't make another copy in case there was a problem with the original. Why did Sally have a problem?



11. At the edge of the continental shelf, the sea floor falls several thousand feet. What is at the edge of the continental shelf?
12. I made 7,000 copies on this photocopier. What did I do to the photocopier?

**EXERCISE 11d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. The electric company stopped my electricity because I didn't pay my bill. What did they do to the electricity?
2. I bought some fried chicken, and I took it to my house. What kind of food did I buy?
3. Exercising is good for your health. What is good for your health?
4. The telephone company offered to let me use their service free for 30 days, and I'm going to try it. What am I going to do to the telephone company's service?
5. In Question 4, what is the telephone company letting me do?
6. During the flood, a lot of people couldn't leave their houses because of the water. What did the water do to them?
7. In Question 6, how would you describe these people?
8. You're making a copy of your work in case you lose the original. What are you doing?
9. In Question 8, what would you call the extra copy of your work that you're making?
10. The newspaper reporter is getting more information about something interesting that someone told her on the phone. What is the reporter doing?
11. My exercise routine is very difficult. What is difficult?
12. The prosecutor proved his accusation with some photographs. What did the prosecutor do with the photographs?
13. Jane wants to show the basketball coach that she would be a good member of the basketball team. What does Jane want to do?
14. I have a second alarm clock in case the first doesn't wake me up. What does my second alarm clock do to my first?

phrasal verbs used in compound nouns

- 15. In Question 14, what would you call my second alarm clock?
- 16. Nicole takes her friend to the train station every morning. What does Nicole do to her friend?
- 17. I have an appointment with my doctor next month so that he can see if my surgery was successful. What would you call my appointment next month?
- 18. Maria’s plan isn’t happening the way she expected. What isn’t Maria’s plan doing?
- 19. Bill went with Judy to dinner and a movie and he paid for everything. What did Bill do?
- 20. Two hundred guests at \$45 each calculates to \$9,000. What does 200 guests at \$45 each do?
- 21. I have never stopped sleeping at 3:30 in the morning before. What have I never done?

EXERCISE 11e, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

come from, 1	give back, 1	hand out, 10	look for, 1
fall off, 10	go ahead, 10	hear about, 2	screw out of, 3
feel up to, 3	go along with, 3	kick back, 10	screw up, 10
fill in, 10	grow up, 10	lay off, 10	stay off, 2

- 1. If the company doesn’t \_\_\_\_\_ 20 percent of its employees, it’s going to go out of business.
- 2. Blankets and boxes of food were \_\_\_\_\_ to the flood victims.
- 3. I \_\_\_\_\_ in Germany because my father was in the Army there.
- 4. Kathy didn’t close her car window last night, and it rained. She really \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. You \_\_\_\_\_. I’ll catch up with you later.
- 6. The percentage of people who smoke \_\_\_\_\_ after smoking was linked with lung cancer and heart disease.
- 7. What can I do to get my black cat to \_\_\_\_\_ my white couch?
- 8. I’ve been \_\_\_\_\_ an apartment that allows dogs, but I can’t find one.

9. He's \_\_\_\_\_ New York and will be here in two hours.
10. I was so stuffed from that huge dinner my mother cooked that I didn't \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ playing tennis afterward.
11. Their lawyer tried to \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ \$120,000.
12. I don't feel like going anywhere tonight. Let's just \_\_\_\_\_ and  
take it easy.
13. I'm sorry I can't agree with you, Joe, but I have to \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ Linda on this decision.
14. Here's my pen. Make sure you \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ when you're finished using it.
15. I didn't get 100 on the test because I forgot to \_\_\_\_\_ one of the blanks.
16. This restaurant is wonderful. I'm surprised I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ it before.

## 12. FOCUS ON: past perfect phrasal verbs

The *past perfect* is used to say that one thing in the past happened before another thing in the past:

Mike **said** the wedding **had fallen through**.

past earlier in the past

When I **got** to work, Mr. Taylor **had** already **signed in**.

past earlier in the past

The *past perfect* is formed with *had* and the *past participle* of the verb:

present: He **wakes up**.

past: He **woke up**.

past perfect: He **had woken up**.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
back off	back off & backs off	backing off	backed off	backed off

**1. back off** *p.v.* When you move away from danger or a person you are arguing or fighting with in order to avoid injury or a more serious fight or argument, you **back off**. When you tell people to **back off**, you are warning them that you are becoming angry and that a fight or argument is likely.



I'm warning you! You'd better **back off**.  
Tom **backed off** when he saw that Jake had a gun.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	come across & comes across	coming across	came across	come across

**1. come across** p.v. When people cross from one side of a space or distance to where you are, they **come across**.

As soon as Nicole saw me, she **came across** the room and gave me a big hug.  
By 1910, millions of immigrants had **come across** the ocean to America.

**2. come across** p.v. When you **come across** people or things, you see or find them without planning or expecting to. **Run across** is similar to **come across**.

I asked the antique dealer if she had ever **come across** a Windsor chair.  
On the trail, we **came across** some hikers from Australia.

**3. come across** p.v. When something you say or do **comes across** a certain way, your attitude or feelings are perceived in this way by other people.

I was just joking, but I don't think it **came across** that way.  
His American humor didn't **come across** well in Britain.

come up	come up & comes up	coming up	came up	come up

**1. come up (to)** p.v. When people move toward you to a higher level or position, or from the south to the north, they **come up**. **Come down** is the opposite of **come up**.

Why don't you **come up** and see me some time?  
My cousin from San Antonio **came up** to Detroit last week.

**2. come up** p.v. When you move to a higher social or professional position, you **come up**.

I saw Dan driving a Mercedes. He's really **coming up** in the world.  
The major didn't go to the military academy. He **came up** through the ranks.

**3. come up** p.v. When a new topic is introduced into a conversation, it **comes up**.

I don't agree with Jim about anything, so if politics **comes up**, I just leave the room.  
We were discussing possible candidates to manage the new office, and your name **came up**.

**4. come up** p.v. When something unexpected happens that requires further attention, it **comes up**.

I'm sorry I can't go to your party. Something important has **come up**.  
Until this situation **came up**, we were having a nice, relaxing weekend.

**5. come up** p.v. [always continuous] When something is **coming up**, it will happen soon.

Mother’s Day is **coming up**, so I need to buy my mother a gift soon.  
The TV announcer told the audience what was **coming up** after the commercial.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
fall through	fall through & falls through	falling through	fell through	fallen through

1. **fall through** p.v. When people or things drop through an opening from one side to the other side, they **fall through**.

The roofer had **fallen through** a hole in the roof.  
My Uncle Fred was ice fishing when he **fell through** a hole in the ice and was never seen again.

2. **fall through** p.v. When a plan, an arrangement, or a business deal does not happen or is canceled because of a problem or because someone does not do what is expected, it **falls through**.

The family reunion **fell through** after Dad got sick.  
Our house is back on the market. The deal **fell through** because the buyers couldn’t get a loan.

put up	put up & puts up	putting up	put up	put up
--------	------------------	------------	--------	--------

1. **put ... up** p.v. When you move something to a higher level, you **put it up**.

**Put** these knives **up** where the baby can’t reach them.  
He aimed the gun at me and said, “**Put** your hands **up** or I’ll shoot.”

2. **put ... up** p.v. When you attach something, such as a picture or a sign, to a wall, you **put it up**.

The teacher had **put** some posters **up** in her new classroom.  
Our real estate agent is **putting up** a “for sale” sign.

3. **put ... up** p.v. When you build or install something, such as a building, shelf, fence, or wall, you **put it up**.

We need to **put up** a fence to keep the rabbits out of our garden.  
I talked to a carpenter about **putting up** some shelves in the family room.

4. **put ... up** p.v. When you erect or assemble something that is collapsed, folded, or in several pieces, you **put it up**.

The circus **put up** their tent outside of town.  
The Native Americans stopped by the river and **put up** their teepees.

5. **put ... up** p.v. When you contribute money to pay for or help pay for something, you **put up** the money.

The mayor offered to **put up** half the money necessary to build a new stadium for the team.  
Mr. Taylor said he would **put** \$3 million **up** toward the cost of a new cancer treatment facility.

**6. put up** *p.v.* When you fight, resist, or argue against something, you **put up** a fight or **put up** resistance.

The union **put up** a fight when the company tried to lay off workers.  
The enemy soldiers **put up** little resistance when the army attacked them.

**7. put ... up** *p.v.* When you **put** people **up**, you let them stay with you, usually temporarily, in your house or in a hotel.

Sam didn't have anywhere else to go after the fire, so I said I would **put him up** for a couple of nights.  
The hotel desk clerk apologized for not being able to **put us up**.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
screw on	screw on & screws on	screwing on	screwed on	screwed on

**1. screw ... on** *p.v.* When you **screw on** the top of a circular container, you turn it so that it becomes tight and keeps the contents of the container inside.

I hadn't **screwed** the top of the gas can **on** tight enough, and all the gas leaked out.  
If you don't **screw** the top of the bottle **on**, the soda pop will go flat.

**screwed on** *part.adj.* After you turn the top of a circular container so that it becomes tight and keeps the contents of the container inside, the top is **screwed on**.

**2. screw ... on** *p.v.* When you attach part of a mechanical device with spiral grooves to another part with spiral grooves, you **screw it on**.

Make sure you **screw** each of the nuts **on** tightly.  
Put the new ink cartridge in the bottom half of the pen and then **screw on** the top.

**screwed on** *part.adj.* After you attach part of a mechanical device with spiral grooves to another part with spiral grooves, the first part is **screwed on**.

The top of that water bottle isn't **screwed on**, and it might leak all over the place.

sign in	sign in & signs in	signing in	signed in	signed in
---------	--------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

**1. sign ... in** *p.v.* When you **sign in**, you write your name on a list to show that you have arrived at your workplace or at some other place, such as a hotel or a club.

I'm going to be late. Could you **sign** me **in**?  
All visitors to the consulate are asked to **sign in**.



Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
sign out	sign out & signs out	signing out	signed out	signed out

**1. sign ... out** *p.v.* When you **sign out**, you write your name on a list to show that you have left your workplace or some other place, such as a hotel or club.

*Jim isn't here. He **signed out** at 5:06.*  
*Dr. Wood usually forgets to **sign out** when she leaves the clinic.*

**2. sign ... out** *p.v.* When you **sign** something **out**, such as a book or something valuable or important, you write your name on a list to show that you have borrowed the item and are responsible for returning it.

*The professor **signed** the book **out** of the rare book room.*  
*Remember to **sign out** your lab equipment before chemistry class.*

EXERCISE 12a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. The information in this file is top secret. You have to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ before you can remove it from this room.
- 2. Something \_\_\_\_\_ at the last minute, and I had to cancel my trip.
- 3. We'd better \_\_\_\_\_ the tent before it gets too dark.
- 4. I was in the library, and I \_\_\_\_\_ some interesting books.
- 5. I was sure Janice was still in the building somewhere because she hadn't \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
- 6. The wedding \_\_\_\_\_ when the groom was arrested for bigamy.
- 7. My son always \_\_\_\_\_ a big fight when I try to get him to go to bed.
- 8. I wasn't in the mood for a fight, so I decided to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9. The search party found that the snowmobiler had \_\_\_\_\_ a hole in the ice and drowned.
- 10. No one said anything about you last night. Your name didn't \_\_\_\_\_ even once.
- 11. The store owner \_\_\_\_\_ a "no smoking" sign.
- 12. To attach the filter to the camera lens, you just \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

13. The manager always checks to see who doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ on time.
14. The charity was asked to \_\_\_\_\_ \$2 million toward the purchase of new medical equipment.
15. Someone had \_\_\_\_\_ the lid \_\_\_\_\_ so tightly that I couldn't get it off.
16. My house was destroyed by a tornado. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ for a few days?
17. I was upstairs working when my wife \_\_\_\_\_ to ask me what I wanted for lunch.
18. The applicant's criticism of his previous employer didn't \_\_\_\_\_ well with the interviewer.
19. I bought a plastic Christmas tree that's really easy to \_\_\_\_\_.
20. Nancy \_\_\_\_\_ the Golden Gate Bridge every morning to go to work.
21. I didn't go to a fancy Ivy League college. I \_\_\_\_\_ the hard way.
22. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ the window shade \_\_\_\_\_ so that we can get more light in here, please?
23. Susie's mother told her that Christmas was \_\_\_\_\_, so she had better be a good girl.

**EXERCISE 12b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Make all the phrasal verbs past perfect.**

1. Mike told me that Jerry had been angry and was going to hit Bill, but that Jerry had then changed his mind and walked away. What had Jerry done?
2. Luis had written his name on a piece of paper to show that he had come to work. What had Luis done?
3. The carpenter had dropped suddenly from the second floor to the first floor through a hole in the floor. What had the carpenter done?
4. Timmy had argued with his mother because he didn't want to go to bed. What had Timmy done?
5. Todd's explanation made a good impression on the jury. What had Todd's explanation done?
6. The rich lady had given the money to build an animal shelter. What had the rich lady done?

7. The host of the TV talk show had said that the dancing bear act was going to take place right after the commercial. What had the host of the TV show said about the dancing bear act?
8. The cook had turned the lid of the jar so that it was tight. What had the cook done?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe the lid of the jar after the cook turned it so that it was tight?
10. The homeless shelter had allowed them to sleep there overnight. What had the homeless shelter done?
11. The president canceled his vacation because a serious problem had suddenly occurred. Why did the president cancel his vacation?
12. We'd had a deal to buy a new house, but we didn't buy it because of a problem. What had happened to our deal?
13. Marsha's name had been mentioned during the meeting. What had Marsha's name done?
14. The Ortegas had built a fence around their swimming pool. What had the Ortegas done?
15. You had found some old newspapers while cleaning the attic. What had you done?
16. Miguel had traveled from Miami to New York. What had Miguel done?
17. The doctor had written her name on a piece of paper to show that she had left the hospital. What had the doctor done?

EXERCISE 12c — **Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to make some of them questions, some negative, and some present or past perfect.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_



past perfect phrasal verbs

EXERCISE 12d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

back up, 11	follow up, 11	point to, 4	try out, 11
cut off, 11	go after, 4	put to, 4	wake up, 11
drop off, 11	pay for, 4	take out, 11	work out, 11
fall off, 10	plan for, 4	throw up, 2	wrap up, 4

1. I don't care if it takes me the rest of my life, you'll \_\_\_\_\_ the terrible thing you did!
2. The salesman got a good lead from a friend, and he \_\_\_\_\_ on it immediately.
3. We need to take the baby to the doctor right now. She's \_\_\_\_\_ twice in the last hour.
4. Sales have \_\_\_\_\_ by 13 percent in the last year.
5. That was a very interesting question you \_\_\_\_\_ Mark at the meeting.
6. Relax, everything's going to \_\_\_\_\_ OK.
7. Can you follow me in your car so that I can \_\_\_\_\_ my car \_\_\_\_\_ at the mechanic?
8. Erik \_\_\_\_\_ his son \_\_\_\_\_ and told him it was time for school.
9. I drove into the mountains to \_\_\_\_\_ my truck's four-wheel drive \_\_\_\_\_.
10. You should always \_\_\_\_\_ anything important before you install a new program.
11. The police officer asked the boy where his father was, and the boy \_\_\_\_\_ the store across the street.
12. It's getting pretty late. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ this meeting \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The guy behind the counter \_\_\_\_\_ a small piece of cheese so I could taste it.
14. It was a bit of a problem when Jane brought her children with her to my dinner party. I hadn't \_\_\_\_\_ so many people.
15. The censor told the film director to \_\_\_\_\_ some of the violent scenes.
16. Jane's going to \_\_\_\_\_ that new job in the Boston office.

### 13. FOCUS ON: **passive phrasal verbs, part 1**

The *passive voice* is used when what happened (the verb) is more important than who did it (the subject):

*The scene of the crime was **closed off** by the police.*

when the subject is obvious:

*The tests were **handed in**. (by the students — who else?)*

or when the subject is unknown:

*My dog was **run over**. (by an unknown person)*

The passive is formed with *be* and the past participle of the verb. *Be* can be in any tense and can be continuous:

*The game has been **called off**.*

*My name was **left off**.*

*The tent is being **set up**.*

*The criminals will be **tracked down**.*

As we saw in the first three examples, saying who performed the action with a *by* phrase is optional, but it is always possible. This is a good way to test a sentence to see if it is in the passive:

*The game has been **called off** by the referee.*

*My name was **left off** by Charles.*

*The tent is being **set up** by the campers.*

*The criminals will be **tracked down** by the police.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
call off	call off & calls off	calling off	called off	called off

**1. call ... off** *p.v.* When you **call off** an event, such as a party, game, or something else that had been previously planned, you cancel it.

*The football game was **called off** because of rain.*  
*We can't **call** the party **off** — it's going to start in half an hour.*

close off	close off & closes off	closing off	closed off	closed off
-----------	------------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. close ... off** *p.v.* When you **close off** an area, you prohibit people from entering it or passing through it by locking the door or blocking the entrance.

*The police **closed** several streets **off** because of the parade.*  
*The house was so expensive to heat that the owners **closed** several rooms **off**.*

passive phrasal verbs, part 1

**closed off** *part.adj.* An area that you are prohibited from entering or passing through because the door has been locked or the entrance has been blocked is **closed off**.

*Three rooms in the museum are **closed off**.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
hand in	hand in & hands in	handing in	handed in	handed in

**1. hand ...in** (to) *p.v.* When you complete a test, report, or project and you give it to the person who assigned the work, you **hand** it **in** or **hand** it **in** to that person. **Turn in** is similar to **hand in**.

*The tests must be **handed in** no later than 11:00.*  
*He finished his investigation and **handed** his report **in** to the committee.*

**2. hand ...in** *p.v.* When you **hand in** your resignation or letter of resignation, you inform your employer that you are quitting your job.

*I was so furious that I **handed** my letter of resignation **in** the next day.*  
*The President asked the cabinet members to **hand in** their resignations.*

**3. hand ...in** (to) *p.v.* When you give something to a person of authority who has demanded it or because you no longer need or want it, you **hand** it **in** or **hand** it **in** to a person of authority. **Turn in** is similar to **hand in**.

*The guard was ordered to **hand** his gun **in** after he shot the window washer.*  
*The drivers return to the factory at 5:00 and **hand** their keys **in** to the dispatcher before they leave.*

hit on	hit on & hits on	hitting on	hit on	hit on
--------	------------------	------------	--------	--------

**1. hit on** *p.v.* When you think of an interesting idea or a solution to a problem, you **hit on** it.

*I think I've **hit on** a way to solve this problem.*  
*After two years of tests, they finally **hit on** the solution.*

**2. hit on** *p.v. [informal]* When you **hit on** a person of the opposite sex, you approach and aggressively try to interest that person in you romantically or sexually.

*Lydia had a terrible time at the party. She was **hit on** by every guy there.*  
*Let's go somewhere else — Mark keeps **hitting on** me, and I'm tired of it.*

leave off	leave off & leaves off	leaving off	left off	left off
-----------	------------------------	-------------	----------	----------

**1. leave ...off** *p.v.* When you do not include people or things on a list, either accidentally or deliberately, you **leave** them **off**.

*After what happened at the last party, Dan wasn't surprised that he was **left off** the guest list.*  
*Check to make sure you don't **leave** anyone **off** the list.*



**2. leave off** *p.v.* When you interrupt something that you intend to finish later, you **leave off** at the point where you stop.

*OK class, we **left off** on page 92 last week, so open your books to page 93.*  
*Finish your story, Uncle Fred. You **left off** where the giant octopus was about to eat you.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
let off	let off & lets off	letting off	let off	let off

**1. let ... off** *p.v.* When you **let** someone **off** a bus or other form of transportation, you stop it so that person can leave it.

*The driver **let** her **off** at the corner.*  
*That's my house there. Can you **let** me **off** please?*

**2. let ... off** *p.v.* When you are **let off** by a person in authority, you are not punished or you are given only a light punishment.

*It was Jake's first offense, so the judge **let** him **off** with a warning.*  
*People were shocked that he had been **let off** so lightly.*

**3. let ... off** *p.v.* When you fire a gun or explode bombs or fireworks, you **let** them **off**. When you **let off** steam, you express angry feelings or frustration or do something to relieve those feelings.

*The high school was evacuated after someone **let off** a smoke bomb.*  
*When I was a kid I used to love **letting off** firecrackers on the Fourth of July.*  
*I'm sorry I was so angry this morning. I was just **letting off** steam.*

light up	light up & lights up	lighting up	lit up	lit up
----------	----------------------	-------------	--------	--------

**1. light ... up** *p.v.* When you shine lights on something or attach lights to something, you **light** it **up**.

*Airport runways are **lit up** so that pilots can see them in the dark.*  
*The police **lit** the house **up** with their spotlights.*

**lit up** *part.adj.* After a light is shined on something or you put lights inside or attach lights to the outside of something, it is **lit up**.

*The signs aren't **lit up**, so it's hard to see them at night.*

**2. light ... up** *p.v.* When you **light up** a cigarette, cigar, or pipe, you use a match or lighter to start it burning.

*Here are the matches — let's **light up**.*  
***Lighting** a cigarette **up** next to the gasoline truck was the last thing he ever did.*

passive phrasal verbs, part 1

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
track down	track down & tracks down	tracking down	tracked down	tracked down

**1. track ... down** *p.v.* When you find things or people after looking very hard for them, you **track** them **down**.

*The terrorists were **tracked down** by Interpol.*  
*I finally **tracked down** that book I've been looking for.*

EXERCISE 13a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. The judge \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_ with a warning.
2. It wasn't cold enough, so we \_\_\_\_\_ the hockey game.
3. As soon as Nancy's boyfriend went to the washroom, the guy at the next table \_\_\_\_\_ her.
4. Every Christmas my father used to \_\_\_\_\_ our house with thousands of lights.
5. The police finally \_\_\_\_\_ the killers \_\_\_\_\_ and arrested them.
6. The principal caught me as I was \_\_\_\_\_ a cigarette in the washroom.
7. The room that was damaged by the fire was \_\_\_\_\_ to the public.
8. I was really angry that I was \_\_\_\_\_ the list.
9. That's a great idea! You've really \_\_\_\_\_ something.
10. Three students got a zero because their projects weren't \_\_\_\_\_ on time.
11. Driver, can you \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ at the next corner?
12. Dr. Smith resumed his lecture where he had \_\_\_\_\_ before the lunch break.
13. After Wilson screwed up the finance department, he was asked to \_\_\_\_\_ his letter of resignation.
14. Even though the enemy soldiers were half a mile away, we \_\_\_\_\_ a few shots.
15. The dishonest police officers were ordered to \_\_\_\_\_ their badges \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 13b — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

1. The bride hasn't *called off*. (the wedding, it)

---

---

---

2. Are they *closing off*? (the gallery, it)

---

---

---

3. The accountant *handed in*. (her report, it)

---

---

---

4. Have you *left off*? (Carmen, her)

---

---

---

5. The judge *let off*. (the pickpocket, him)

---

---

---

6. I told him not to *light up*. (the cigarette, it)

---

---

---



passive phrasal verbs, part 1

7. The EPA *tracked down*. (the polluters, them)

EXERCISE 13c — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Make all the phrasal verbs passive.**

1. He discovered the source of the rumor. What happened to the source of the rumor?
2. The students finished their quizzes and gave them to the teacher. What happened to the quizzes?
3. The judge never sends first-time offenders to jail. What always happens to first-time offenders?
4. A guy started talking to Heather at the dance. What happened to Heather?
5. The list of candidates didn't include your name. What happened to your name?
6. The referee canceled the game. What happened to the game?
7. They are putting ropes around the plaza so that no one can go in. What is happening to the plaza?
8. In Question 7, after they finish putting ropes around the plaza, how would you describe it?
9. The battleship shined lights on the enemy submarine. What happened to the enemy submarine?
10. In Question 9, how would you describe the submarine after the battleship shined lights on it?

EXERCISE 13d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

burn down, 5	let out, 7	point out, 7	set up, 5
call in, 5	look at, 5	run into, 1	take apart, 7
give back, 1	pile up, 5	run over, 7	take off, 1
hand back, 5	plan for, 4	screw out of, 3	talk down to, 3

- 1. Most of the city was \_\_\_\_\_ by the invading soldiers.
- 2. Teacher, will points be \_\_\_\_\_ for spelling?
- 3. Dan is so rude — I have never been \_\_\_\_\_ like that before.
- 4. A conference will be \_\_\_\_\_ between the lawyers for each side.
- 5. The Taylors were \_\_\_\_\_ their life savings by their stockbroker.
- 6. The children were happy to be \_\_\_\_\_ of school early.
- 7. I was \_\_\_\_\_ to the office and fired.
- 8. Several flaws in the plan were \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9. Raquel was almost \_\_\_\_\_ by a cement truck while she was driving to work.
- 10. There wasn't enough room inside the cabin, so the firewood had to be \_\_\_\_\_ outside.
- 11. The general said the occupied territory would never be \_\_\_\_\_.
- 12. The test will be \_\_\_\_\_ to the students tomorrow.
- 13. This engine has been \_\_\_\_\_ three times, but no one can figure out what's wrong with it.
- 14. This is a very important project. Every possible problem must be \_\_\_\_\_.
- 15. My neighbor stopped at the side of the road to change a flat tire, and he was \_\_\_\_\_ and killed by a truck.
- 16. Each proposed design for the new flag was \_\_\_\_\_ and rejected.

## 14. FOCUS ON: **participle adjectives formed from phrasal verbs, part 1**

The past participles of many English verbs can also be used as adjectives. You will see that sentences with adjectives formed from past participles are very similar to sentences with verbs in the passive voice: in both cases a form of *be* is used with the past participle. For this reason, it is not always easy to say whether a sentence contains an adjective formed from a past participle or a verb in the passive voice:

*The door was closed.* (Is this a passive sentence or is *closed* an adjective?)

Sometimes, whether a sentence contains an adjective formed from a past participle or a verb in the passive voice is clear from the sentence structure:

*The door was closed by the secretary.* (passive)

*The door was closed when I came home last night.* (adjective)

or the context:

question: *What happens if the health inspector finds rats in a restaurant?*

answer: *It's closed.* (passive)

question: *Is the window open?*

answer: *It's closed.* (adjective)

But in some cases it is not possible to say absolutely whether a sentence contains an adjective formed from a past participle or a verb in the passive voice. Fortunately, it is usually not very important because the meaning is often essentially the same. For that reason, throughout this book true adjectives formed from past participles and past participles functioning as adjectives are both classified as *participle adjectives*.

Much more important than the difference between adjectives formed from past participles and past participles functioning as adjectives is what the words mean.

Some participle adjectives are written with a hyphen (*make-up*), some without a hyphen (*fixed up*), and some as one word (*rundown*). Not everyone agrees which participle adjectives should be hyphenated, which should not, and which should be written as one word, so you will occasionally see the same participle adjective written with or without a hyphen or written as one word. Also, British English hyphenates many participle adjectives that are not normally hyphenated in American English; many of the participle adjectives shown unhyphenated in this book are hyphenated in British English.



Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
butt in	butt in & butts in	butting in	butt in	butt in

**1. butt in** *p.v.* When you enter a conversation, situation, or place (especially a line) aggressively, rudely, and without invitation, you **butt in**.

*I was trying to talk to Jim at the party, but Bob kept **butting in**.*  
*My father taught me that it's not polite to **butt in** line. You have to go to the back and wait your turn.*

dress up	dress up & dresses up	dressing up	dressed up	dressed up
----------	-----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. dress ... up** *p.v.* When you **dress up**, you wear very nice clothes, often for a special occasion. When you **dress** people **up**, you put very nice clothes on them, often for a special occasion.

*You should always **dress up** for a job interview.*  
*The Taylors **dressed** their children **up** so they could take some pictures.*

**dressed up** *part.adj.* When you are **dressed up**, you are wearing very nice clothes, often for a special occasion.

*Where are Tom and Nancy going? They're all **dressed up**.*  
*I felt like an idiot at the party — everyone was really **dressed up** except me.*

**2. dress up** (like/as) *p.v.* When people wear old-fashioned clothes or costumes, they **dress up**, **dress up** like someone, or **dress up** as someone.

*Did you see Charles at the Halloween party? He **dressed up** like a cowboy.*  
*At Jane's costume party, everyone has to **dress up** as a clown.*

dry up	dry up & dries up	drying up	dried up	dried up
--------	-------------------	-----------	----------	----------

**1. dry ... up** *p.v.* When something **dries up** or something **dries** it **up**, all the water or other liquid in it goes away.

*The sun came out and **dried up** all the rain.*  
*The Great Salt Lake is slowly **drying up**.*

**dried up** *part.adj.* After all water or other liquid in something goes away, it is **dried up**.

*The cowboys reached the river only to find that it was **dried up**.*  
*These leaves will burn now that they're **dried up**.*

**2. dry up** *p.v.* When the amount or supply of something gets smaller and then disappears completely, it **dries up**.

*The factory switched to synthetic rubber after the supply of natural rubber **dried up**.*  
*The small grocery store's business **dried up** after a huge supermarket opened across the street.*

participle adjectives formed from phrasal verbs, part 1

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
fill out	fill out & fills out	filling out	filled out	filled out

**1. fill ... out** *p.v.* When you **fill out** a form, you put information in the correct spaces. **Fill in** is the same as **fill out**.

*The personnel director asked Sofia to **fill out** an application.*  
***Fill** the withdrawal slip **out** and give it to the bank teller.*

**filled out** *part.adj.* After all the information is in the correct spaces of a form, the form is **filled out**.

*Here's my application. It's all **filled out**.*  
*Are these forms blank or **filled out**?*

**2. fill out** *p.v.* When slender people gain weight, they **fill out**.

*Jake was really thin when he got out of prison, but he has really **filled out** since then.*  
*Nicole started to **fill out** after she started working at the candy shop.*

put away	put away & puts away	putting away	put away	put away
----------	----------------------	--------------	----------	----------

**1. put ... away** *p.v.* When you return something to the place where it is usually stored while it is not being used, you **put it away**.

*I told you to **put away** your toys before you go outside.*  
*Todd always dries the dishes, and I **put** them **away**.*

**put away** *part.adj.* If something is in the place where it is usually stored while it is not being used, it is **put away**.

*Where is my tool kit? I looked in the closet, and it's not **put away**.*  
*The dishes are **put away**. Now let's watch TV.*

**2. put ... away** *p.v.* When people are **put away**, they are sent to prison or a mental institution.

*I hope they **put** that maniac **away** and throw away the key.*  
*Jake was **put away** for ten years after he was convicted of murder.*

**3. put ... away** *p.v. [informal]* When you consume large quantities of food or drink (especially alcoholic drink), you **put it away**.

*Be sure to buy plenty of beer if David is coming to the party. He can really **put** it **away**.*  
*I don't feel well. I **put away** four hot dogs and a bag of cookies.*

stick up	stick up & sticks up	sticking up	stuck up	stuck up
----------	----------------------	-------------	----------	----------

**1. stick ... up** *p.v.* When you use a gun or other weapon to rob people, banks, or stores, you **stick** them **up**. **Hold up** is the same as **stick up**.

Call the police! They're **sticking up** the bank.  
If we need some money, we can always **stick up** a liquor store.

**stickup** *n.* When someone uses a gun or other weapon to rob a person, bank, or store, there is a **stickup**. A **holdup** is the same as a **stickup**.  
*A man wearing a ski mask yelled, "This is a **stickup**!"*  
*The detective was asking questions about the **stickup** last night.*

**2. stick ... up** *p.v.* When you put something, such as a picture, sign, or notice, in a place where people can see it, you **stick it up**.  
*Sam **stuck** a notice **up** about his lost dog.*  
*I'm going to **stick** these "no smoking" signs **up** all over the school.*

**3. stick ... up** *p.v.* When you push something inside a container or space that is long and narrow, you **stick it up**.  
*We had to take Susie to the emergency room after she **stuck** a paper clip **up** her nose.*  
*Mark **stuck** his hand **up** the chimney to try to find the hidden key.*

**4. stick up** *p.v.* When something long and narrow is raised above the surface, it **sticks up**.  
*Be careful walking around a construction site — there might be a nail **sticking up**.*  
*My hair was **sticking up** in the back after I woke up from my nap.*

**stuck-up** *part.adj.* [informal — although the participle adjective **stuck-up** derives from **stick up**, the verb form is never used in this sense] When you think you are better than other people because you are more beautiful or more intelligent or because you come from a higher level of society, you are **stuck-up**.  
*Heather is the most popular girl in the school, but she isn't **stuck-up**.*  
*They're so **stuck-up** — they'll never sit at our table.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	use up & uses up	using up	used up	used up

**1. use ... up** *p.v.* When you **use up** something, you use all of it.  
*After you **use** something **up**, be sure to write it on the grocery list.*  
*I **used up** all the glue; we need to buy more.*

**used up** *part.adj.* After all of something has been used, it is **used up**.  
*Do we have another tube of toothpaste in the house? This one's **used up**.*

wind up	wind up & winds up	winding up	wound up	wound up

**1. wind ... up** *p.v.* When you turn the handle or key of a mechanical toy, watch, or clock to make it operate, you **wind it up**.



*I overslept because I forgot to **wind up** my alarm clock.*

*This toy doesn't use batteries. You have to **wind it up**.*

**wound up** *part.adj.* After someone turns the handle or key of a mechanical toy, watch, or clock, it is **wound up**.

*The toy soldier is **wound up**. Just push the button to make it walk.*

*What is wrong with this watch? It's **wound up**, but it still doesn't work.*

**wound up** *part.adj.* When you are nervous or tense, you are **wound up**.

*Don't even talk to Joe today. He's really **wound up**.*

*I'm feeling really **wound up** — I need a drink.*

**2. wind up** *p.v.* When you say that someone or something **winds up** a certain way or **winds up** doing something, you mean that this situation was the result of a series of decisions, actions, or unplanned and unexpected occurrences. **End up** is similar to **wind up**.

*We got totally lost and **wound up** 100 miles from the campground.*

*If you don't start driving more carefully, you're going to **wind up** dead.*

**3. wind ... up** *p.v.* When you **wind up** an activity or event, you finish it or get ready to finish it. **Wrap up** is similar to **wind up**.

*The detective **wound up** her investigation and made several arrests.*

*It's getting late. We'd better **wind things up**.*

**4. wind ... up** *p.v.* When you wrap something long, such as an electrical cord, rope, string, or measuring tape, around and around so that it is in a ball or on a spool, you **wind it up**.

*That's enough fishing for today. Let's **wind up** our lines and go home.*

*The firefighters **wound up** their fire hoses and went back to the station.*

**wound up** *part.adj.* When you wrap something long, such as an electrical cord, rope, or measuring tape, around and around so that it is in a ball or on a spool, it is **wound up**.

*This rope is a mess. You should keep it **wound up**.*

*This electrical cord is really **wound up** tight.*

**EXERCISE 14a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. We couldn't decide where to go, so we \_\_\_\_\_ staying home.
2. Be sure you \_\_\_\_\_ this form \_\_\_\_\_ carefully.
3. Carlos loves to eat. He can \_\_\_\_\_ an extra large pizza in less than 15 minutes.

- 4. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ this notice \_\_\_\_\_ on the wall.
- 5. We're going out to a nice restaurant tonight, so be sure to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. Business at the ski shop always \_\_\_\_\_ in summer.
- 7. When you're finished with your Monopoly game, \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. Congress is \_\_\_\_\_ some unfinished business before the summer recess.
- 9. The firefighter \_\_\_\_\_ her hand \_\_\_\_\_ the drain pipe to try to reach the kitten.
- 10. The meeting's almost over — they're \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ now.
- 11. Janice went to the costume party \_\_\_\_\_ like Marie Antoinette.
- 12. The desert is so hot that rainwater \_\_\_\_\_ almost immediately.
- 13. I don't know what time it is. I forgot to \_\_\_\_\_ my clock \_\_\_\_\_.
- 14. Be careful when you sail your boat in this shallow water. Sometimes logs \_\_\_\_\_ from the bottom.
- 15. Lydia has \_\_\_\_\_ a little since she had the baby.
- 16. Aunt Kathy finished knitting the sweater and \_\_\_\_\_ her knitting needles.
- 17. Frank and Jesse James \_\_\_\_\_ a bank in Northfield, Minnesota, in 1876.
- 18. I hope they catch those criminals and \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time.
- 19. I \_\_\_\_\_ all my time \_\_\_\_\_ on the first half of the test and didn't have any time left for the second half.
- 20. My brother is so rude! Whenever I try to talk to my friend Karen, he \_\_\_\_\_ and won't let me talk.

EXERCISE 14b — **Complete the sentences with participle adjectives from this section.**

- 1. I hope it rains soon. Our lawn is really \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. Why are you \_\_\_\_\_? Are you going to a party?
- 3. Some of these forms are blank and others are \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. All the people who live in that neighborhood think they're better than everyone else in town. They're so \_\_\_\_\_.

participle adjectives formed from phrasal verbs, part 1

- 5. I can't use my printer. The toner cartridge is \_\_\_\_\_, and I need to buy a new one.
- 6. The clock isn't working because it isn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7. Timmy, are your toys all over the floor where they were last night, or are they \_\_\_\_\_?

EXERCISE 14c — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

1. Janice *dressed up*. (her son, him)

---

---

---

2. The sun quickly *dries up*. (the water, it)

---

---

---

3. *Filling out* isn't necessary. (the form, it)

---

---

---

4. Ed *put away* in an hour. (six beers, them)

---

---

---

5. They *stuck up*. (notices, them)

---

---

---



6. I'm *winding up*. (my clock, it)

---

---

---

EXERCISE 14d — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. Jake was riding his motorcycle too fast and not being careful. Now he is in the hospital with a broken leg. What happened to Jake?
- 2. It was hard talking to my mother because my sister kept rudely interrupting our conversation. What did my sister keep doing?
- 3. A lot of rain fell and made a small lake in the field. Now, after a week, the water is not there anymore. What happened to the water?
- 4. Alex was playing with his toy trains. Now they are in the box where he keeps them when he is not playing with them. What did Alex do?
- 5. In Question 4, how would you describe Alex’s toys?
- 6. It rained three hours ago, but now there is no more water in the streets. How would you describe the streets?
- 7. I turned the key in this grandfather clock, and now it is working. What did I do to the clock?
- 8. In Question 7, how would you describe the clock?
- 9. Daniela put on her best clothes for the dance. What did Daniela do?
- 10. In Question 9, how would you describe Daniela?
- 11. Luis wrote all the necessary information on the form. What did Luis do?
- 12. In Question 11, how would you describe the form?
- 13. Alex used all of the shampoo. What did he do to the shampoo?
- 14. In question 13, how would you describe the shampoo?

EXERCISE 14e, Review — **Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

backed up, 11	cutoff, 11	hooked up, 9	screwed up, 10
broken-down, 5	cut up, 7	hung up, 9	set up, 5
burned-out, 8	filled in, 10	paid for, 4	wake-up, 11
caught up, 9	grown-up, 10	piled up, 5	worked up, 9

- The clothes are \_\_\_\_\_ in the closet.
- I don't owe any money to the bank for my house. It's \_\_\_\_\_.
- My VCR is connected to my TV. My VCR is \_\_\_\_\_.
- We live far out in the country away from town, our friends, and our families. I don't like being so \_\_\_\_\_.
- My car's \_\_\_\_\_, so I have to take the bus to work.
- All the plans and arrangements for our vacation are ready. Everything is \_\_\_\_\_.
- All the spaces in this form have the necessary information in them. The form is \_\_\_\_\_.
- Nancy's four-year-old son was playing with her computer, and now it's all \_\_\_\_\_.
- I was sick and missed several homework assignments in school. But I worked hard and finished all the homework I missed, and now I'm \_\_\_\_\_.
- I'm very nervous and upset about something. I'm \_\_\_\_\_.
- These DVDs aren't for children — they're \_\_\_\_\_ DVDs.
- Timmy's mother used a knife to cut his meat into many small pieces. Timmy's meat is \_\_\_\_\_.
- I'm tired all the time, I hate my job, and I need a vacation. I'm \_\_\_\_\_.
- My computer crashed last night, but fortunately all my important files were \_\_\_\_\_.
- The hotel forgot my \_\_\_\_\_ call, and I missed my plane.
- The magazines are \_\_\_\_\_ in a big stack.

# 15. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and will or be going to

Both *will* and *be going to* are used to talk about the future in English, but they are not the same.

## Predictions: will or be going to

Use *will* or *be going to* for predictions. When you predict the future, you say what you think will happen:

*The wind will **blow away** these paper plates.*  
*The wind is going to **blow away** these paper plates.*

## Willingness: will

Use only *will* for willingness. When you offer to do something that you do not have to do, you are willing to do it:

*I will **put up** the shelves for you.*

## Plans: be going to

Use only *be going to* for plans. When you decide to do something in the future, whether it is long and complicated or short and simple, you plan to do it:

*He is going to **head for** Mexico next week.*

The future with *will* is formed by using *will* plus the infinitive form of the verb:

statements: *He will **come through** San Francisco.*  
question: *Will he **come through** San Francisco?*  
negative: *He will **not come through** San Francisco.*

These contractions are used with *will*:

<i>I will</i>	=	<i>I'll</i>
<i>you will</i>	=	<i>you'll</i>
<i>he will</i>	=	<i>he'll</i>
<i>she will</i>	=	<i>she'll</i>
<i>it will</i>	=	<i>it'll</i>
<i>they will</i>	=	<i>they'll</i>
<i>will not</i>	=	<i>won't</i>

When two contractions are possible, it is more common to contract *will* with *not* rather than with a pronoun:

common: *He won't **come through** San Francisco.*  
uncommon: *He'll not **come through** San Francisco.*

The future with *be going to* is formed with a form of *be* plus *going to* plus the infinitive form of the verb:

statement: *He is going to **head for** Mexico next week.*  
question: *Is he going to **head for** Mexico next week?*  
negative: *He is not going to **head for** Mexico next week.*



These contractions are used with *be going to*:

<i>I am</i>	=	<i>I'm</i>
<i>you are</i>	=	<i>you're</i>
<i>he is</i>	=	<i>he's</i>
<i>she is</i>	=	<i>she's</i>
<i>it is</i>	=	<i>it's</i>
<i>they are</i>	=	<i>they're</i>
<i>are not</i>	=	<i>aren't</i>
<i>is not</i>	=	<i>isn't</i>

When two contractions are possible, both are equally common:

- common: *He's not going to **head for** Mexico next week.*
- common: *He isn't going to **head for** Mexico next week.*

In informal spoken English, *going to* is often pronounced *gonna*. It is not necessary to pronounce *going to* in this way, but it is necessary to understand it.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
blow away	blow away & blows away	blowing away	blew away	blown away

**1. blow ...away** *p.v.* When the wind moves something away from where it was, it **blows** it **away**.

- Don't leave the newspaper outside. The wind will **blow** it **away**.*
- The picnic wasn't much fun. It was really windy, and everything kept **blowing away**.*

**2. blow ...away** *p.v. [informal]* When a person or company has an ability, product, or service that is much better than that of a competing person or company, it **blows away** the competing person or company.

- Apple's new computer is so fast it's going to **blow away** the competition.*
- I thought I had a chance to win the race, but Erik just **blew** me **away**.*

**3. blow ...away** *p.v. [informal]* When something you have seen or heard makes you very shocked, amazed, or emotional, it **blows** you **away**.

- The first time I saw the Pyramids, they just **blew** me **away**.*
- I was **blown away** when my mother told me that I was adopted.*

come through				
	come through & comes through	coming through	came through	come through

**1. come through** *p.v.* When you are in a place and people or things **come through** it, they pass from one side to the other side where you are.

- Betty **came through** the door and sat down at our table.*
- The soldiers were **coming through** the hole in the wall.*

**2. come through** *p.v.* When people travel to your town, stay for a while, and then leave, they **come through** or **come through** town.

*Aunt Sally promised she'd **come through** Milwaukee on her way to Indianapolis.*

**3. come through** *p.v.* When important information, authorization, or permission that you have been waiting for is received, it **comes through**.

*We can buy the house — the loan finally **came through**.*  
*The execution was stopped when the call from the governor **came through**.*

**4. come through** (with) *p.v.* When you promise to do something or produce something and keep your promise, you **come through** or **come through** with what you promised to do or promised to produce.

*We were all surprised when Bob **came through** with front row tickets just like he said he would.*  
*The state legislature promised to provide the financing for a new stadium, but they didn't **come through**.*

**5. come through** *p.v.* When you **come through** a difficult or dangerous experience, you survive it.

*My Uncle Fred saw lots of action during the war, but he **came through** without a scratch.*  
***Coming through** the earthquake alive was a miracle.*

**6. come through** *p.v.* When someone's feelings, attitudes, or opinions can be perceived by someone else, they **come through**.

*The author's hatred of the dictatorship **came through** in the novel.*  
*The professor's enthusiasm for the subject really **comes through** in his lectures.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
dry out	dry out & dries out	drying out	dried out	dried out

**1. dry ... out** *p.v.* When something **dries out** or something **dries** it **out**, all the water or other liquid in it goes away.

*Before you put this tent away, be sure you **dry** it **out**.*  
*After the flood, it took weeks for our house to **dry out**.*

**dried out** *part.adj.* After all the water or other liquid in something goes away, it is **dried out**.

*My skin always gets **dried out** in the winter.*  
*We shampooed our carpet a week ago, and it's still not **dried out**.*

fix up				
	fix up & fixes up	fixing up	fixed up	fixed up

**1. fix ... up** *p.v.* When you **fix up** a place, such as a building, street, or park, you repair and decorate it.

*I am going to **fix** this place **up** and try to sell it.*  
*The city decided to **fix up** the park.*

**fixed up** *part.adj.* After you repair and decorate a place, such as a building, street, or park, it is **fixed up**.  
*Now that his house is **fixed up**, it looks pretty nice.*  
*When you see how **fixed up** Jim’s apartment is now, you’ll be surprised.*

**fixer-upper** *n. [informal]* A **fixer-upper** is a building in poor condition that can be repaired, renovated, or redecorated in order to increase its value.  
*The way to make money in real estate is to buy a **fixer-upper** and do as much of the work yourself as you can.*

**2. fix ... up** *p.v.* When you **fix** yourself **up**, you style your hair nicely and put on make-up and nice clothes.  
*If you’re going to that fancy restaurant, you’d better **fix** yourself **up**.*  
*Heather is upstairs **fixing** herself **up** for the party.*

**fixed up** *part.adj.* After you style your hair nicely and put on make-up and nice clothes, you are **fixed up**.  
*Where’s Lydia going? She’s all **fixed up**.*  
*I got all **fixed up**, and my boyfriend took me to a fast food restaurant.*

**3. fix ... up (with)** *p.v.* When you **fix** people **up** with something, you arrange for them to have or to use something that they need or want.  
*We told the hotel desk clerk that we wanted their best room, and she **fixed us up** with the honeymoon suite.*  
*The travel agent **fixed** me **up** with a limo to take me to the resort.*

**4. fix ... up (with)** *p.v. [informal]* When you **fix** people **up** or **fix** them **up** with someone, you arrange a date for them with a member of the opposite sex.  
*Linda and Tom are perfect for each other. I’m going to **fix** them **up**.*  
*I asked Jerry if he’d **fix** me **up** with his sister.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
go with	go with & goes with	going with	went with	gone with

**1. go with** *p.v.* When one thing is usually or always found with another, they **go with** each other.  
*A lot of responsibility **goes with** being a doctor.*  
*I never wanted to own an old house because of all the maintenance that **goes with** it.*

**2. go with** *p.v.* When two things are part of one unit or set or if they are meant to be with each other, they **go with** each other.



One of the fringe benefits of that job was the car that **went with** it.  
You can't buy the cup without the saucer that **goes with** it.

**3. go with** p.v. When one item of clothing looks nice with another, they **go with** each other.

She needs to find a blouse that **goes with** her new skirt.  
I like white shirts because they **go with** everything.

**4. go with** p.v. When you **go with** people, you agree with them and support their idea or plan.

Senator Dolittle has no opinions. He just **goes with** the majority.  
We've decided to **go with** the committee's recommendation.

**5. go with** p.v. When you choose someone or something from a group, you **go with** your choice.

That gray suit was nice, but I think I'm going to **go with** the black one.  
Everyone who applied for the job is highly qualified. I don't know who I'm going to **go with**.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
head back	head back & heads back	heading back	headed back	headed back

**1. head back (to)** p.v. When you **head back** or **head back** to a certain location, you return to a place where you were before. When you are **headed back** or are **heading back** to a certain location, you are returning to a place where you were before.

We'll spend a month in California and then **head back** to Des Moines.  
We got to the beach around 10:00, and we **headed back** when it started to get dark.

head for	head for & heads for	heading for	headed for	headed for
----------	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. head for** p.v. When you **head for** a certain location, you move toward it. When you are **headed for** or are **heading for** a certain location, you are planning to go there or you have stopped and will resume going there. **Head toward** is the same as **head for**.

Tomorrow we're going to leave Des Moines and **head for** California.  
I told the guy at the gas station I was **headed for** Santa Fe.

**2. head for** p.v. When you are **headed for** or are **heading for** a certain situation, condition, or consequence, it is becoming more likely.

If you don't shut your mouth you're **headed for** trouble.  
This is going to be a great vacation — we're **heading for** a good time!

phrasal verbs and will or be going to

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
tell on	tell on & tells on	telling on	told on	told on

**1. tell on** *p.v. [informal — used primarily by children]* When you **tell on** people, you inform someone in authority, such as a parent or teacher, that they have made a mistake or broken a rule.

*I broke a glass. You're not going to **tell on** me, are you?*  
*Timmy didn't do his homework, and his sister **told on** him.*

EXERCISE 15a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. The first time I held my newborn son in my arms it just \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. I asked Linda if she would \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ with her friend Nancy.
- 3. Bob said he could get us backstage after the concert, and he \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ just like he promised.
- 4. This house is dump now, but after I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_, it'll look nice.
- 5. I saw you eating cookies before dinner when Mommy told you not to. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ you.
- 6. The composer's love for his native land really \_\_\_\_\_ through in his music.
- 7. Can you help me? I'm \_\_\_\_\_ Toronto, but I'm lost.
- 8. I've never been to the opera before. I think I'd better \_\_\_\_\_ myself \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9. The train \_\_\_\_\_ town three times a week.
- 10. If you keep charging stuff like crazy on your credit cards, you're \_\_\_\_\_ bankruptcy.
- 11. Do you think these brown pants \_\_\_\_\_ this blue shirt?
- 12. All the books damaged in the flood have to be \_\_\_\_\_.
- 13. Coke's new sales promotion is going to \_\_\_\_\_ Pepsi \_\_\_\_\_.
- 14. We sat by the phone nervously waiting for the judge's decision to \_\_\_\_\_.

15. My brother works in a car rental place, and he said he can \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ with a Mercedes at no extra cost.
16. After looking at pictures of several models, the photographer decided to \_\_\_\_\_ Nicole.
17. Dr. Wood \_\_\_\_\_ the door and said hello.
18. All the clothes I left outside to dry were \_\_\_\_\_ by the storm.
19. My father hated being a salesman because of all the travel that \_\_\_\_\_ the job.
20. Two of my brothers went to Vietnam, but only one \_\_\_\_\_ it alive.
21. I asked the clerk in the computer store if the monitor \_\_\_\_\_ the computer.
22. It's getting late and I'm tired. I think I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ to my house.
23. His proposal makes a lot of sense, so we're going to \_\_\_\_\_ it.

**EXERCISE 15b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Use *will* or *be going to* with all phrasal verbs.**

1. I asked the restaurant manager for the best table in the house, and he is going to give us a table next to the fireplace. What is the restaurant manager going to do?
2. Linda's father promised to pay for her wedding, and she is sure that he will. What is Linda sure about?
3. Raquel's husband is going to be very surprised when she tells him she won \$10 million in the lottery. What is the news going to do to her husband?
4. He'll repair some things in his house and paint it before he puts it on the market. What will he do?
5. In Question 4, how will the house be after he makes some repairs and paints it?
6. Timmy won't tell the teacher that Susie didn't do her homework if she gives him a candy bar. What won't Timmy do?
7. Those mobile homes aren't going to be there after the tornado. What is the tornado going to do?



phrasal verbs and will or be going to

- 8. If there’s an earthquake, no one in this old building will survive. What won’t the people do if there’s an earthquake?
- 9. She’ll put on her nicest outfit and her best jewelry. What will she do?
- 10. In Question 9, how will she look after she puts on her nicest outfit and her best jewelry?
- 11. Tomorrow, you’re going to leave San Diego and go to Tucson. What are you going to do tomorrow?
- 12. A month from now, you’re going to leave Tucson and return to San Diego. What are you going to do a month from now?
- 13. Erik said he won’t ask his sister if she will go on a date with Mike. What won’t Erik do?
- 14. Lydia is at the paint store to choose a paint color for her house. She hates the color blue. What isn’t Lydia going to do?
- 15. IBM has a new microchip that’s twice as fast as the competition’s fastest microchip. What is IBM going to do to the competition?
- 16. Uncle Fred is going to visit our town, stay for a short time, and then continue on his trip to Florida. What is Uncle Fred going to do?
- 17. This puddle is going to slowly evaporate and disappear. What is the puddle going to do?
- 18. In Question 17, after the puddle evaporates, how will it be?

EXERCISE 15c — **Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to use *will* and *be going to*.**

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_

- 6. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 15d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

back off, 12	come up, 12	leave off, 13	screw on, 12
call off, 13	fall through, 12	let off, 13	sign in, 12
close off, 13	hand in, 13	light up, 13	sign out, 12
come across, 12	hit on, 13	put up, 12	track down, 13

- 1. During the discussion, your name \_\_\_\_\_ several times.
- 2. Our vacation plans \_\_\_\_\_ after Tom broke his leg.
- 3. I told you not to \_\_\_\_\_ that cigarette \_\_\_\_\_ in here.
- 4. Flying Mom here for the holidays is going to cost \$1,000. My brother is going to pay \$300, and I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ the rest of the money.
- 5. So far, the police have been unable to \_\_\_\_\_ the stolen paintings.
- 6. The searchlights \_\_\_\_\_ the night sky, looking for enemy bombers.
- 7. You can't go in that part of the museum; it's been \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. When you travel, always \_\_\_\_\_ the tops of your toiletries \_\_\_\_\_ tightly.
- 9. We decided to \_\_\_\_\_ our ski trip \_\_\_\_\_ because there wasn't enough snow.
- 10. I was getting really angry, and I told him that I was going to punch him in the nose if he didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- 11. The teacher told the students to \_\_\_\_\_ their homework.
- 12. I didn't agree with that list of the 100 best movies. They \_\_\_\_\_ some of my favorites \_\_\_\_\_.
- 13. The manager reminded Maria not to forget to \_\_\_\_\_ when she comes to work in the morning.

phrasal verbs with gerund objects, part 1

14. Mrs. Nash isn't in the office anymore. She \_\_\_\_\_ about an hour ago.
15. The judge told Jake that the next time he got in trouble he wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ him  
\_\_\_\_\_ with a warning.
16. I was going through some stuff in the attic, and I \_\_\_\_\_ some  
interesting old pictures.

16. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with gerund objects, part 1

Gerunds — verbs in the *-ing* form that function as nouns — can serve as objects of many phrasal verbs.

It is more common to use gerund objects with nonseparable two- and three-word phrasal verbs:

She's **counting on** getting that job.  
gerund

I don't **feel up to** playing hockey.  
gerund

but gerund objects are sometimes used with separable phrasal verbs:

I wouldn't **put** robbing a bank **past** him.  
gerund

Mr. Taylor wants to **give** smoking up.  
gerund

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
believe in	believe in & believes in	believing in	believed in	believed in

1. **believe in** p.v. When you **believe in** something or **believe in** doing something, you have a strong opinion about something that is important to you.

I **believe in** working hard and saving money.  
Maria doesn't **believe in** sex before marriage.

2. **believe in** p.v. When you **believe in** something, you think it exists.

Do you **believe in** ghosts?  
Ned is an atheist. He doesn't **believe in** God.



**3. believe in** *p.v.* When you **believe in** people, you have confidence in them and believe what they say because you think they are honest, correct, or competent.

*I don't care what anyone else says, I still **believe in** you.*  
*We want to **believe in** you, but we need some proof that your invention really works.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
carry on	carry on & carries on	carrying on	carried on	carried on

**1. carry on** *p.v.* When you **carry on**, you continue as before, despite a difficult experience in your life.

*You'll have to **carry on** for the sake of the children.*  
*It was difficult for Mrs. Nelson to **carry on** after her husband died.*

**2. carry on** (with) *p.v.* When you **carry on**, **carry on** with an activity, or **carry on** doing an activity, you continue it or continue doing it.

*The soldiers stopped working when the general entered the room, and he told them to **carry on**.*  
*She plans to **carry on** with her career after the baby is born.*  
*They knew I was trying to sleep, but they **carried on** talking and singing anyway.*

**3. carry ... on** *p.v.* When you **carry** something **on** an airplane, you keep it with you in the passenger compartment instead of giving it to an airline agent to put in the baggage compartment.

*This suitcase is pretty big. I hope they'll let me **carry it on**.*  
*You should **carry** your laptop computer **on**. You don't want to take any chances.*

**carry-on** *n.* **Carry-on**, **carry-on** luggage, **carry-on** baggage, **carry-on** bags, and so on, are not given to an airline agent to put in the baggage compartment but are kept in the passenger compartment of an airplane.

*I'm staying only one night in New York, so all I'll need is a **carry-on** bag.*

**4. carry on** (about) *p.v. [informal]* When you **carry on** or **carry on** about something, you are very persistent and vocal about something that upsets you.

*I forgot our anniversary, and my wife **carried on** all day.*  
*I said I was sorry; now will you please stop **carrying on** about it?*

count on	count on & counts on	counting on	counted on	counted on
----------	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. count on** *p.v.* When you need something important to happen or a certain condition to exist, you are **counting on** it. When you need someone to do something important, you are **counting on** that person.

*I'm **counting on** getting a ride to the airport with Betty.*  
*Farmers **count on** a lot of rain in the spring.*

phrasal verbs with gerund objects, part 1

**2. count on** *p.v.* When you rely on someone or something for help or support if you need it, you are **counting on** that thing or that person.

*I'm going to sell this car and buy one that always starts. I need a car I can **count on**.  
The governor said that she's **counting on** our support in the next election.*

**3. count on** *p.v.* When you are certain than something will happen or that a certain condition will exist, you are **counting on** it.

*Marty makes a fool of himself at every party. You can **count on** it.  
You can **count on** crowds and long lines at Disney World if you go in August.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
get through	get through & gets through	getting through	got through	gotten/got through

**1. get through** (with) *p.v.* When you **get through**, **get through** with an activity, or **get through** doing an activity, you finish it or finish doing it.

*I have so much homework that I might not **get through** with it until midnight.  
After you **get through** washing the dishes, you can start ironing.*

**2. get through** (to) *p.v.* When you **get through** or **get through** to someone, usually on a telephone or radio, you are able to speak to that person.

*Nancy tried calling Jim last night, but she couldn't **get through**.  
It wasn't easy, but I finally **got through** to my brother in Borneo.*

**3. get through** (to) *p.v.* When you **get through** or **get through** to someone, you make that person understand your opinion or point of view.

*Mr. Taylor has tried to make his daughter understand why it's important to work hard in school and get good grades, but he just can't **get through**.  
I've explained it a hundred times! What do I have to do to **get through** to you?*

**4. get ... through** *p.v. [informal]* When you **get** something **through** someone's head, you make that person understand your opinion or point of view. When you **get** something **through** your own head, you understand it.

*I finally **got it through** my son's head that I was serious about sending him to military school.  
When are you going to **get it through** your head that our marriage is over?*

**5. get ... through** *p.v.* When something **gets** you **through** a difficult experience, it comforts and supports you.

*Julia's faith in God was what **got her through** the loss of her husband.  
He was very nervous about giving the speech, so he had a drink to help **get him through** the ordeal.*



Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
go for	go for & goes for	going for	went for	gone for

1. **go for** p.v. [informal] When you **go for** something, you like it a lot.

*Erik really **goes for** scuba diving.*  
*Let's go to a different nightclub. I don't **go for** jazz.*
2. **go for** p.v. When you **go for** something, you try to achieve it.

*The gymnast said she was going to **go for** the gold at the next Olympics.*  
*After she finished her master's, she **went for** a Ph.D.*
3. **go for** p.v. [always continuous] When you have something **going for** you, you have an advantage that makes it easier for you to do something or get something that you want.

*Sam's not especially good at basketball, but he has one thing **going for** him — he's seven feet tall.*  
*I have ten years of experience **going for** me, so I think I have a good chance of getting the job.*
4. **go for** p.v. When you say that a statement about one person or thing **goes for** another person or thing, you mean that it is also true about the other person or thing. When you say "That **goes for** me," you are agreeing with someone else's opinion.

*Heather said that Tom was a jerk, and I said that that **goes for** Tom's brother Bill, too.*  
*Betty's really angry about it, and that **goes for** me, too.*

hold off	hold off & holds off	holding off	held off	held off
----------	----------------------	-------------	----------	----------

1. **hold off** p.v. When you **hold off** or **hold off** doing something, you delay doing it.

*I **held off** selling our house until our youngest child moved out.*  
*You'd better **hold off** accusing Mike until you're 100 percent sure.*
2. **hold ... off** p.v. When you **hold off** an attack, you prevent the attacker from getting close to you or from winning the fight. If you **hold off** a competitor, you prevent the competitor from winning.

*The enemy was so strong that there was no way to **hold them off**.*  
*The champion **held off** the challenger and won the game.*

put past

1. **put ... past** p.v. [used only in the infinitive form and only in negative sentences] When you want to say that you think someone is capable of doing something wrong, you say that you "wouldn't **put it past**" (that person). When you want to warn someone that you think another person is capable of doing something wrong, you say "Don't **put it past** (that person)."



phrasal verbs with gerund objects, part 1

*Is he capable of murder? Well, I wouldn't **put** killing someone **past** him.  
Marty is evil. There isn't any crime I wouldn't **put past** him.  
You don't think Hank would steal money from his grandmother? I know him better  
than you do — don't **put it past** him.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
think about	think about & thinks about	thinking about	thought about	thought about

**1. think about** p.v. When you **think about** something or **think about** doing something, you consider it before making a decision.

*The salesman tried to get me to sign the contract, but I said I'd **think about** it.  
I'm **thinking about** quitting my job.*

EXERCISE 16a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. This house is too small for our family. We're \_\_\_\_\_ moving to a bigger one.
2. These skis are pretty big. Do you think they'll let me \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ the airplane?
3. This work is very important, and I know you can do it. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ you.
4. At the next Olympics, Raul's going to \_\_\_\_\_ a new record in the pole vault.
5. I don't \_\_\_\_\_ talking about people behind their backs.
6. I tried several times to call Alex in Timbuktu, but I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The roller coaster is very popular. If you go on the weekend, you can \_\_\_\_\_ waiting in line for three hours.
8. As soon as you \_\_\_\_\_ washing the car, come inside and eat lunch.
9. I wanted to buy a digital camera, but I \_\_\_\_\_ buying one until the prices fell.
10. Nicholas seems like a nice guy, but he isn't. I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ anything \_\_\_\_\_ him.
11. David asked me to buy coffee when I went to the store, but I forgot, and he \_\_\_\_\_ about it for an hour.

- 12. The defenders are going to \_\_\_\_\_ the attackers as long as they could.
- 13. Mike really \_\_\_\_\_ auto racing when he was young.
- 14. Sally has a good education and a pleasant personality. She has a lot \_\_\_\_\_ her.
- 15. How can I \_\_\_\_\_ after this terrible tragedy?
- 16. I’ve explained the rules a thousand times. Why can’t you \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ your head that I’m the boss around here, not you?
- 17. Everyone else thinks Dr. Johnson’s ideas are crazy, but I \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- 18. Uncle John was the only one who knew how to run this business. Now that he’s dead, we won’t be able to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 19. I didn’t used to \_\_\_\_\_ ghosts, but what I saw last night changed my mind.
- 20. I’ve tried to get her to understand my point of view, but I can’t \_\_\_\_\_ to her.
- 21. The Republicans are idiots, and that \_\_\_\_\_ the Democrats, too.
- 22. Letters from his family helped Jake \_\_\_\_\_ his prison sentence.
- 23. I always knew that my brother was the one person I could \_\_\_\_\_ if I had a problem.

EXERCISE 16b — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. Judy likes taking pictures a lot. How does she feel about taking pictures?
- 2. Maria didn’t finish studying until 11:00 P.M. What didn’t Maria do until 11:00 P.M.?
- 3. The Ortegas took two bags with them to keep in the passenger compartment when they flew to New York. What did they do to the two bags?
- 4. In Question 3, what kind of bags did the Ortegas keep with them?
- 5. Jane is considering spending the summer in Bolivia. What is Jane doing?
- 6. Bill feels strongly that hunting is wrong. How does Bill feel about hunting?

phrasal verbs with gerund objects, part 1

- 7. Paul couldn't continue his career as a dancer after his accident. What couldn't he do after his accident?
- 8. We delayed having children until after we had done some traveling. What did we do?
- 9. You think stealing is something Hank would do. What do you think about Hank?
- 10. Nancy is going to try to call her sister in Nepal tonight. What is Nancy going to try to do tonight?
- 11. Hank isn't reliable. You can't be certain he will do what he says he will do. What can't you do to Hank?
- 12. Dan was very angry, and he yelled and complained for three hours. What did Dan do for three hours?
- 13. You can't be 100 percent certain that the weather will be nice in Florida in the winter. What can't you do to the winter weather in Florida?
- 14. Many children are sure that monsters are real. What do many children think about monsters?

EXERCISE 16c — **Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to use gerund objects.**

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_



EXERCISE 16d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

closed off, 13	filled out, 14	put away, 14	used up, 14
dressed up, 14	fixed up, 15	screwed on, 12	wound up, 14
dried up, 14	lit up, 13	stuck-up, 14	wrapped up, 4

- 1. Charles is so \_\_\_\_\_. He thinks he’s better than everyone else because he comes from a rich family.
- 2. Now that your house is \_\_\_\_\_, it’s worth a lot more.
- 3. There isn’t any more paper for the copier. It’s \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. I washed and dried the dishes, and now they’re \_\_\_\_\_ in the cabinet.
- 5. Frank’s really \_\_\_\_\_ about his wedding tomorrow.
- 6. The presents have wrapping paper on them. They’re \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7. This form has all the information in the correct spaces. It’s \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. The floor of the bathroom isn’t wet anymore. It’s \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9. Why is Sarah all \_\_\_\_\_? Is she going out dancing?
- 10. Be sure the top of the Coke bottle is \_\_\_\_\_. If it isn’t, the Coke will go flat.
- 11. You can’t go in the east wing of the palace because it’s \_\_\_\_\_.
- 12. I can see the road easily at night when I’m driving because it’s \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 16e, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

break down, 5	get over with, 3	put up with, 3
break out, 9	give up, 9	see about, 7
butt in, 14	go in for, 3	take in, 7
feel up to, 3	leave off, 13	wind up, 14
get around to, 6	look forward to, 3	work out, 11
get out of, 6	put up, 12	

- 1. We couldn’t decide where to go for dinner last night, so we \_\_\_\_\_ staying home.

2. Sally loves all outdoor sports, and she especially \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ swimming.
3. I hate cigarettes, and I will not \_\_\_\_\_ smoking in  
my house!
4. It's been seven years since Tom saw his sister. He's really \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ seeing her again.
5. My eyesight got so bad that I had to \_\_\_\_\_ driving.
6. I'm exhausted. I really don't \_\_\_\_\_ doing any  
more sightseeing.
7. The heat in my apartment doesn't work. I need to \_\_\_\_\_ the manager  
\_\_\_\_\_ getting it fixed.
8. It's been three hours since I asked you. When are you going to \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ taking out the garbage?
9. I promised Sally I would lend her \$1,000, but now I don't want to give it to her. How can I  
\_\_\_\_\_ lending her the money?
10. Cleaning the house is a lot of work, but I have to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ before my mother-in-law comes to visit.
11. The teacher continued her lecture where she \_\_\_\_\_ the previous week.
12. I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ all the details, but I've decided to quit my job and  
start my own business.
13. I was late to work because my car \_\_\_\_\_ on the expressway.
14. My TV was broken, so I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and had it fixed.
15. When you're camping, you should always \_\_\_\_\_ your tent \_\_\_\_\_ before it  
gets dark.
16. Fighting between protesters and government troops \_\_\_\_\_ after the  
general canceled the election.
17. The line to buy tickets for the football game was really long, so a lot of people tried to  
\_\_\_\_\_.

## 17. FOCUS ON: adverbs and phrasal verbs

Adverbs are words that modify verbs. Many adverbs end with *-ly*, for example, *quickly, slowly, suddenly, foolishly*; but other adverbs, such as *always, sometimes, and never*, do not. The placement of adverbs in sentences with phrasal verbs depends on whether the verb is intransitive or transitive, and if transitive, whether it is separable or nonseparable. In general, adverbs are placed like ordinary one-word verbs with the exception of nonseparable phrasal verbs, which also allow for the placement of adverbs between the verb and the particle. All possible placements of adverbs in sentences containing the various types of phrasal verbs are shown with Xs:

### Intransitive phrasal verbs

X subject X verb particle X.

*Immediately* he **came over**.

He *immediately* **came over**.

He **came over** *immediately*.

### Separable phrasal verbs

X subject X verb particle object X.

X subject X verb object particle X.

*Angrily* she **ripped up** the paper.

*Angrily* she **ripped** the paper **up**.

She *angrily* **ripped up** the paper.

She *angrily* **ripped** the paper **up**.

She **ripped up** the paper *angrily*.

She **ripped** the paper **up** *angrily*.

### Nonseparable phrasal verbs

X subject X verb X particle object X.

*Slowly* we **headed into** town.

We *slowly* **headed into** town.

We **headed** *slowly* **into** town.

We **headed into** town *slowly*.

### Three-word phrasal verbs

X subject X verb ? particle ? object X.

*Eventually* I **grew out of** the sweater.

I *eventually* **grew out of** the sweater.

I **grew out of** the sweater *eventually*.



Placing adverbs within three-word phrasal verbs is sometimes possible, but it can be problematic. Sometimes an adverb between the verb and first particle sounds acceptable and other times it does not. Sometimes an adverb placed between the two particles sounds acceptable, and other times it will not. This is more a matter of style than of what is correct or incorrect, so unless you are sure it sounds OK, it is better not to place adverbs within three-word verbs.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
come over	come over & comes over	coming over	came over	come over

1. **come over** (to) *p.v.* When people move from one side of a place to the other, where you are, they **come over** or **come over** to where you are.

*Come over here and say that again.*  
*When he saw me, he immediately **came over** to my table and said hello.*

2. **come over** (to) *p.v.* When people come to your house for a visit, they **come over** or **come over** to your house.

*Would you like to **come over** tonight?*  
*Jim **comes over** to my house every night.*

3. **come over** *p.v.* When people cross a river or cross the ocean from east to west or west to east, they **come over**.

*My grandparents **came over** from Sweden in 1904.*  
*The ferry **comes over** to this side of the lake every day at 5:30 P.M.*

fall apart	fall apart & falls apart	falling apart	fell apart	fallen apart
------------	--------------------------	---------------	------------	--------------

1. **fall apart** *p.v.* When the parts of something become completely separated because it is old or in bad condition, it **falls apart**.

*These old shoes are starting to **fall apart**.*  
*There's no way to fix this thing. It has completely **fallen apart**.*

2. **fall apart** *p.v.* When a plan, arrangement, system, or agreement fails, it **falls apart**.

*After five difficult years, their marriage totally **fell apart**.*  
*The peace agreement is slowly **falling apart**.*

3. **fall apart** *p.v.* When people suddenly lose control and start laughing or become very upset or emotional, they **fall apart**.

*Sally **fell apart** when she heard the tragic news.*  
*Tom was so funny at the party last night that I just **fell apart** laughing.*

get back at	get back at & gets back at	getting back at	got back at	gotten/got back at
-------------	----------------------------	-----------------	-------------	--------------------

1. **get back at** *p.v.* When you **get back at** people, you do something bad to them because they have done something bad to you.
- John won't forget what you did to him. He'll definitely **get back at** you someday.*  
*She wants to **get back at** her ex-husband for the way he treated her.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
go about	go about & goes about	going about	went about	gone about

1. **go about** *p.v.* When you **go about** something or **go about** doing something, you begin or continue to follow all the steps necessary to do it.
- I have no idea how to **go about** opening a restaurant.*  
*Everyday he quietly **went about** his business and never caused any problems.*

grow out of	grow out of & grows out of	growing out of	grew out of	grown out of
-------------	----------------------------	----------------	-------------	--------------

1. **grow out of** *p.v.* When people become too tall or too big to wear an item of clothing, they **grow out of** the item of clothing.
- I bought Susie's shoes one size too big, but she's quickly **growing out of** them.*  
*Do you want these clothes for your daughter? Mine has **grown out of** them.*
2. **grow out of** *p.v.* When people become too mature for a toy, for an interest, or for a form of behavior, they have **grown out of** it.
- Judy had a big crush on a rock star when she was in high school, but after a while she **grew out of** it.*  
*Jim's son is going through a difficult stage, but he'll **grow out of** it in a couple of years.*

head into	head into & heads into	heading into	headed into	headed into
-----------	------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

1. **head into** *p.v.* When you **head into** or are **headed into** a place or area, you begin to enter it.
- I almost had an accident as I was **heading into** town.*  
*We scared away the bear, and it **headed** slowly **into** the woods.*  
*Jim was **headed into** Ashland when his car broke down.*

rip up	rip up & rips up	ripping up	ripped up	ripped up
--------	------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

1. **rip ... up** *p.v.* When you tear paper or cloth into many pieces, you **rip** it **up**.
- Nancy was furious when she read Tom's letter, and she angrily **ripped** it **up**.*  
*Always **rip up** a check before you put it in the wastebasket.*

**ripped up** *part.adj.* After a piece of paper or cloth has been torn into many small piece, it is **ripped up**.

*After the kids opened their Christmas presents, the floor was covered with **ripped up** paper.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
wear down	wear down & wears down	wearing down	wore down	worn down

**1. wear ... down** *p.v.* When something **wears down** or when someone **wears** something **down**, the top or surface gradually disappears because of friction.

*The feet of thousands of visitors a year have **worn down** the marble steps of this old church.*  
*The mechanic told me that my car's brake pads have **worn down** badly and need to be replaced.*

**worn down** *part.adj.* After the top or surface of something has gradually disappeared because of friction, it is **worn down**.

*The marble steps are very old and **worn down**.*  
*The tread on these tires is dangerously **worn down**.*

**2. wear ... down** *p.v.* When people **wear** you **down**, they gradually persuade you, through persistent pressure, to change your mind about a decision.

*He wouldn't tell me the answer, but little by little, I **wore** him **down**.*  
*She still will not give us permission, but I think we're **wearing** her **down**.*

EXERCISE 17a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. I waved to Jim when I saw him across the street, and he \_\_\_\_\_ and talked to me.
- 2. This company has been \_\_\_\_\_ since that idiot was made the manager.
- 3. Don't leave the newspaper where the dog can get it. He'll totally \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. We need a lot of things from the supermarket. When are you \_\_\_\_\_ town?



5. Jake told the boss I was not doing my job, and I got fired, but I \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ Jake — I told his wife about his girlfriend.
6. During the American Revolution, the French fleet \_\_\_\_\_ and helped  
the Americans fight the British.
7. The heels on my boots have \_\_\_\_\_ badly, and I need to get  
them replaced.
8. Can you help me get hooked up to the Internet? I have no idea how to \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ it.
9. Don't spend a lot of money on baby clothes — she'll \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ them in a few weeks.
10. I need a new car. This piece of junk is \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Sally asks her parents for a pony about a hundred times a day. She's trying to \_\_\_\_\_  
them \_\_\_\_\_.
12. When his wife said she wanted a divorce, he just \_\_\_\_\_.
13. If you're not busy tonight, would you like to \_\_\_\_\_ and watch TV?
14. My four-year-old son thinks it's really funny to say bad words. I hope he \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ it.

EXERCISE 17b — Rewrite these sentences and place the adverb in parentheses  
in two possible positions.

1. (frequently) Ms. Taylor *comes over*.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. (sometimes) These cheap toys *fall apart*.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

adverbs and phrasal verbs

3. (nervously) He *went about* making the bomb.

---

---

4. (eventually) Sally will *grow out of* her childish behavior.

---

---

5. (reluctantly) Jim *headed into* the swamp.

---

---

6. (suddenly) Pat *ripped up* Mike's letter.

---

---

7. (soon) Frank will *get back at* Todd.

---

---

8. (gradually) He *wore down* my resistance.

---

---

EXERCISE 17c — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. The contract was torn into many small pieces. What was done to the contract?
- 2. In Question 1, how would you describe the contract?
- 3. Her plan is not working properly, and there's a lot of confusion. What is happening to her plan?
- 4. My friends visited me last night. What did my friends do last night?

- 5. Mike doesn't know anything about applying for a mortgage. What doesn't he know?
- 6. Tomorrow we're going to drive from the country to the city. What are we going to do tomorrow?
- 7. When Judy was a teenager, she was very shy, but she's not shy anymore. What did she do to her shyness?
- 8. The old lion's teeth are not as sharp or as long as they used to be. What has happened to them?
- 9. In Question 8, how would you describe the lion's teeth?
- 10. I did something bad to my brother, and now he has done something bad to me. What has my brother done to me?
- 11. The Vikings crossed the ocean before Columbus. What did the Vikings do before Columbus?
- 12. The teacher walked across the room and looked at your paper. What did the teacher do?
- 13. Jim became very sad and lost control when he heard that his brother had died. What did Jim do?
- 14. This sweater will be too small for my daughter soon. What will my daughter do to the sweater soon?
- 15. The pages are coming out of this old book. What is the book doing?
- 16. The police are pressuring the suspect to tell the truth. What are the police trying to do to the suspect?

EXERCISE 17d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

boil down to, 6	fight back, 8	hear of, 8
chicken out of, 9	find out, 5	kick back, 10
come down with, 6	get along, 9	monkey around with, 6
come up, 12	go ahead, 10	set up, 5
fall over, 8	go through with, 6	work in, 8



1. I don't know when the train to Boston leaves. I'll ask the ticket agent and \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.
2. I don't like our neighbors, and they don't like me. We don't \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Julia was nervous about bleaching her hair blond, and she decided not to \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ it.
4. Sarah was nervous about bleaching her hair blond, and she \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ it.
5. The ambassador will try to \_\_\_\_\_ a meeting between the  
president and the rebel leader.
6. We have a really busy day planned, but I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ a visit  
to the museum.
7. If someone hits you, you have to \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I missed a week of work when I \_\_\_\_\_ German measles.
9. Having a mechanic fix my car will cost a lot of money, so I'll \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ it to see if I can fix it myself.
10. The owner of the construction company was \_\_\_\_\_ thousands  
of dollars to the mayor.
11. Are you kidding? That's the most ridiculous thing I've ever \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The country's economic problems are very complicated. Can you tell me what it  
\_\_\_\_\_?
13. I'm sorry I have to cancel our lunch date, but something very important has \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_, and I have to return to my office immediately.
14. After the car hit the telephone pole, the pole \_\_\_\_\_ and crushed the car.
15. I was so angry at my boss that I told him I was going to quit, and he said, "  
\_\_\_\_\_, I don't care!"

## 18. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and *can, could, will, and would*

*Can, could, will, and would* are *modal auxiliary verbs*, often called *modals*. Modals are very important in English, but they can be confusing because they are used to say many different things. Here is a basic review of *can, could, will, and would* and their most common uses.

*Could* is used as the past tense of *can*:

*I can't **come over** tonight.*

*I couldn't **come over** last night.*

*Would* is used as the past tense of *will* (the future use of *will* has already been discussed in Section 15) to talk about something that was future in the past:

*I didn't buy that nice coat for my son because I knew he would quickly **grow out of** it.*

*Would* is used in place of *will* when repeating someone else's words:

*She said she would **get** next Friday **off**.*

*Would* is used as the past tense of *will* to talk about a repeated past action:

*When I worked as a bank guard, I would **stand around** all day doing nothing.*

Normally, *can, could, will, and would* have different uses, and it is important to use the correct one; however, in one special case — making requests — they can be used with very little difference in meaning:

*Can you **get off** the couch?*

*Could you **get off** the couch?*

*Will you **get off** the couch?*

*Would you **get off** the couch?*

*Can* and *could* are used, with little difference in meaning, to ask for permission:

*Can I **think about** it before I make a decision?*

*Could I **think about** it before I make a decision?*

*Can, could, will, and would* are used in *conditional* sentences. Conditional means that a condition, usually stated in an *if clause*, must be satisfied for the *main clause* to be true. When the condition is something that is actually possible, the verb in the *if clause* is normally in the present tense. If the condition in the *if clause* is something that could not actually be true, the past tense form of the verb is used.

When the condition in the *if clause* is something that is actually possible, *can* is used in the main clause to discuss a real ability:

*If I have a car, I can **come over**.*

phrasal verbs and can, could, will, and would

When the condition in the *if* clause is something that is actually possible, *will* is used in the main clause to discuss a real willingness or intention:

*If I have a car, I will **come over**.*

When the condition in the *if* clause is not something that is actually possible, *could* is used in the main clause to discuss an unreal or imaginary ability:

*If I had a car, I could **come over**.*

When the condition in the *if* clause is not something that is actually possible, *would* is used in the main clause to discuss an unreal or imaginary willingness or intention:

*If I had a car, I would **come over**.*

Either the *if* clause or main clause can occur first in a sentence, with a small change in punctuation:

*If I had a car, I would **come over**.*  
*I would **come over** if I had a car.*

Infinitive

	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
break through	break through & breaks through	breaking through	broke through	broken through

**1. break through** *p.v.* When you use force to go through a wall or other barrier, you **break through** it.

*The thieves **broke through** the wall of the jewelry store.*  
*The attackers couldn't **break through** the thick walls of the fort.*

**2. break through** *p.v.* When you cannot do something because of a problem and you find a way to solve or eliminate the problem, you **break through** or **break through** the problem.

*After the problem of tissue rejection is **broken through**, organ transplants will become more common.*  
*It took three days of negotiation, but we finally **broke through** the deadlock.*

**breakthrough** *n.* An important discovery or development that solves or eliminates a problem that is preventing you from doing something is a **breakthrough**.

*Dr. Wood announced an important **breakthrough** in the search for a cure for AIDS.*

figure on

	figure on & figures on	figuring on	figured on	figured on
--	------------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. figure on** *p.v.* When you **figure on** something, you expect it or plan for it.

*I didn't **figure on** such cold weather. I wish I'd brought a coat.*  
*You can **figure on** spending a least hundred bucks if you're going to that restaurant.*



Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
get off	get off & gets off	getting off	got off	gotten/got off

1. **get off** p.v. When you **get off** a bus, airplane, or train, you leave it.

*The bus stopped and I **got off**.*  
*You can't **get off** the train while it's moving.*
2. **get off** p.v. When you are standing, lying, or sitting on something, such as a horse, bicycle, motorcycle, stage, platform, or piece of furniture, and you step down from it onto the ground, you **get off** it.

*You're so lazy. Why don't you **get off** the couch and help me?*  
***Get off** your bicycle and come inside.*
3. **get off** p.v. When you are standing within an area of ground, or on something that covers an area of ground, and you move to the side of it and step off of it, you **get off** it.

*The referee told the player to **get off** the field.*  
*You're standing on our beach blanket — **get off** it!*
4. **get ... off** p.v. When you **get** something **off**, you remove it even though it may be difficult.

*I can't **get** this paint **off** my hands.*  
*The top of this bottle is on so tight I cannot **get it off**.*
5. **get ... off** p.v. When you **get** a certain period of time **off**, you are allowed by your employer to miss work during this period.

*Pregnant women usually **get** three months **off** with pay.*  
*Could I **get** tomorrow morning **off** to go to the doctor?*
6. **get off** p.v. When you **get off**, or **get off** work, you finish that day's work and leave your place of employment.

*Sally said she wouldn't **get off** work until 6:00.*  
*I haven't **gotten off** early all week.*
7. **get ... off** p.v. When you do something wrong but are not punished, or you are punished only lightly for it, you **get off**. Someone who helps you to avoid punishment **gets** you **off**.

*He killed four people, but he **got off** with only three years in jail.*  
*If his lawyer hadn't been so incompetent, he would have **gotten** him **off** with a lighter sentence.*
8. **get off** p.v. When you stop talking on the telephone, you **get off** the telephone.

***Get off** the phone — I need to use it!*  
*It's late, we'd better **get off** the phone.*

phrasal verbs and can, could, will, and would

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
go beyond	go beyond & goes beyond	going beyond	went beyond	gone beyond

**1. go beyond** *p.v.* When people or things are better or worse, or do something in a better or worse way than is normal or expected, they **go beyond** what is normal or expected.

*Did you say Jackson’s new book is good? I think it **goes beyond** good — it’s fantastic!*  
*Sam’s wife discovered that he wasn’t just friends with his secretary. Their relationship **went** way **beyond** friendship.*

lift upon	lift up & lifts up	lifting up	lifted up	lifted up
-----------	--------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

**1. lift ... up** *p.v.* When you **lift up** something, you use your hands to raise it above the surface that it was on.

*That rock is too heavy — I can’t **lift it up**.*  
***Lift up** the cover and look in the box.*

line up	line up & lines up	lining up	lined up	lined up
---------	--------------------	-----------	----------	----------

**1. line ... up** *p.v.* When people or things form a row, they **line up**. When you arrange people or things so that they form a row, you **line** them **up**.

*People **lined up** to buy Superbowl tickets.*  
*Timmy is **lining** his toy cars **up**.*

**lined up** *part.adj.* People or things that form a row are **lined up**.

*People have been **lined up** outside the box office for three days.*  
*The children are **lined up** for attendance.*

**2. line ... up** *p.v.* When something **lines up** with something else, or when you **line up** something with something else, it is positioned correctly in relation to something else.

*If this bolt doesn’t **line up** with that hole, the lock won’t work.*  
*The holes in part A have to **line up** with the holes in part B before you screw them together.*

**3. line ... up** *p.v.* When you arrange for someone or something to be available at a future activity or event, you **line** that thing or person **up**.

*I couldn’t **line** a clown **up** for Susie’s birthday party.*  
*Have they **lined up** a band and a singer for the wedding reception?*

**lined up** *part.adj.* Someone or something that you have arranged to be available for a future activity or event is **lined up**.

*Don’t worry about the show; everything is **lined up**.*  
*The singer is **lined up**, but the band isn’t.*

**lineup** *n.* The people or things planned for an event are the **lineup**.  
*The network has planned quite a **lineup** of entertainers for the half-time special.*  
*There's always a trapeze act in the circus **lineup**.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
stand around	stand around & stands around	standing around	stood around	stood around

**1. stand around** *p.v.* When you **stand around**, you stand in a place wasting time and not doing anything useful.  
*I have all this work to do, and you lazy guys just **stand around** watching me!*  
*The manager told them to stop **standing around** and get to work.*

tell apart	tell apart & tells apart	telling apart	told apart	told apart
------------	--------------------------	---------------	------------	------------

**1. tell ...apart** *p.v.* When it is possible to see how two similar things are different, you can **tell** them **apart**.  
*The twins are identical. No one can **tell** them **apart**.*  
*All the puppies look the same, and I have a hard time **telling** them **apart**.*

EXERCISE 18a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ the phone? I want to make an important call.
2. Neither side would give an inch. There was no way to \_\_\_\_\_ the stalemate.
3. If you put this fake Rolex watch next to a real one, you can \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ easily.
4. Jim wanted to go to a movie tonight, but I told him I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ work until late.
5. If the holes don't \_\_\_\_\_, the screws won't go in.
6. There weren't any chairs at the party, so we just \_\_\_\_\_ talking.
7. I told Frank that his drinking problem isn't just hurting him. It \_\_\_\_\_ that — it's hurting his family, too.
8. The lawyer was sure he could \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ with only two years in prison.
9. When I took this job after I finished high school, I never \_\_\_\_\_ spending 35 years here.



10. Mother was the last one to \_\_\_\_\_ the airplane.
11. Bob \_\_\_\_\_ everything in his cabinet so that it's easy to find what he's looking for.
12. Lydia told me she would try to \_\_\_\_\_ three weeks \_\_\_\_\_ so we can go on vacation.
13. There were police barricades around the palace, but some of the protesters \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Children, stop jumping on the bed with your dirty shoes. \_\_\_\_\_ right now!
15. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ the TV while I put the DVD player under it?
16. Some CDs come wrapped in plastic that's almost impossible to \_\_\_\_\_.
17. I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ a magician for the birthday party.
18. \_\_\_\_\_ the carpet! I just shampooed it.

**EXERCISE 18b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Paul said he would remove his cat from the table. What did Paul say?
2. I can't see any difference between the original and the copy. What can't I do?
3. Erik can't raise the box of books because it's too heavy. What can't Erik do?
4. Bill said he hadn't expected snow in May. What did Bill say?
5. Nancy arranged for a great band to play at the prom next week. What did Nancy do?
6. In Question 5, how would you describe the band?
7. Jerry thought the problem with his car is that it needs a new battery, but the mechanic said it's worse than that. What did the mechanic say?
8. The soldiers smashed a hole in the wall and entered the city. What did the soldiers do to the wall?

- 9. Carlos stops working at 5:00 everyday. What does Carlos do at 5:00 everyday?
- 10. You were arrested for reckless driving, but the judge gave you only a warning. What did you do?
- 11. The teacher moved all the desks in his classroom so that they were in straight rows. What did the teacher do?
- 12. In Question 11, how would you describe the desks?
- 13. She asked me if I would stop talking on the telephone. What did she say?
- 14. I stood at the bus stop for an hour waiting for the bus. What did I do for an hour?
- 15. The personnel manager at my new job said I wouldn't have to work on Sundays. What did the personnel manager say?
- 16. When you put a doorknob on a door, the two sides have to be directly across from each other. How do the two sides have to be?
- 17. Sam stepped from the train. What did Sam do?
- 18. Mark's father told him to move from the grass to the sidewalk. What did Mark's father tell Mark?

EXERCISE 18c — **Complete these sentences, using your own words, with phrasal verbs from this section or previous sections.**

- 1. Last week, he couldn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. When I was younger, I could \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. He'll \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. When I \_\_\_\_\_, I would \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. Could you \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6. Would you \_\_\_\_\_?
- 7. Can I \_\_\_\_\_?
- 8. Could I \_\_\_\_\_?

EXERCISE 18d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

believe in, 16	go along with, 3	hold off, 16
carry on, 16	go for, 16	put past, 16
come over, 17	go with, 15	tell on, 15
come through, 15	grow out of, 17	think about, 16
count on, 16	head back, 15	
get through, 16	head for, 15	

1. I suggested that we go to Paris, and my wife really \_\_\_\_\_ the idea.
2. After I \_\_\_\_\_ it, I decided not to take the job.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ buying a new computer because I thought they would be on sale in January.
4. Do you think this yellow tie \_\_\_\_\_ this blue shirt?
5. Her uncle promised to pay for her wedding, and he \_\_\_\_\_.
6. It's very important that you do this work correctly. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ you.
7. Timmy broke a window, and his sister \_\_\_\_\_ him.
8. The detective asked me if Jake had robbed the bank, and I said I didn't know but that I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ him.
9. Todd said he would \_\_\_\_\_ to my house after dinner and help me with my homework.
10. The reason Charles is vice-president of the company is that he \_\_\_\_\_ the boss on every decision.
11. Tomorrow I'm going to leave Winnipeg and \_\_\_\_\_ Toronto.
12. I probably won't \_\_\_\_\_ to Winnipeg for a month or more.
13. I didn't get Sally what she wanted for her birthday, and she \_\_\_\_\_ about it all day.
14. You have so much work to do. When do you think you'll \_\_\_\_\_?



15. I bought these pants for my son a month ago, and he’s \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ them already.
16. Ned didn’t \_\_\_\_\_ UFOs until he saw one.

19. FOCUS ON: **phrasal verbs and the adverb *right***

The adverb *right* is often used to intensify the meaning of a phrasal verb. Placed before the particle, *right* means *directly*, *immediately*, or *quickly*. It is not important whether the phrasal verb is intransitive, separable, or nonseparable. What does matter is whether the action of the verb is something that can logically be done directly, immediately, or quickly. For example, it would be illogical to use *right* with *stand around*, or *wear down*:

She **aimed** right **at** me. (She **aimed** directly **at** me.)  
I’ll **bring** it right **over**. (I’ll **bring** it over **immediately**.)  
The room **warmed** right **up**. (The room **warmed** up **quickly**.)

*Right* can be used when a separable phrasal verb is separated by its object; however, *right* cannot be used when the object follows the particle:

He **brought** my radio right **back**.  
~~He **brought** right **back** my radio.~~

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
aim at	aim at & aims at	aiming at	aimed at	aimed at

1. **aim ...at** p.v. When you point a weapon at people or things, you **aim** it **at** them.  
*The robber **aimed** the gun **right at** me.*  
*He was **aiming** the arrow **at** the apple, but he missed.*

2. **aim at** p.v. When you **aim at** something you want, you do what is necessary to get it.  
*The manager said she was **aiming at** a 14 percent increase in sales next year.*  
*The new law is **aimed at** reducing crime in the streets.*

3. **aim ...at** p.v. When you do something designed to affect one class or type of people, you **aim** it **at** those people.  
*Cigarette manufacturers were accused of **aiming** their advertising **at** young people.*  
*The candidate’s speech was **aimed at** female voters.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
bring back	bring back & brings back	bringing back	brought back	brought back

**1. bring ...back** *p.v.* When you take something to another place and then bring it from that place to the place where you were before, you **bring it back**.

*I told Tom to **bring** my pen right **back**.*  
*Sally borrowed my blue sweater and **brought** it **back** yesterday.*

**2. bring ...back** *p.v.* When something that was popular or current in the past is introduced again, it is **brought back**.

*Many schools are **bringing back** uniforms for children.*  
*Every few years designers try to **bring** miniskirts **back**.*

**3. bring ...back** *p.v.* When something causes you to recall memories and emotions from the past, it **brings** the memories and emotions **back**.

*Looking at these old pictures **brought back** wonderful memories.*  
*I had tried to forget that awful incident, but this magazine article has **brought** it all **back**.*

bring over	bring over & brings over	bringing over	brought over	brought over
------------	--------------------------	---------------	--------------	--------------

**1. bring ...over** *p.v.* When people take something from one place to the place where you are, they **bring it over**.

*I called Frank to ask if I could use his electric drill, and he **brought** it right **over**.*  
*Linda is going to **bring** her wedding pictures **over** tonight.*

cool off	cool off & cools off	cooling off	cooled off	cooled off
----------	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. cool off** *p.v.* When the temperature of a thing or place becomes lower, it **cools off**.

*It was really hot yesterday, but it **cooled off** in the evening.*  
*This is too hot — I'll eat it after it **cools off**.*

**2. cool ...off** *p.v.* When people or things cause a thing or place to become cooler, they **cool it off**.

*The coffee was really hot, but he put an ice cube in it and it **cooled** right **off**.*  
*This bath is too hot. Put more cold water in it to **cool** it **off**.*

**3. cool off** *p.v.* When you become less angry or less excited, you **cool off**.

*He's furious now, but he'll **cool off** by morning.*  
*Their passion for each other has **cooled off**.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
go back	go back & goes back	going back	went back	gone back

**1. go back** (to) *p.v.* When you return to a place where you were before, you **go back** or **go back** to that place.

*That restaurant was terrible. We'll never **go back**.*  
*Dorothy left the Emerald City and **went back** to Kansas.*

**2. go back** (to) *p.v.* When a condition, problem, practice, or custom **goes back** to a certain time, it began at that time.

*The tradition of saluting in the military **goes back** to the Middle Ages.*  
*His drug problem **goes back** to his college years.*

**3. go back** (to) *p.v.* When you are discussing the age of something, you **go back** or **go back** to when it was created or started.

*This table is very valuable. It **goes back** to the 1760s.*  
*The archeologist found ruins that **go back** 5,000 years.*

hand over	hand over & hands over	handing over	handed over	handed over
-----------	------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

**1. hand ... over** (to) *p.v.* When you give something to people because they demand it, because they require it, or because you are not its rightful owner, you **hand it over** or **hand it over** to them. **Turn over** is similar to **hand over**.

*I found some money in the street, and I **handed it over** to the police.*  
*That's my calculator — **hand it right over**!*

**handover** *n.* When you transfer ownership or control of something to someone because that person has demanded it or because you are not its rightful owner, this is called a **handover**.

*The Chinese celebrated Britain's **handover** of Hong Kong.*  
*The President demanded the immediate **handover** of the occupied territory.*

**2. hand ... over** *p.v.* When you give someone responsibility for an important project, duty, or problem, you **hand** that project, duty, or problem **over** or **hand it over** to someone.

*Mr. Wilson retired and **handed** control of the company **over** to his son.*  
*The TV news anchor **handed** the show **over** to the reporter at the White House.*

pull over	pull over & pulls over	pulling over	pulled over	pulled over
-----------	------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

**1. pull ... over** *p.v.* When you are driving and then move your vehicle to the side of the road, reduce your speed, and then stop, you **pull over** or **pull** your vehicle **over**.

*I **pulled over** to fix a flat tire.*  
*We're lost. Let's **pull** the car **over** and ask someone for directions.*



**2. pull ... over** *p.v.* When you are driving and a police officer signals you to move your vehicle to the side of the road, reduce your speed, and stop, the police officer **pulls** you **over** or **pulls** your vehicle **over**.

*Jim was driving on the wrong side of the road, and he got **pulled over** by the state police.*  
*When the police officer saw the driver go through a red light, he **pulled** the car right **over**.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
warm up	warm up & warms up	warming up	warmed up	warmed up

**1. warm up** *p.v.* When the temperature of a thing or place becomes higher, it **warms up**.

*It's cold outside. I hope it **warms up** before the picnic.*  
*I set the thermostat at 80 degrees, and the house **warmed** right **up**.*

**2. warm ... up** *p.v.* When people or things cause a thing or place to become warmer, they **warm** it **up**.

*The fireplace doesn't really **warm** the house **up** much.*  
*That soup is cold. You can **warm** it **up** in the microwave.*

**warmed up** *part.adj.* After a thing or place has become warmer, it is **warmed up**.

*Give the baby the bottle with the flowers on it. It's **warmed up**.*

**3. warm ... up** *p.v.* When you allow a mechanical device to run for a short time before being used, you **warm** it **up**. When a mechanical device runs for a short time before being used, it **warms up**.

*You should always **warm** your car **up** for a few minutes before you go anywhere.*  
*In the winter I always let my car **warm up** while I eat breakfast.*

**warmed up** *part.adj.* After a mechanical device has been allowed to **warm up** and is ready to be used, it is **warmed up**.

*We have to go. Is the car **warmed up** yet?*

**4. warm up** *p.v.* When you do light exercises before playing a sport or exercising with greater effort, you **warm up**. When performers play musical instruments or sing just before a performance in order to be ready, they **warm up**.

*Before a race most runners **warm up** with stretching exercises.*  
*The singer **warmed up** in her dressing room before the concert.*

**warm-up** *n.* Light exercises done before playing a sport or exercising with greater effort are called a **warm-up**. When a performer plays an instrument or sings just before a performance in order to be ready, this is a **warm-up**.

*The runners got to the stadium early so they would have time for a **warm-up**.*

**warm-up** *n.* **Warm-up** clothes are worn during a **warm-up**. **Warm-up** exercises are done before playing a sport or exercising. A **warm-up** game, round, and so on, is played in order to **warm up** for the actual game.

*The baseball players wore their **warm-up** jackets when they weren't on the field.*

EXERCISE 19a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. The pizza was cold, so I put it in the microwave to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
2. My car was making a strange noise, so I \_\_\_\_\_ to look at the engine.
3. Can I use your lawn mower? I'll \_\_\_\_\_ it right \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
4. Jim always puts milk in his coffee to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The roots of the trouble in the Middle East \_\_\_\_\_ thousands of years.
6. The new police chief said that he thinks that abolishing capital punishment was a mistake and that it should be \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The judge ordered the thieves to \_\_\_\_\_ the stolen merchandise immediately.
8. Hearing Uncle John's stories about the old country \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of memories.
9. With this new antipollution law we're \_\_\_\_\_ reducing the amount of pollution by 50 percent in ten years.
10. I asked Judy if I could use her video camera, and she said she would \_\_\_\_\_ it right \_\_\_\_\_.
11. The mechanic recommended letting the car \_\_\_\_\_ before driving it.
12. The robber changed his mind when he saw the guard \_\_\_\_\_ his gun right \_\_\_\_\_ him.
13. The local police chief \_\_\_\_\_ the investigation \_\_\_\_\_ to the FBI agents.
14. Your father's angry right now. Talk to him about your miserable report card after he's \_\_\_\_\_.
15. The changes at the factory are \_\_\_\_\_ reducing costs and increasing profits.
16. The mystery of the Pyramids \_\_\_\_\_ nearly 5,000 years.

phrasal verbs and the adverb right

- 17. The coach always makes the players \_\_\_\_\_ before the game.
- 18. After lunch Jerry \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_ to work.
- 19. This coffee is too hot. I can't drink it until it \_\_\_\_\_.
- 20. I was \_\_\_\_\_ by the sheriff for going 80 miles per hour in a school zone.
- 21. It's cold now, but it'll \_\_\_\_\_ by noon.

EXERCISE 19b — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

1. Could you *bring back*. (my tool kit, it)

2. I'll *bring over*. (your tool kit, it)

3. The air conditioner quickly *cooled off*. (my apartment, it)

4. Todd *handed over*. (his wallet, it)

5. The sheriff *pulled over*. (the suspects, them)



6. The drivers are *warming up*. (their trucks, them)

EXERCISE 19c — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. Replace the underlined adverbs with *right*. Remember that *right* can be used only when the verb and the particle are separated.**

1. They lit a fire, and the cabin became warm quickly. What did the cabin do?
2. You will return to work immediately. What will you do?
3. After the sun set, the backyard became cooler quickly. What did the backyard do?
4. If I saw the flashing lights of the police car, I would slow my car and stop at the side of the road immediately. What would I do?
5. Sergeant Jones pointed his rifle directly at the enemy soldier. What did Sergeant Jones do?
6. She told me to return her dictionary immediately. What did she say?
7. Linda’s father told her to give him his credit card immediately. What did Linda’s father tell her to do?
8. I called Lydia and told her I needed medicine for my son, and she took the medicine from her house to my house immediately. What did Lydia do to the medicine?

EXERCISE 19d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

back off, 12	go beyond, 18	stand around, 18
break through, 18	head into, 17	tell apart, 18
come across, 12	hit on, 13	track down, 13
come up with, 6	let off, 13	wind up, 14
fall through, 12	lift up, 18	
figure on, 18	put up, 12	

1. The prisoners \_\_\_\_\_ the wall of the prison and escaped.
2. It was easy for them to escape because the guards had been \_\_\_\_\_ smoking cigarettes.
3. The warden wasn't just upset with the guards — the problem \_\_\_\_\_ that.
4. The guards used dogs to \_\_\_\_\_ one of the escaped prisoners the next day.
5. The other prisoner \_\_\_\_\_ some dense forest.
6. The prisoner tried to steal a man's car, but when he saw the man's large dog, he \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The police had a meeting to try to \_\_\_\_\_ a way to capture the prisoner.
8. They finally \_\_\_\_\_ the idea of using a helicopter.
9. The helicopter plan \_\_\_\_\_ because the weather was so bad.
10. The police thought the prisoner would probably \_\_\_\_\_ at his family's house.
11. The prisoner has a twin brother, and the police couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
12. That was one problem the police didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
13. One police officer walked behind the house and \_\_\_\_\_ some garbage cans.
14. He heard a noise from the garbage can, so he \_\_\_\_\_ the top and saw the prisoner.
15. The prisoner \_\_\_\_\_ a fight, but the police were able to capture him.
16. Both prisoners were charged with escaping from prison, but the judge \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ with a warning.

## 20. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs followed by the -ing form

Some phrasal verbs can be followed by the -ing form of verbs:

He **ended up** staying home.  
She **lies around** doing nothing.

The -ing form can be negative:

He **ended up** not going anywhere.  
She **lies around** not doing anything.

Nouns and pronouns can come between the phrasal verb and the -ing form:

The doctor **went around** the hospital visiting his patients.  
Jim **hangs around** Janice hoping she'll fall in love with him.

Prepositional phrases can come between the phrasal verb and the -ing form:

My luggage **ended up** on the wrong flight going to the wrong city.  
I **started out** at the bottom working in the mailroom.

Other adverbs and adverbial expressions can come between the phrasal verb and the -ing form:

Bill **goes around** constantly looking for bargains.  
She **stayed up** late watching TV.  
I **went around** all day not knowing I had spinach in my teeth.  
He **ended up** here asking for money.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
end up	end up & ends up	ending up	ended up	ended up

**1. end up** p.v. When people **end up** doing something or **end up** a certain way, it is the result of a series of decisions, actions, or unplanned and unexpected occurrences. **End up** is similar to **wind up**.

A hurricane was approaching Florida, so we **ended up** coming home from our vacation early.  
Judy has never gone skydiving before, so she'll probably **end up** in the hospital with two broken legs.

**2. end up** p.v. When people or things **end up** in a place, this place is where their journey ends even though the outcome may have been unplanned or unexpected.

How did London Bridge **end up** in Arizona?  
The taxi driver didn't understand me, and we **ended up** in Newark instead of New York.



phrasal verbs followed by the -ing form

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
go around	go around & goes around	going around	gone around	gone around

**1. go around** *p.v.* When people or things follow a circular path and return to the same place, they **go around**.

*The horse has **gone around** the track three times.*  
*It took seven days to **go around** the island.*

**2. go around** *p.v.* When people or things follow an indirect or curved path in order to avoid an obstacle or to change direction, they **go around** or **go around** the obstacle.

*Heather **went around** the curve too fast, and she ended up in the ditch.*  
*There was some broken glass in the street, but I **went around** it.*

**3. go around** *p.v.* When an object spins or turns, it **goes around**.

*The disk drives in computers **go around** very fast.*  
*The children have to stay on the merry-go-round until it stops **going around**.*

**4. go around** *p.v.* When you **go around** a place, you visit various parts of it.

*The president **went around** the state giving the same speech at every stop.*  
*The exterminator is **going around** the house looking for rats.*

**5. go around** *p.v.* When you **go around** in a certain condition or **go around** doing something, you go to various places and allow other people see you.

*I was so embarrassed — I **went around** all day with my zipper open.*  
*Are you going to **go around** all day wearing that stupid hat?*

**6. go around** *p.v.* When you **go around** doing something, you go to various places and deliberately do something that may bother or upset other people.

*The new manager **goes around** telling everyone how to do their jobs.*  
*Don't **go around** sticking your nose in other people's business.*

**7. go around** *p.v.* When something **goes around**, it spreads to various parts of a larger place.

*A rumor **went around** that the plant was going to close.*  
*He probably has the flu. It's been **going around**.*

**8. go around** *p.v.* When something is being distributed to a group of people and there is enough for everyone, there is enough to **go around**.

*There wasn't enough food to **go around**, and some of the famine victims got nothing.*  
*Don't make the pieces of wedding cake too big, otherwise there won't be enough to **go around**.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
go off	go off & goes off	going off	went off	gone off

- 1. go off** *p.v.* When a gun **goes off**, it fires. When a bomb **goes off**, it explodes. When an alarm or alarm clock **goes off**, it makes a loud noise.

*The terrorists were killed when the bomb **went off** accidentally.*  
*I was late for work because my alarm clock didn't **go off**.*
- 2. go off** *p.v.* When an electrical device or system **goes off**, it stops operating. **Come on** is the opposite of **go off**.

*The electricity **went off** at 8:30 last night.*  
*A thermostat makes the air conditioner **go off** if it gets below a certain temperature.*
- 3. go off** (with) *p.v.* When you **go off**, you leave a place or the people you are with and go to a different place. When you **go off** with someone, you leave a place or the people you are with and go to a different place with them.

*Mark **went off** not realizing he had left his wallet at home.*  
*At the museum Sally **went off** with her friends to see some things we weren't interested in.*
- 4. go off** *p.v.* When an event or plan **goes off** well, smoothly, without a problem, or without a hitch (a *hitch* is a problem), it happens as planned.

*The wedding **went off** without a hitch.*  
*The invasion didn't **go off** the way the general planned it.*
- 5. go off** *p.v.* When a road, trail, path, and so on, **goes off**, it leaves the main road, trail, or path, and goes in a different direction.

*This trail that **goes off** to the left will take you to the campground.*  
*We didn't know which way to go — one path **went off** to the left, the other to the right.*

go on	go on & goes on	going on	went on	gone on
-------	-----------------	----------	---------	---------

- 1. go on** *p.v.* When an electrical device or system **goes on**, it begins to operate.

*A thermostat makes the air conditioner **go on** if it gets above a certain temperature.*  
*The lights **goes on** automatically if someone walks near the door.*
- 2. go on** *p.v.* When something **goes on**, it happens. “What’s **going on**?” is a common informal greeting.

*Tell me what **went on** at the party last night.*  
*If you see anything illegal **going on**, call the police immediately.*
- 3. go on** *p.v.* When people **go on**, they continue doing something. Sometimes, **on** is repeated for emphasis.



phrasal verbs followed by the -ing form

*I asked her to be quiet, but she **went right on** singing.*  
*Just **go on** with what you're doing. I'll wait until you're finished.*  
*I told him to stop talking, but he **went on** and **on** and **on** and **on**.*

**4. go on** p.v. When an event or activity **goes on**, it continues.

*The party **went on** until dawn.*  
*I hate long meetings that **go on** for hours.*

**5. go on** p.v. When you **go on** information, you are able to continue an investigation or other project because you have this information.

*The detective said he needs more to **go on** and asked the public for information.*  
*The auto company won't recall 75,000 cars because of one accident. That's just not enough to **go on**.*

**6. go on** p.v. When you **go on** a diet, you start a plan to lose weight.

*I **go on** a diet every January.*  
*I have to **go on** a diet. My high school reunion is in two months.*

**7. go on** p.v. When you say "**Go on**" to people, you are encouraging them to do something. **Go on** is similar to **go ahead**.

*Yes, caviar is fish eggs, but it's good — **go on**, try it.*  
*Oh, **go on** — don't be afraid.*

Infinitive			
	present tense	-ing form	past tense
past participle			
hang around	hang around & hangs around	hanging around	hung around

**1. hang around** p.v. [informal] When you **hang around** or **hang around** doing something, you stay in a place without a purpose for being there or because you are waiting for someone or something.

*I had to **hang around** for three hours waiting for the bus.*  
*Bob's been **hanging around** the house all day. Doesn't he have anything to do?*

**2. hang around** p.v. [informal] When people stay in a place instead of leaving, they **hang around**.

*What's the hurry? **Hang around** for a while, and when I finish my homework we can watch TV.*  
*Do you have to go or can you **hang around** for a while?*

**3. hang around** p.v. [informal] When you **hang around** people, you spend a lot of time with them. When you **hang around** a place, you spend a lot of time there.

*Erik's mother is worried. She doesn't like the guys he's **hanging around** with.*  
*Jim and Bill were good friends. They always **hung around** when they were kids.*



Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
lie around	lie around & lies around	lying around	lay around	lain around

**1. lie around** p.v. When you **lie around** or **lie around** doing something, you recline and relax and do not do anything important.

*Today is my day off, so don't ask me to do any work. I'm just going to **lie around**.*  
*All my sister ever does is **lie around** watching soap operas.*

**2. lie around** p.v. [always continuous] When something is **lying around**, it is disorganized and no one is using it or paying attention to it.

*Jake is a slob. There is garbage and old newspapers **lying around** all over his house.*  
*We need to do something about all that junk **lying around** in the backyard.*

start out	start out & starts out	starting out	started out	started out
-----------	------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

**1. start out** p.v. When you begin something, you **start out**. **Start out** is used to discuss how the end of something was different from its beginning.

*The stock market **started out** in positive territory but closed 200 points lower.*  
*Nancy **started out** as a secretary, and now she's the president of the company.*

stay up	stay up & stays up	staying up	stayed up	stayed up
---------	--------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

**1. stay up** p.v. When something **stays up**, it remains in a place that is higher than ground level.

*That shelf won't **stay up** if you put all those books on it.*  
*The astronauts **stayed up** for 241 days.*

**2. stay up** p.v. When you **stay up**, you go to bed later than you normally do.

*Judy's tired because she **stayed up** until dawn studying for a chemistry test.*  
*Don't **stay up** late — tomorrow's a school day.*

EXERCISE 20a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. This is a dangerous neighborhood, so stay with me and don't \_\_\_\_\_ by yourself.
2. Yesterday at work Leticia \_\_\_\_\_ showing everyone her engagement ring.
3. Wedding ceremonies in some countries can \_\_\_\_\_ for days.
4. The bomb will \_\_\_\_\_ at exactly 6:00.

5. Where are you going? Why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ until Jim comes home and then we can order a pizza.
6. The driver took a wrong turn, and we \_\_\_\_\_ in the middle of nowhere.
7. On Sundays my husband usually \_\_\_\_\_ on the couch watching football games.
8. My lazy son \_\_\_\_\_ the house all day not lifting a finger to help with anything.
9. She's going to \_\_\_\_\_ at her new job working only part-time, but later she'll switch to full-time.
10. Buy lots of cake for the party. You want to be sure there's enough to \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Bill likes to go to bed early — he can't \_\_\_\_\_ past 8:00 P.M.
12. Rosa wanted to study medicine in college, but she \_\_\_\_\_ studying law instead.
13. The paleontologist was amazed to find dinosaur eggs just \_\_\_\_\_ in the desert.
14. I can't believe you \_\_\_\_\_ town wearing those dirty clothes all day.
15. I'm sorry I missed the party. Did anything exciting \_\_\_\_\_?
16. I'm nervous about the wedding. I hope it \_\_\_\_\_ the way we planned it.
17. A rumor is \_\_\_\_\_ the school about two of the teachers.
18. It's normal for the power to \_\_\_\_\_ during a thunderstorm.
19. If that sign doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ with tape, we'll have to use glue instead.
20. In the morning Dr. Smith usually \_\_\_\_\_ the hospital visiting his patients.
21. Jim is usually a good boy, but when he \_\_\_\_\_ with Jake he gets in trouble.
22. He was trying to \_\_\_\_\_ a slow truck when he had the accident.

23. I \_\_\_\_\_ a diet two weeks ago, and so far I haven't lost an ounce.
24. In the past no one believed that the earth \_\_\_\_\_ the sun.
25. If you're leaving, what are you waiting for? \_\_\_\_\_, leave!
26. How can I make such an important decision with so little information? I need more to \_\_\_\_\_.
27. I'm surprised that the heat \_\_\_\_\_ last night — it's only September.
28. Miguel's new race car is really fast. Yesterday he \_\_\_\_\_ the track in record time.
29. After you cross the bridge, you'll see a gravel road that \_\_\_\_\_ a lake and heads toward the mountains.
30. I don't want to retire. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ working as long as I can.

**EXERCISE 20b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. You're going to spend the day on the sofa watching TV. What are you going to do all day?
2. Lydia walked to various places in her new house making decorating plans. What did Lydia do in her new house?
3. The letter was supposed to go to Austria, but it finally arrived in Australia. What happened to the letter?
4. The electricity stops working everyday at 2:00. What does the electricity do?
5. Joe called and asked what was happening. What did Joe ask?
6. Bob goes to every office at work telling awful jokes. What does Bob do at work?
7. Janice didn't go to bed all night. What did Janice do?
8. Dan stays in his house all day. He doesn't go anywhere or do anything. What does Dan do all day?
9. You were late to work because your alarm clock didn't ring this morning. What didn't your alarm clock do this morning?
10. Jerry went to many places wearing a Hawaiian shirt. What did Jerry do?



phrasal verbs followed by the -ing form

- 11. When it gets dark the street lights begin to operate automatically. What do the lights do?
- 12. I bought only 25 hot dogs for the party, but 30 people showed up, so some people didn't get a hot dog. Why didn't some people get a hot dog?
- 13. There are a lot of potholes in the street, and I have to avoid them while I'm driving. What do I have to do while I'm driving?
- 14. I couldn't decide between the red car and the blue car, but I finally decided on the red car. What did I finally do?
- 15. Mr. Watson is the brains of this company. If he left we couldn't continue. What couldn't we do without Mr. Watson?
- 16. Jane began the project thinking it would take only a few weeks. What did Jane do?

EXERCISE 20c — **Write original sentences using these phrasal verbs from this section and previous sections followed by the -ing form. The first number after the verb is the section; the second number is the meaning. It is only that meaning that can be followed by the -ing form. Try to make some of the sentences similar to those in the FOCUS section.**

break down, 5/3	hang around, 20/1	stay up, 20/2
end up, 20/1	lie around, 20/1	take off, 1/7
go around, 20/4,5,6	show up, 1/1	wind up, 14/2
go off, 20/3	stand around, 18/11	
go on, 20/3	start out, 20/1	

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9. \_\_\_\_\_

10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 20d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

aim at, 19	call off, 13	go about, 17	rip up, 17
blow away, 15	cool off, 19	go back, 19	screw out of, 3
break out, 9	dry out, 15	hear of, 8	see about, 7
bring over, 19	give up, 9	pay for, 4	work up, 9

1. My teacher made a mistake when he corrected my test and \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ ten points.
2. You'd better wear a jacket — it has \_\_\_\_\_ outside.
3. Her letter made me so mad that I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
4. You don't need to rake the leaves. The wind will \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
5. We knew we didn't have any hope of winning the battle, so we \_\_\_\_\_.
6. You can't run ten miles on the first day of your exercise program. You have to \_\_\_\_\_ to it.
7. Michael didn't see the red light and hit a gasoline truck. He \_\_\_\_\_ his mistake with his life.
8. Sam asked me if I knew someone named Francisco, and I said I had never \_\_\_\_\_ him.
9. My family has been in Massachusetts since the 17th century. They \_\_\_\_\_ on the *Mayflower*.
10. Our trip to Miami was \_\_\_\_\_ because of the hurricane.
11. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ the dentist \_\_\_\_\_ getting my teeth whitened.
12. Do you know how to \_\_\_\_\_ getting a passport?
13. This rug is wet. Let's take it outside to \_\_\_\_\_ in the sun.

14. The new restrictions on cigarette advertising are \_\_\_\_\_ reducing the level of teenage smoking.
15. They \_\_\_\_\_ of prison by tunneling under the prison wall.
16. We don't have enough plates for the party, so I called Maria and asked her to \_\_\_\_\_ some \_\_\_\_\_.

## 21. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and *should* and *ought to*

*Should* and *ought to* have two important meanings in English. One is familiar to most students, but the other is not.

### A good idea: *should* and *ought to*

*Should* and *ought to* can be used to say that doing something is a good idea because it will benefit the person you are speaking about:

You should **zip up** your coat.

You ought to **zip up** your coat.

or because the person you are speaking about is expected, though not required, to do something:

You should **bring in** the groceries for your mother.

You ought to **bring in** the groceries for your mother.

Although *should* and *ought* are modal auxiliary verbs, *ought* must be used with *to*. In other words, *ought* does not equal *should*, *ought to* equals *should*. Never say *should to*.

### Very probable: *should* and *ought to*

Both *should* and *ought to* are used to say that something is very probable, very likely, or 90 percent sure to happen — that if everything is normal, as expected, or as planned, a condition will very probably exist or something will very probably happen:

The rebel territory should **settle down** once winter comes.

The rebel territory ought to **settle down** once winter comes.

In the examples above, either *should* or *ought to* can be used — they have the same meaning — however, only *should* is used in questions:



*Should Tom **zip up** his jacket?*  
~~*Ought Tom to **zip up** his jacket?*~~

and in modern English only *should not* or *shouldn't* is used in negative sentences:

*Tom should not **zip up** his jacket.*  
~~*Tom ought not to **zip up** his jacket.*~~

*Should not* (or *shouldn't*) is used to say that something is not probable. It means that something is very improbable, very unlikely, or 90 percent sure not to happen — that if everything is normal, as expected, or as planned, a condition will very probably not exist or something will very probably not happen:

*I set the thermostat at 65 degrees, and I'm sure it won't get below 70 tonight, so the heat shouldn't **go on**.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
look around	look around & looks around	looking around	looked around	looked around

**1. look around** *p.v.* When you turn your head to see what is behind you or around you, you **look around**.

*I heard a sound, and I **looked around** to see who it was.*  
*Sally **looked around** the room and didn't recognize anyone.*

**2. look around** *p.v.* When you **look around** or **look around** a place, you go to various parts of the place in order to see what it is like or what is there.

*You should **look around** before you decide whether you want to buy the house.*  
*Linda **looked around** the bookstore but didn't find anything interesting.*

look over	look over & looks over	looking over	looked over	looked over
-----------	------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

**1. look ... over** *p.v. [usually separated]* When you **look** something **over**, you look at it or read it carefully and thoroughly.

*He ought to **look** the car **over** before he buys it.*  
*Here's the first chapter of my new book; **look** it **over** and tell me what you think.*

pick on	pick on & picks on	picking on	picked on	picked on
---------	--------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

**1. pick on** *p.v.* When you **pick on** people, you continually tease and criticize them.

*Susie, you shouldn't **pick on** your little brother.*  
*The teacher never criticizes anyone else — she **picks** only **on** me.*

phrasal verbs and should and ought to

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
settle down	settle down & settles down	settling down	settled down	settled down

**1. settle ... down** *p.v.* When you **settle down**, you become less active, nervous, or upset. When you **settle** other people **down**, you do something to make them less active, nervous, or upset. **Calm down** is similar to **settle down**.

*Why are you so nervous about the test? Just **settle down** — you'll do just fine.*  
*Can't you **settle** the children **down**? All that noise is driving me crazy.*

**2. settle ... down** *p.v.* When a confused or violent situation becomes less confused or violent, it **settles down**. When you **settle** a confused or violent situation **down**, you make it less confused or violent and more calm. **Calm down** is similar to **settle down**.

*Rioting and arson continued for three days before the area **settled down**.*  
*The head of the union spoke to the angry strikers to try to **settle** them **down**.*

**3. settle down** *p.v.* When people **settle down**, they start to live a less active life and perhaps get married, buy a house, and start a family.

*Mike led a pretty wild life when he was in his early 20s, but he got married when he was 29 and **settled down**.*  
*My son is 41. I wish he'd **settle down** and raise a family.*

step on	step on & steps on	stepping on	stepped on	stepped on
---------	--------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. step on** *p.v.* When you **step on** something, you place your foot on it.

*If the carpenter **steps on** a nail, she'll have to go to the hospital for a tetanus shot.*  
*Sam **stepped on** a cockroach.*

**2. step on** *p.v. [informal]* When you say "**Step on it**" to someone who is driving a car, you are telling the driver to drive faster.

*Hank needed to get to the airport in 15 minutes, so he told the taxi driver to **step on it**.*  
***Step on it!** We have to be at work in ten minutes.*

take out on	take out on & takes out on	taking out on	took out on	taken out on
-------------	----------------------------	---------------	-------------	--------------

**1. take ... out on** *p.v.* When you **take** something **out on** people, you unfairly criticize or punish them because you are angry about something that has occurred or about something that someone else has done.

*If you're mad at your boss, you shouldn't **take it out on** your wife.*  
*Hey! It's not my fault you got a speeding ticket. Why are you **taking it out on** me?*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
think ahead	think ahead & thinks ahead	thinking ahead	thought ahead	thought ahead

**1. think ahead** *p.v.* When you **think ahead**, you plan for a future situation or activity so that you will not have a problem.

*When we're out camping, there won't be any stores around if you forget something, so **think ahead**.*  
*We **thought ahead** before we drove through the desert. We took 40 liters of water.*

zip up	zip up & zips up	zipping up	zipped up	zipped up
--------	------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

**1. zip ... up** *p.v.* When you **zip up** a coat or other item of clothing, you close it with a zipper.

*It's freezing outside — **zip** your coat **up**.*  
*I can't **zip** my dress **up**. Can you do it?*

**zipped up** *part.adj.* After you **zip up** a coat or other item of clothing, it is **zipped up**.

*Timmy is out there in the snow without his coat **zipped up**.*  
*Before you go to the airport, make sure your suitcases are **zipped up**.*

EXERCISE 21a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. It's not your wife's fault you lost your job. You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ her.
2. Timmy left some of his toys on the floor. Be careful not to \_\_\_\_\_ them.
3. There's a guy in my class who's really mean and makes jokes about me. I told the teacher that he's always \_\_\_\_\_ me.
4. Someone called my name, and I \_\_\_\_\_ to see who it was.
5. Jane is already 34, but she's not interested in \_\_\_\_\_ and having children.
6. I've \_\_\_\_\_ your résumé, and I think you're the right person for this job.
7. Timmy and Susie were running around the house like crazy, so I played their favorite DVD to try to \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
8. You ought to \_\_\_\_\_ your backpack \_\_\_\_\_. If you don't, all your books are going to fall out.



9. The two countries have a history of border clashes, but things have \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ in the last few years.
10. I've never been in your house before. I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ and see how  
you've decorated it.
11. You don't want to arrive in Tokyo and realize you forgot something important back in  
Vancouver, so \_\_\_\_\_.
12. We're late — \_\_\_\_\_ it!

**EXERCISE 21b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Dan ought to look at the car very carefully before he decides whether to buy it. What should Dan do?
2. You went to a big bookstore and walked around so that you could see what books they have. What did you do in the bookstore?
3. Our neighbors were arguing all evening, but they stopped arguing and got quieter at around 1:00 A.M. What did our neighbors do around 1:00 A.M.?
4. It's freezing outside, so you ought to close the zipper on your jacket. What should you do to your jacket?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe the jacket after it is closed?
6. At the meeting, the boss asked Betty some difficult questions, and Betty wasn't ready with the answers. What didn't Betty do?
7. Frank unfairly criticizes his son. What does Frank do to his son?
8. Mark had a bad day at work, and when he came home he yelled at his wife. What did Mark do to his wife?
9. When Mike was dancing with Heather, he put his foot on her foot. What did Mike do to Heather's foot?

EXERCISE 21c, Review — **Rewrite the underlined words in the sentences using these phrasal verbs from previous sections and *should* or *ought to*. Remember that *ought to* is not usually used in negative sentences.**

break through, 18	cool off, 19	hold up, 7
burn out, 8	fall off, 10	pull through, 2
come over, 17	get off, 18	warm up, 19
come through, 15	get through, 16	wind up, 14
come up, 12	go for, 16	

**Example:** If they go to that restaurant, they will very probably expect to pay \$200.

If they go to that restaurant, they should figure on paying \$200.  
or  
If they go to that restaurant, they ought to figure on paying \$200.

- 1. Business in this restaurant will very probably decrease in January.
- 2. They are very probably finishing the investigation.
- 3. These cheap shoes will very probably not stay in good condition more than three months.
- 4. Jim flies from Florida to Boston every year in April, and it's April now. Jim will very probably travel to Boston soon.
- 5. It almost always gets cooler in October, and it's October 1st today, so it will very probably get cooler soon.
- 6. Raul's disease is not serious, so he will very probably be well again.
- 7. Francisco almost never works past 5:00, and it's 4:50 now. He will very probably stop working in a few minutes.
- 8. Lydia likes skiing a lot, so if you suggest that we go skiing next weekend, she will very probably like the idea.
- 9. The enemy soldiers have been trying to smash a hole in the wall of the fort for two hours, and they will very probably smash a hole in the wall soon.

phrasal verbs and should and ought to

- 10. Sally said she would come to my house at 5:30 and it's 5:40 now. She will very probably come to my house soon.
- 11. This work normally takes four hours to finish, so if you start at 9:00 you will very probably finish around 1:00.
- 12. The train passes through town at 3:25, and it's 3:20 now, so the train will very probably pass through town in five minutes.
- 13. I put a lot of wood on the fire, so it very probably will not stop burning before morning.
- 14. The car heater is on maximum, so it will very probably get warm soon.

EXERCISE 21d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

bring back, 19	go around, 20	hand over, 19	pull over, 19
end up, 20	go back, 19	hang around, 20	ring up, 8
fall apart, 17	go off, 20	lie around, 20	start out, 20
get back at, 17	go on, 20	line up, 18	stay up, 20

- 1. After Mark's father died, Tom \_\_\_\_\_ the office collecting money to buy some flowers for the funeral.
- 2. Who said you could use my camera? \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ right now!
- 3. The smoke alarm in our kitchen \_\_\_\_\_ every time I fry chicken.
- 4. We've been driving for five hours straight. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ and rest for a few minutes.
- 5. Our travel agent is trying to \_\_\_\_\_ a hot air balloon to take us to the top of Mt. Everest.
- 6. Last night I \_\_\_\_\_ late watching *Casablanca* on TV.
- 7. My old bicycle is in very bad condition. I ought to buy a new one before it completely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. I'm mad at Sarah for telling my husband what happened at the office party. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ her someday.



9. I \_\_\_\_\_ thinking it wouldn't cost more than \$300 to fix my car, but I've already spent more than \$700.
10. Jimmy didn't used to get in trouble until he started to \_\_\_\_\_ with Jake.
11. If you don't quit smoking and lose some weight, you're going to \_\_\_\_\_ dying before you're 50.
12. Visiting my old high school last week \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of great memories.
13. Are you going to do anything today or just \_\_\_\_\_ watching TV?
14. I'm sorry I interrupted your story. Please \_\_\_\_\_.
15. The cashier \_\_\_\_\_ my stuff and said, "That comes to \$47.21."
16. Julie left her credit card at the restaurant, so she had to \_\_\_\_\_ to get it.

## 22. FOCUS ON: the particle *up* and the adverbs *right* and *all*

The particle *up* is used in many phrasal verbs, and one of its meanings is to say that something has been done thoroughly or completely:

*The building **burned**.* (The building was damaged but not destroyed.)

*The building **burned up**.* (The building was completely destroyed.)

*Right*, discussed in Section 19, is often used in phrasal verbs with *up* to indicate that the action of the verb not only happened thoroughly and completely but also quickly:

*They **ate** it **up**.* (They ate all the food.)

*They **ate** it right **up**.* (They ate all the food, and they ate it quickly.)

Remember that *right* can be used in this way only after an object that is separating the verb and particle:

*They **ate** the pizza right **up**.*

~~*They **ate** right up the pizza.*~~

Even though *up* indicates that the action of the verb is thorough and complete, *all* is sometimes used for further emphasis with participle adjectives derived from phrasal verbs with *up*:

*My taxes are all **paid up**.*

*The drain is all **plugged up**.*

the particle up and the adverbs right and all

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
burn up	burn up & burns up	burning up	burned up	burned up

**1. burn up** *p.v.* When something is completely destroyed by heat or fire, it **burns up**.  
*The meteor **burned up** in the atmosphere.*  
*The rocket's fuel will **burn up** after only 40 seconds.*

**2. burn ... up** *p.v.* When people or things destroy something with heat or fire, they **burn it up**.  
*There's no more coal. We **burned** it all **up**.*  
*Jet engines **burn up** fuel at a tremendous rate.*

**burned up** *part.adj.* After something is completely destroyed by heat or fire, it is **burned up**.  
*There isn't anymore firewood. It's all **burned up**.*  
*The house is all **burned up**. There's no way it can be saved.*

**3. burned ... up** *p.v. [informal]* When something makes you very angry, it **burns you up**.  
*It really **burns** me **up** when other people take credit for my work.*  
*I have to say something to Sally about what she did. It's **burning** me **up**.*

**burned up** *part.adj. [informal]* When you are very angry, you are **burned up**.  
*Jim was **burned up** when his boss criticized him during the meeting.*  
*Relax — it's nothing to get all **burned up** about.*

clear up	clear up & clears up	clearing up	cleared up	cleared up
----------	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. clear up** *p.v.* When a problem, misunderstanding, or disease goes away, it **clears up**.  
*The misunderstanding **cleared up** right away after we talked about it.*  
*My rash is **clearing up** by itself. I don't need to go to the doctor.*

**cleared up** *part.adj.* After a problem, misunderstanding, or disease goes away, it is **cleared up**.  
*I feel great. My sinus infection is all **cleared up**.*  
*Everything's OK. It was a big misunderstanding, but it's **cleared up** now.*

**2. clear ... up** *p.v.* When you do something to solve a problem or misunderstanding or do something to cure a disease, you **clear it up**.  
*Everyone was confused about the new policy, so a memo was issued that **cleared** everything **up**.*  
*The medicine Dr. Smith gave me **cleared** the infection **up**.*

3. **clear up** p.v. When clouds in the sky go away, the weather **clears up**.

*Unless it **clears up**, we'll have to cancel the picnic.*  
*It was a beautiful day after the sky **cleared up**.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
count up	count up & counts up	counting up	counted up	counted up

1. **count ... up** p.v. When you count all of something to see how many of them there are, you **count** them **up**.

***Count** the money **up** and tell me what the total is.*  
***Counting up** the yes and no votes is going to take a long time.*

eat up	eat up & eats up	eating up	ate up	eaten up
--------	------------------	-----------	--------	----------

1. **eat ... up** p.v. When you **eat** food **up**, you eat all of it.

*There's no more pizza. David **ate** it all **up**.*  
*Don't **eat up** the cake before your father gets a piece.*

2. **eat ... up** p.v. When something **eats up** something else, such as money or time, it uses all of it.

*I'm broke. Fixing my car last week **ate up** my entire paycheck.*  
*I don't want to go shopping with you. It'll **eat** the whole day **up**.*

heat up	heat up & heats up	heating up	heated up	heated up
---------	--------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

1. **heat ... up** p.v. When something or someone makes something hotter, they **heat** it **up**.

*Waiter, this soup is cold. Would you **heat** it **up** for me?*  
*Sometimes the sun **heats up** the desert to 120 degrees.*

**heated up** part.adj. After something or someone makes something hotter, it is **heat- ed up**.

*Don't give the baby that cold bottle. Give her this **heated up** one.*  
*The spaghetti has been in the microwave for five minutes, so I'm sure it's **heated up** by now.*

pay up	pay up & pays up	paying up	paid up	paid up
--------	------------------	-----------	---------	---------

1. **pay up** p.v. When you **pay up**, you pay all the money you owe to a person, bank, and so on, usually as a result of pressure to pay the money.

*A guy from the collection agency called and told me I'd better **pay up**.*  
*I wasn't surprised when the insurance company refused to **pay up**.*



the particle *up* and the adverbs *right* and *all*

**paid up** *part.adj.* After you are **paid up**, you have paid all the money you owe to a person, bank, and so on.

*I told the bill collector that he had made a mistake. I'm all **paid up**.*  
*Betty's VISA card is **paid up**, so there won't be any finance charge next month.*

plug up	plug up & plugs up	plugging up	plugged up	plugged up
---------	--------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. plug ... up** *p.v.* When people or things block a narrow passage, such as a pipe, drain, or hole, so that nothing can flow through it, they **plug it up**.

*Don't pour bacon grease in the sink — it'll **plug up** the drain.*  
*I need to **plug up** the hole in the roof where the rain is leaking in.*

**plugged up** *part.adj.* When a narrow passage, such as a pipe, drain, or hole, is completely blocked so that nothing can flow through it, it is **plugged up**.

*Call the plumber. The sink's **plugged up**.*  
*My nose is all **plugged up**, and I can't smell anything.*

wipe up	wipe up & wipes up	wiping up	wiped up	wiped up
---------	--------------------	-----------	----------	----------

**1. wipe ... up** *p.v.* When you completely remove a liquid from a surface by moving a towel or sponge across it with a sweeping motion, you **wipe** the liquid **up**. (**Wipe up** is similar to **wipe off**; however, you **wipe up** a liquid, but you **wipe off** the surface the liquid is on.)

*Susie spilled her milk, and her mother told her to **wipe** it all **up**.*  
*You'd better **wipe up** the water on the bathroom floor before someone falls.*

EXERCISE 22a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ the potato chips. Leave some for me.
- 2. We have to \_\_\_\_\_ the hole in this boat \_\_\_\_\_ fast before it sinks.
- 3. It \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ when people smoke in a nonsmoking section.
- 4. There was a lot of confusion about the new plan, so we asked Tom to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ for us.
- 5. The bill collector threatened to repossess my car if I didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. The pain I had in my shoulder \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_ after I tried the new therapy.
- 7. OK, let's \_\_\_\_\_ the points to see who won the game.
- 8. It was cloudy in the morning, but around 11:00 it \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_.

- 9. It hasn't rained in months, so this dry forest will really \_\_\_\_\_ if there's a fire.
- 10. Would you get a towel and \_\_\_\_\_ the coffee you spilled?
- 11. I'll put your dinner in the refrigerator, and you can \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ when you come home.
- 12. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ all these old papers in the fireplace.
- 13. I didn't have any insurance, so paying for those hospital bills really \_\_\_\_\_ all my savings.

EXERCISE 22b — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

- 1. They *burned up*. (the wood, it)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2. He ought to *clear up*. (the misunderstanding, it)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3. Would you *count up*? (the votes, them)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4. Have they *eaten up*? (all the candy, it)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

the particle *up* and the adverbs *right* and *all*

5. I can't *plug up*. (the hole, it)

---

---

---

6. *Wipe up* right now! (that water, it)

---

---

---

EXERCISE 22c — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. You completely blocked the drain so that water couldn't go through it. What did you do to the drain?
- 2. In Question 1, how would you describe the drain?
- 3. I'm putting my coffee in the microwave to make it hotter. What am I doing to my coffee?
- 4. In Question 3, how would you describe my coffee after I take it out of the microwave?
- 5. Erik hasn't counted all the money. What hasn't Erik done?
- 6. You'll pay all your late mortgage payments. What will you do to your mortgage?
- 7. In Question 6, how would you describe your mortgage after you pay all your late payments?
- 8. The police used fire to destroy all the drugs. What did the police do?
- 9. In Question 8, how would you describe the drugs now?
- 10. My disease went away immediately. What did my disease do?
- 11. Sarah is cleaning up all the orange juice that she spilled on the floor. What is Sarah doing?
- 12. Carlos always eats all his baby food, and he eats it quickly. What does Carlos do?



EXERCISE 22d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

carry on, 16	go with, 15	look around, 21	step on, 21
count on, 16	hand in, 13	put away, 14	take out on, 21
dress up, 14	head back, 15	sign in, 12	think ahead, 21
dry up, 14	head for, 15	sign out, 12	zip up, 21

1. I'll be there when you need me. You can \_\_\_\_\_ me.
2. Do you think these shoes \_\_\_\_\_ my dress?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ so that you have everything you need when you get there.
4. Linda is here in the office somewhere — she \_\_\_\_\_ at 8:52.
5. Linda always leaves at 5:00, and it's almost 6:00 now, so I'm sure she has already \_\_\_\_\_.
6. That guy is crazy. He ought to be \_\_\_\_\_.
7. When you finish with the job application, you can \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to the secretary.
8. I don't think we should make any changes now. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ our original plan.
9. The party will be casual, so you don't have to \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Maria told me she would be in the library between 7:00 and 8:00, but I \_\_\_\_\_ and couldn't find her.
11. There's some broken glass there — don't \_\_\_\_\_ it.
12. I hope it rains soon. The lake is starting to \_\_\_\_\_.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ your coat — it's 15 degrees below zero outside.
14. Janice hates her job, and she \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ her husband.
15. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ San Diego, and I should get there by late afternoon.
16. I'll stay in San Diego for a week and then \_\_\_\_\_ to Los Angeles.

two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object, part 2

23. FOCUS ON: **two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object, part 2**

As we saw in Section 9, many phrasal verbs that can be used both intransitively and transitively require a second particle when they are used transitively, which makes them three-word phrasal verbs.

Although these phrasal verbs have a three-word version, they remain classified as two-word verbs because the two-word and three-word phrasal verbs have the same meaning — they are variations of the same verb:

He **filled in**.  
He **filled in** for Mike.

There are, however, three-word phrasal verbs that share the same verb and first particle as another two-word phrasal verb but have an entirely different meaning. These are two different phrasal verbs and are classified separately:

He **put up** a poster.  
He **put up with** her rudeness.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
crack down	crack down & cracks down	cracking down	cracked down	cracked down

**1. crack down** (on) *p.v.* When you **crack down** or **crack down** on someone or something, you enforce rules and laws more than you enforced them before or you make new, stronger rules and laws.

The chief of police said he was going to **crack down** on car theft.  
The students have been coming to class later and later everyday. It's time to start **cracking down**.

**crackdown** *n.* When you enforce rules and laws more than you enforced them before, this is a **crackdown**.

The FBI is planning a major **crackdown** on organized crime.  
After the **crackdown**, the crime rate plunged.

cut down	cut down & cuts down	cutting down	cut down	cut down
----------	----------------------	--------------	----------	----------

**1. cut ... down** *p.v.* When you **cut down** a tree, you use a saw or an axe to cut it and make it fall to the ground.

You should **cut** that dead tree **down** before it falls on your house.  
The builder was criticized for **cutting down** so many trees when he built the house.

**2. cut ... down** *p.v. [informal — always separated]* When you **cut** people **down** to size, you do or say something to make them feel less important or less powerful.

*I'm tired of that jerk. I'm going to **cut** him **down** to size.*  
*Hank thinks he's such a tough guy. Someone ought to **cut** him **down** to size.*

**3. cut down** (on) *p.v.* When you **cut down** or **cut down** on something that you consume, you use it less. When you **cut down** or **cut down** on something you do, you do it less. **Cut back** is similar to **cut down**.

*If you can't quit smoking, you should at least **cut down**.*  
*My doctor said **cutting down** on fat in my diet would lower my cholesterol.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
drop out	drop out & drops out	dropping out	dropped out	dropped out

**1. drop out** (of) *p.v.* When you **drop out** or **drop out** of a school, a training course, or other program, you leave before graduating from the school or completing the course or program.

*The program is very difficult, and about 70 percent of the students **drop out**.*  
*Linda's father was very disappointed when she **dropped out** of college.*

**dropout** *n.* A **dropout** is someone who has left school, usually high school or college, before graduating.

*Many successful people are college **dropouts**.*

get away	get away & gets away	getting away	got away	gotten/got away
----------	----------------------	--------------	----------	-----------------

**1. get away** (from) *p.v.* When you escape from people who are chasing you because they want to hurt you or because you have committed a crime, you **get away** or **get away** from them.

*When he took the knife out of his pocket, I **got away** from him fast.*  
*By the time the police arrived, the robbers had already **gotten away**.*

**getaway** *n.* When you escape from people who want to capture or hurt you, you make a **getaway**.

*The robbers made their **getaway** in a blue Ford.*  
*The car used for the **getaway** was found abandoned in the next town.*

**2. get away** (with) *p.v.* When you do something that is sneaky or wrong and you are not punished or criticized for it because no one knows or cares about it, you **get away** with it.

*Jake has been cheating on his taxes for years, and he always **gets away** with it.*  
*He **got away** with stealing the money even though everyone knew he was guilty.*

**3. get away** (from) *p.v.* When you **get away** from people or places, you leave them even though it may be difficult.

*I'm tired of this town. I need to **get away**.*  
*Frank was talking and talking, and I couldn't **get away** from him.*



two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object, part 2

4. **get away** *p.v.* When you **get away**, you go on vacation.
- I have a lot of work to do, but I'll try to **get away** for a week or two.*
- We always try to **get away** in January and go skiing.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	hold out	holding out	held out	held out

1. **hold ... out** *p.v.* When you **hold out** your hand, you extend it in front of your body so that someone can shake hands with you or put something in your hand. **Hold out** is similar to **put out**.
- Maybe Mr. Young is mad at me. I **held out** my hand, but he didn't shake it.*
- The street was filled with beggars **holding** their hands **out**.*

2. **hold out** *p.v.* When a supply of something is enough for your needs, the supply **holds out**.
- The hot dogs **held out** until the end of the party, but we didn't have enough hamburgers.*
- This is all the money I have, so it has to **hold out** until I get paid again.*

3. **hold out** *p.v.* When you **hold out**, you resist an attack, pressure, or temptation or you continue to survive in a dangerous situation.
- More than 1,000 enemy soldiers attacked the fort. There were only 98 of us inside, but we **held out** for two weeks.*
- I haven't had a cigarette in three days, and I don't know how much longer I can **hold out**.*

- holdout** *n.* Someone who resists an attack, pressure, or temptation is a **holdout**.
- The enemy soldiers are in control of the country, but there are some **holdouts** hiding in the mountains.*
- There are still a few **holdouts** who don't have credit cards.*

4. **hold out (for)** *p.v.* When you **hold out** or **hold out** for something, you refuse to compromise in a negotiation and accept anything less than your original demands.
- The basketball player is **holding out** for a million dollars a game.*
- The union spokesman said the union members would **hold out** until their demands were met.*

- holdout** *n.* When you refuse to compromise in a negotiation and accept anything less than your original demands, you are a **holdout**.
- All the players have signed contracts except for two **holdouts**.*

make up	make up & makes up	making up	made up	made up

1. **make ... up** *p.v.* When you invent a story to entertain or fool people, you **make** the story **up**. When you invent a lie to deceive people, you **make** the lie **up**.

*My son asked me to **make up** a story about monsters.*

*Hank told his boss he was late for work because he had to go to the doctor, but he just **made** that excuse **up**.*

**made-up** *part.adj.* When a story is invented or fictional, it is **made-up**.

*There's no truth to any of this — it's just a **made-up** story.*

**2. make up** (of) *p.v. [often passive]* When people or things **make up** a larger thing, they together form that larger thing. When a larger thing is **made up** of people or things, they together form that larger thing.

*Children under 15 **make up** 50 percent of the population.*

*An airplane is **made up** of thousands of parts.*

**3. make ... up** *p.v.* When you **make up** your mind, **make up** your mind about something, or **make up** your mind about doing something, you decide which choice to make or which action to take.

*I like the blue dress and the red dress. I can't **make up** my mind.*

*My daughter still hasn't **made up** her mind about which college to attend.*

*Marsha **made** her mind **up** about quitting her job and joining the Navy.*

**made up** *part.adj.* After you **make up** your mind or **make up** your mind to do something, your mind is **made up**.

*Don't waste your time talking to Tom about it — his mind is **made up**.*

**4. make ... up** *p.v.* When you have an amount of money that is not enough for a certain requirement and you add more money so that it will be enough, you **make up** the difference between the amount you have and the amount you need.

*The cashier was supposed to have \$755 at the end of her shift, but she had only \$735, so she had to **make** the shortage **up** with her own money.*

*I didn't have enough saved to pay for college, but my Uncle Fred **made up** the difference.*

**5. make ... up** *p.v.* When you do something that you were required to do earlier but did not, such as attend a class, take a test, or complete a homework assignment, you **make it up**.

*Karen asked the teacher about **making up** the test that she missed.*

*The teacher told her she could **make it up** tomorrow after school.*

**6. make ... up** *p.v. [the noun and adjectives derived from this phrasal verb are much more commonly used than the phrasal verb itself]* When you **make** yourself **up**, you put lipstick, eye shadow, and so on, on your face.

*She **made** herself **up** and went to the party.*

**make-up** *n.* **Make-up** is cosmetics: lipstick, mascara, and so on.

*Heather's father thinks she wears too much **make-up**.*



two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object, part 2

**made-up** *part.adj.* After people have put on **make-up**, they are **made-up**.

*Did you see Lydia? She’s really beautiful when she’s all **made-up**.*

**7. make up** (with) *p.v.* When two people **make up** or **make up** with each other, they end an argument and resume friendly relations.

*Sally and Jim had a big fight, but they **made up** the next day.  
Mr. Baker said he won’t **make up** with his wife until she apologizes.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
stay out	stay out & stays out	staying out	stayed out	stayed out

**1. stay out** *p.v.* When you **stay out**, you do not return to your house.

*Do you let your kids **stay out** past 7:00?  
I **stayed out** late last night, and today I’m really exhausted.*

**2. stay out** (of) *p.v.* When you **stay out** of a place, you do not go inside it.

*Your father’s busy cooking dinner, so **stay out** of the kitchen.  
You can’t come in here. **Stay out!***

**3. stay out** (of) *p.v.* When you **stay out** of a situation, such as an argument, fight, battle, or war, you do not get involved in it.

*This fight doesn’t involve you, so **stay out**.  
Jake has **stayed out** of trouble since he left prison.*

watch out	watch out & watches out	watching out	watched out	watched out
-----------	-------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

**1. watch out** (for) *p.v.* When you **watch out** or **watch out** for something, you remain alert for someone or something that is dangerous or important. When you tell people to **watch out** or **watch out** for something, you are warning them of possible danger. **Watch out** is the same as **look out**.

***Watch out** when you’re crossing a busy street.  
Karen said she would meet us here at 12:00, so **watch out** for her.  
**Watch out!** There’s a snake in the grass.  
I dropped a glass in the kitchen, so **watch out** for broken glass.*

EXERCISE 23a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. Are you telling me the truth, or did you \_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2. You’re going to a dangerous area. \_\_\_\_\_ for muggers.
- 3. I have to \_\_\_\_\_ on salt in my diet because of my high blood pressure.
- 4. We had to \_\_\_\_\_ two trees to make room for the new swimming pool.



- 5. \_\_\_\_\_ of the water — someone saw a shark.
- 6. The soldiers in the fort couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ against such a huge and powerful army.
- 7. The United States is \_\_\_\_\_ of people from many different races and cultures.
- 8. It was too hard to work and go to school at the same time, so Todd had to \_\_\_\_\_ of college.
- 9. Carmen can pay only half of the money she owes me, but Luis promised to \_\_\_\_\_ the difference.
- 10. A group of concerned citizens is demanding that the police \_\_\_\_\_ on crime in their neighborhood.
- 11. The bank robbers \_\_\_\_\_ in a white car with Florida license plates.
- 12. When the President walks past you, \_\_\_\_\_ your hand \_\_\_\_\_ and maybe he'll shake it.
- 13. I really need a vacation. I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ in three years.
- 14. I told my son that if he can't \_\_\_\_\_ of trouble, I'm going to send him to military school.
- 15. The airline pilots are \_\_\_\_\_ for a 15 percent raise, and they will not accept anything less.
- 16. The store's closing in five minutes, so you need to \_\_\_\_\_ your mind about which pair of shoes you want.
- 17. After 14 years he thought he had \_\_\_\_\_ with the murder, but he was wrong.
- 18. All Joe does is complain and criticize. I need to \_\_\_\_\_ from him.
- 19. Mike didn't come home until 4:30 in the morning, and his father was furious that he had \_\_\_\_\_ so late.
- 20. He thinks he's so smart. I hope someone \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ down to size someday.
- 21. Be careful about how much you spend — this money has to \_\_\_\_\_ until payday.

two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object, part 2

- 22. Bob and Marsha had a big argument, but they \_\_\_\_\_ with each other, and now everything is OK.
- 23. The professor warned the students that if they missed the final examination, they could not \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 23b — **Complete the sentences with the correct second particles.**

- 1. The principal is going to *crack down* \_\_\_\_\_ smoking in the bathroom.
- 2. If you want to lose weight, *cut down* \_\_\_\_\_ cake and cookies.
- 3. He *dropped out* \_\_\_\_\_ college before graduation.
- 4. After Jake robbed the bank, he was arrested and sent to jail. He didn't *get away* \_\_\_\_\_ robbing the bank.
- 5. The French workers are *holding out* \_\_\_\_\_ a 100 percent raise and a two-day workweek.
- 6. There are a lot of rattlesnakes around here, so *watch out* \_\_\_\_\_ them.
- 7. Timmy's mother told him to *stay out* \_\_\_\_\_ the cookie jar.

EXERCISE 23c — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. The union members are on strike, and some will not go back to work unless they get the 10 percent raise they demanded in the beginning. What are the union members doing?
- 2. Some union members accepted a 7 percent raise and went back to work, but not the union members in Question 1. What would you call the union members in Question 1?
- 3. Jim and his sister had a big fight, but they apologized to each other, and now everything is OK. What did Jim and his sister do?
- 4. Jake stopped going to high school before he graduated. What did Jake do?
- 5. In Question 4, what is Jake?
- 6. You considered buying either a Toyota or a Nissan, and then you made your decision. What did you do?
- 7. My elbow is very sore, so my doctor told me to play less tennis. What did my doctor tell me?

8. Most of the Democrats will vote in favor of the new law, but a few are resisting pressure to vote yes. What are the Democrats who don't want to vote yes doing?

9. In Question 8, what are the Democrats who don't want to vote yes?

10. Mr. and Mrs. Ortega went to a party and didn't come home until 3:00 A.M. What did they do?

11. The explorer's supply of food and water has to last for three months. What does the explorer's supply of food and water have to do for three months?

12. Erik invented a funny story for his daughter. What did Erik do?

13. In Question 12, Erik's funny story wasn't true. How would you describe it?

14. Mr. Flores cheats on his taxes, but so far he hasn't been caught. What has Mr. Flores done so far?

15. There are a lot of big trucks on the road, so when you drive, you have to be careful. What do you have to do when you drive?

16. The police are going to start working harder to prevent crime. What are the police going to do?

17. In Question 16, what can you call the plan to work harder to prevent crime?

EXERCISE 23d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

aim at, 19	fall apart, 17	stand around, 18
believe in, 16	get through, 16	tell apart, 18
break through, 18	go for, 16	think about, 16
burn up, 22	grow out of, 17	wipe up, 22
come over, 17	hold off, 16	
count up, 22	put past, 16	

1. Do you want these baby clothes? My daughter has \_\_\_\_\_ them.

2. It's always a good idea to \_\_\_\_\_ installing a new software version until they get all the bugs out.



phrasal verbs used as nouns, part 2

- 3. Get a paper towel and \_\_\_\_\_ the grape juice you spilled.
- 4. I'm not sure what I will do. I have to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 5. I have a lot of work to do, so I probably won't \_\_\_\_\_ until 4:00.
- 6. The twins look exactly like each other. How do you \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_?
- 7. The walls of this fort are ten feet thick. No one could \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. We finished our card game, and Sean \_\_\_\_\_ the points.
- 9. The new law is \_\_\_\_\_ reducing air pollution.
- 10. I need to fix this table. It's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 11. Raquel suggested moving to the suburbs, and her husband \_\_\_\_\_ the idea.
- 12. That guy's a lunatic. There's nothing I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- 13. We \_\_\_\_\_ the old wood in the fireplace.
- 14. My niece is 13 years old, but she still \_\_\_\_\_ Santa Claus.
- 15. The sign in the store window said they open at 10:00, but we had to \_\_\_\_\_ until 10:20 before they opened the doors.
- 16. Would you like to \_\_\_\_\_ to my house tonight and have dinner?

24. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs used as nouns, part 2

As we saw in Section 5, two-word phrasal verbs are sometimes stressed on the verb and sometimes on the particle. Two-word nouns, however, are always stressed on the verb even if it is the particle of the two-word verb that is stressed:

verb: **SHOW off**    noun: **SHOW-off**  
verb: **slow DOWN**    noun: **SLOWdown**

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
come down	come down & comes down	coming down	came down	come down

1. **come down** (to) *p.v.* When someone moves toward you to a lower level position, or from north to south, that person **comes down** or **comes down** to where you are. **Come up** is the opposite of **come down**.

*It's been raining for an hour! It's really **coming down**.*  
*My friend from Canada **comes down** to visit us in New Mexico once in a while.*

**2. come down** *p.v.* When you move to a lower level socially or financially and receive less respect from other people because of this change, you **come down** in life.

*Hank certainly has **come down** in life — he lost his job, house, and family because of his gambling problem.*  
*Mark used to be so successful, but now he has so many problems. He has really **come down** in life.*

**comedown** *n.* A **comedown** is a move to a lower level socially or financially that causes you to receive less respect from other people.

*A few years ago he was the manager of this restaurant, but now he's only a waiter — what a **comedown**.*

**3. come down (to)** *p.v.* When you lower the price you are asking for something, you **come down** or **come down** to a lower price.

*I won't buy her car unless she **comes down** to \$12,000.*  
*The union won't **come down** a nickel in its salary demands.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	let up	letting up	let up	let up

**1. let up (on)** *p.v.* When something becomes less strong, less intense, or less severe, it **lets up**.

*The rain finally **let up** yesterday.*  
*Mike's parents are very strict with him. He's only a boy. They should **let up** on him.*

**letup** *n.* A **letup** is a reduction in how strong, severe, or intense something is.

*There was no **letup** in terrorist bombings after the peace treaty was signed.*

print out	print out & prints out	printing out	printed out	printed out

**1. print ... out** *p.v.* When you make a computer write something on paper, you **print it out**.

*After I finished writing my letter, I **printed it out** and signed it.*  
*I can't **print this out** — my printer is broken.*

**printout** *n.* When you make a computer write something on paper, the paper is a **printout**.

*I put the **printout** of the October sales report on the sales manager's desk.*

shake up	shake up & shakes up	shaking up	shook up	shaken up

**1. shake ... up** *p.v.* When something upsets, shocks, or frightens you badly, it **shakes** you **up**.

Seeing all those dead bodies really **shook** me **up**.  
I was really **shaken up** when I learned that my uncle had been killed.

**shaken up** *part.adj.* When something upsets, shocks, or frightens you badly, you are **shaken up**.

Leave Frank alone. He just got some bad news, and he’s a bit **shaken up** about it.

**2. shake ... up** *p.v.* When you mix something by shaking it, you **shake** it **up**.

You have to **shake up** Italian dressing before you open the bottle.  
Did you **shake** this can of paint **up**?

**3. shake ... up** *p.v.* When you make major changes in an organization or business, you **shake** it **up**.

The new CEO **shook up** management at my company, and a lot of people lost their jobs or were transferred.  
People are getting a little lazy around here. It’s time to **shake** things **up**.

**shake-up** *n.* A major change in an organization or business is a **shake-up**.

There was a big **shake-up** at my company, and a lot of people lost their jobs or were transferred.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	show off & shows off	showing off	showed off	shown off

**1. show ... off** *p.v.* When you **show off**, you let people see something you have or something you can do in a very obvious and excessive way.

Sally’s boyfriend gave her a huge diamond engagement ring, and she **showed** it **off** to all her friends.  
The boy was **showing off** by riding his bicycle with no hands when he fell and hurt himself.

**show-off** *n.* Someone who **shows off** is a **show-off**.

Did you hear Mark speaking French at the party so everyone could hear? What a **show-off**!

slow down	slow down & slows down	slowing down	slowed down	slowed down

**1. slow ... down** *p.v.* When something causes people or things to do something more slowly, it **slows** them **down**.

I was driving pretty fast, but I **slowed down** after I saw the police car.  
Production at the factory **slowed down** when half the workers got sick.

**slowdown** *n.* When people or things do something more slowly, a **slowdown** occurs.

The snow caused a big **slowdown** on the highway this morning.



Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
stop over	stop over & stops over	stopping over	stopped over	stopped over

**1. stop over** *p.v.* When you interrupt a journey (usually an airplane journey) for a short stay somewhere, you **stop over**.

*Michael **stopped over** in London on his flight from New York to Moscow.*  
***Stopping over** in Dubai on the way to Bangkok wasn't any fun — we couldn't even leave the airport.*

**stopover** *n.* When you interrupt a journey (usually an airplane journey) for a short stay somewhere, you make a **stopover**.

*I flew from Istanbul to Philadelphia with a four-day **stopover** in Amsterdam.*

**2. stop over** *p.v.* When you visit someone for a short time, you **stop over**.

*Would you like to **stop over** after dinner and see our vacation pictures?*  
*Can you vacuum the living room, please? My boss and his wife are **stopping over** tonight, and I want the place to look nice.*

trade in	trade in & trades in	trading in	traded in	traded in
----------	----------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

**1. trade ...in** *p.v.* When you give an old car or other piece of expensive equipment to someone that you are buying a new car or piece of equipment from in order to get a lower price, you **trade** the old car or piece of equipment **in**.

*After the twins were born, Raul **traded** his pickup truck **in** for a station wagon.*  
*We'll get a good price on our new photocopier if we **trade in** our old one.*

**trade-in** *n.* An old car or piece of equipment that you **trade in** for a newer one is a **trade-in**.

*Most of the used cars sold by dealers are **trade-ins**.*

EXERCISE 24a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. You're driving too fast. Please \_\_\_\_\_.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ that bottle of salad dressing before you open it.
3. The real estate agent says he thinks the sellers will \_\_\_\_\_ a little in their asking price.
4. My new car cost \$24,000, but I \_\_\_\_\_ my old car \_\_\_\_\_ for \$15,000.
5. Jim is upstairs. Ask him to \_\_\_\_\_ here for a minute, OK?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ in London for a few days on your way to India is a good way to get over jet lag.

phrasal verbs used as nouns, part 2

- 7. I was pretty \_\_\_\_\_ by the news, but now I'm OK.
- 8. Luis \_\_\_\_\_ his new car \_\_\_\_\_ to his friends yesterday.
- 9. The fighting continued for four days before it finally \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10. Leticia used to be rich, but she lost all her money gambling, and now she can't even pay her bills. She's really \_\_\_\_\_ in life.
- 11. When you finish writing that story, \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and give it to me. I want to read it.
- 12. This company was losing money until the new owners came in and \_\_\_\_\_ things \_\_\_\_\_.
- 13. I have to clean the house because Pat and Mike might \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.

EXERCISE 24b — Complete the sentences with nouns from this section.

- 1. I worked for my company for 31 years before I got fired in the big \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. I had a four-hour \_\_\_\_\_ in Los Angeles on my way to Hawaii.
- 3. Nicole used to have her own company, and now she's driving a taxi. That's quite a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. The wind blew all night without any \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. New car dealers usually have a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ for sale at low prices.
- 6. The snow caused a big \_\_\_\_\_ on the highway this morning.
- 7. After the computer finished with the data, I took the \_\_\_\_\_ upstairs to the sales department.
- 8. He's lost a lot of weight, and now he wears really tight pants everyday. What a \_\_\_\_\_ he is.

EXERCISE 24c — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

- 1. The rain *slowed down*. (traffic, it)

2. He *printed out*. (his letter, it)

---

---

---

3. The bad news has *shaken up*. (Jim and Nancy, them)

---

---

---

4. I got \$5,000 for *trading in*. (my old car, it)

---

---

---

5. Chelsea’s parents *showed off*. (her perfect report card, it)

---

---

---

EXERCISE 24d — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. After the computer finished the calculations, I printed the answers on a piece of paper. What did I do?
- 2. In Question 1, what would you call the paper with the answers?
- 3. Todd’s friend in Minnesota is going to visit him in New Orleans. What is Todd’s friend going to do?
- 4. Ned walks around without a shirt so the girls can see his muscles. What does Ned do?
- 5. In Question 4, what is Ned?



phrasal verbs used as nouns, part 2

- 6. When I buy my new car, I'll give the dealer my old car so that I can get a lower price on the new car. What will I do with my old car?
- 7. In Question 6, what would you call my old car?
- 8. The new boss fired a lot of employees, hired new employees, and made a lot of changes. What did the new boss do?
- 9. In Question 8, what would you call what the new boss did?
- 10. Sandra used to be married to a prince, but now she's divorced and broke. What has Sandra done?
- 11. In Question 10, what would you call what happened to Sandra?
- 12. It rained for two weeks straight before it stopped. What did the rain do?
- 13. In Question 12, what would you call what the rain did?
- 14. There was a big accident on the highway yesterday morning, and traffic was awful. What did the accident do to the traffic?
- 15. In Question 14, what would you call the traffic situation?
- 16. You flew from Denver to Miami, but you had to spend a few hours in Atlanta on the way. What did you do in Atlanta?
- 17. In Question 16, what would you call my visit to Atlanta?
- 18. Mike saw a terrible accident this morning while he was driving, and it upset him a lot. What did the accident do to Mike?
- 19. In Question 18, how would you describe Mike after he saw the accident?

EXERCISE 24e, Review — **Complete the sentences with these nouns from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

backup, 11	drop-off, 11	follow-up, 11	tryout, 11
crackdown, 23	dropout, 23	lineup, 18	workout, 11

- 1. The doctor said I was cured, but he wants me to see him in a year for a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. Drugs are getting to be a big problem in my son's school. I think it's time for a \_\_\_\_\_.

- 3. When I was nineteen, I was a \_\_\_\_\_ with no future, but then I got smart and finished school.
- 4. After the accident, the human cannonball was dropped from the circus \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. The \_\_\_\_\_ for the basketball team will be next Saturday at 10:00 A.M.
- 6. Janice just got back from the gym, and she’s really exhausted from her \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7. I use the program on the hard disk, but I have a \_\_\_\_\_ on a CD.
- 8. Business at the restaurant used to be good, but there was a big \_\_\_\_\_ after that case of food poisoning.

EXERCISE 24f, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

bring over, 19	go beyond, 18	look around, 21	tell on, 15
cool off, 19	hang up, 9	settle down, 21	watch out, 23
count up, 22	hold out, 23	stay out, 23	wipe up, 22
figure on, 18	lift up, 18	step on, 21	

- 1. Young man, if you don’t \_\_\_\_\_ of trouble at school, I’m going to send you to military school!
- 2. These suitcases are so heavy I can barely \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. A good history book doesn’t simply tell you what happened, it \_\_\_\_\_ that and tells you why it happened.
- 4. Todd got in trouble with his mother after he broke a window and his sister \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- 5. If you’re going to that bad neighborhood late at night, please be careful and \_\_\_\_\_ for muggers.
- 6. That museum is huge. If you want to see everything, you should \_\_\_\_\_ spending the entire day there.
- 7. This coffee’s way too hot. Can you get me an ice cube so I can \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_?
- 8. That company wants to hire me, but I’m \_\_\_\_\_ for more money.
- 9. My brother is going to visit tonight, and he’s \_\_\_\_\_ his fiancée \_\_\_\_\_.

phrasal verbs and have to, have got to, and must

- 10. I've never been to this store before. I want to \_\_\_\_\_ and see what they have.
- 11. My husband was very angry when our 13-year-old daughter came home at 4:00 in the morning, so I told him to \_\_\_\_\_ and let me talk to her.
- 12. We had only 20 minutes to get to the airport, so we told the taxi driver to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 13. After the votes were \_\_\_\_\_, Senator Dolittle was declared the winner.
- 14. Timmy, get a paper towel and \_\_\_\_\_ this juice you spilled on the floor.
- 15. Leticia said good-bye and \_\_\_\_\_ the telephone.

25. FOCUS ON: **phrasal verbs and *have to, have got to, and must***

*Have to, have got to, and must* have two important uses in English. One is familiar to most students; the other is not.

But before discussing that, let's pay special attention to *have got to*. *Have to* and *have got to* mean exactly the same thing. Both are commonly used, and both are acceptable standard English. *Have to* derives from *have*, and *have got to* derives from *have got*. So why the *got* in *have got to*? A good question. *Got* in *have got to* means nothing and serves no purpose whatever. *Have got to* is a unique, idiomatic variation of *have to*. There is no point in trying to understand the grammar of *have got to* because there isn't any. Like other idioms, it must simply be memorized. Though *have to* and *have got to* mean the same thing, their forms are different, especially in questions and negative sentences. The examples below on the left and right have the same meaning. In each case, the contracted form is more common in everyday spoken English:

statement: <i>You <u>have to</u> <b>come down</b>.</i>	= <i>You <u>have got to</u> <b>come down</b>.</i>
<i>You <u>have to</u> <b>come down</b>.</i>	= <i>You've <u>got to</u> <b>come down</b>.</i>
question: <i><u>Do you have to</u> <b>come down</b>?</i>	= <i><u>Have you got to</u> <b>come down</b>?</i>
negative: <i>You <u>do not have to</u> <b>come down</b>.</i>	= <i>You <u>have not got to</u> <b>come down</b>.</i>
<i>You <u>don't have to</u> <b>come down</b>.</i>	= <i>You <u>haven't got to</u> <b>come down</b>.</i>

**Requirement**

*Have to, have got to, and must* are both used to say that something is required, necessary, mandatory — that there is no choice in the matter:



You have to **make up** the test.  
You've got to **make up** the test.  
You must **make up** the test.

Although most students learn this use of *must* early in their studies, it is actually the least common way to use *must*. Both *have to* and *have got to* are much more commonly used for this purpose.

Near certainty

The other important use of *have to*, *have got to*, and *must* is to say that something is 99 percent certain — that based on the facts and based on what we see and know, no other conclusion is possible about something. We are 99 percent certain, and all we need is confirmation to be 100 percent certain:

*Janice, you have been working for 12 hours without a break. You have to be tired.* (A logical assumption, but until Janice confirms that she is tired, the speaker cannot be 100 percent certain.)  
*I would never take that book out of this room. It's got to be here somewhere.* (A logical assumption, but until the speaker finds the book, he cannot be 100 percent certain that it is in the room.)  
*That man is from Japan. I've never spoken with him, but he must speak Japanese.* (A logical assumption, but until the speaker hears the man speaking Japanese, he cannot be 100 percent certain.)

When *have to*, *have got to*, and *must* are used in this way, it is *must* that is more common than the others. *Have to* and *have got to*, when used for this purpose, have greater emphasis and are used for dramatic effect:

*Mark has to be the biggest idiot in the entire world.*  
*Where is Lydia? She's got to be here somewhere.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
do with				

**1. do with** *p.v. [used only in the infinitive form and always with “have”]* When you say that one thing has something to **do with** another, you mean there is a connection between the two.

*Don't blame me for what happened. I had nothing to **do with** it.*  
*I'm not sure what this part does, but I think it must have something to **do with** the transmission.*

have on	have on & has on	having on	had on	had on
---------	------------------	-----------	--------	--------

**1. have ... on** *p.v.* When you wear something, such as an item of clothing, perfume, or cosmetics, you **have** it **on**.

*Sally **had** red pants and a blue shirt **on**.*  
*I didn't **have** a raincoat **on**, and I got all wet.*

phrasal verbs and have to, have got to, and must

2. **have ... on** p.v. When you **have** an electrical device **on**, you are using it.
- Last summer was so cool that we **had** the air conditioner **on** only two or three times.*  
*What's that sound? Dan must **have** the radio **on**.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
hurry up	hurry up & hurries up	hurrying up	hurried up	hurried up

1. **hurry up** p.v. When you **hurry up**, you do something quickly.
- Nicole has to **hurry up** if she's going to finish her work before 5:00.*  
*If we don't **hurry up**, we're going to miss the beginning of the movie.*
2. **hurry ... up** p.v. When you **hurry** something **up**, you do it more quickly. When you **hurry** people **up**, you urge them to do something more quickly. When you say "**Hurry up**," to people, you are telling them to do something more quickly.
- Everyone was really hungry, so I asked our cook to **hurry** dinner **up**.*  
*There were only five minutes left to finish the test, so the teacher **hurried** the students **up**.*  
***Hurry up!** I'm not going to wait for you all day.*

knock over	knock over & knocks over	knocking over	knocked over	knocked over
------------	--------------------------	---------------	--------------	--------------

1. **knock ... over** p.v. When you **knock** people or things **over**, you use force to make them fall to a horizontal position.
- The force of the explosion **knocked** me **over**.*  
*The children were playing, and they **knocked** the lamp **over**.*

lighten up	lighten up & lightens up	lightening up	lightened up	lightened up
------------	--------------------------	---------------	--------------	--------------

1. **lighten up** (on) p.v. [informal] When you **lighten up** or **lighten up** on people, you become less harsh or less strict in your treatment of them.
- You're awfully hard on your daughter. Maybe you ought to **lighten up** on her.*  
*You've been criticizing me all day. Will you please **lighten up**?*
2. **lighten ... up** p.v. When you **lighten up** or **lighten** the subject of conversation **up**, you change the subject of conversation from something serious to something more cheerful and pleasant.
- Enough talk about business. Let's **lighten** things **up** around here.*  
***Lighten up** — you've been talking about death and taxes all night.*

plan ahead	plan ahead & plans ahead	planning ahead	planned ahead	planned ahead
------------	--------------------------	----------------	---------------	---------------

1. **plan ahead** p.v. When you **plan ahead**, you plan for a future situation or activity so that you will not have a problem then. **Plan ahead** is similar to **think ahead**.
- Janice is a good manager. She always **plans ahead** in case there's a problem.*

**Plan ahead** — you don't want any problems when you're 200 miles from the nearest town.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
settle for	settle for & settles for	settling for	settled for	settled for

**1. settle for** p.v. When you **settle for** something, you accept it even though it may not be exactly what you want or need.

*The strikers wanted an eight percent pay increase, but they **settled for** five percent.*  
*Dr. Smith has very high standards. He won't **settle for** second best.*

think up	think up & thinks up	thinking up	thought up	thought up
----------	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. think ... up** p.v. When you **think up** something, such as an idea, solution, or plan, you use your imagination to create it. **Think up** is similar to **come up with**.

*I have to **think up** a way to solve this problem.*  
*Maria **thought up** a great way to make some extra money.*  
*Stop worrying — I'll **think** something **up**.*

EXERCISE 25a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. We're going to be late if you don't \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I told the store manager that I wanted a full refund and that I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ anything else.
3. Mr. Wolfe \_\_\_\_\_ a white suit \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
4. Joe's been angry all day. I wish he'd \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The truck hit the light pole and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
6. You have to talk to someone in the shipping department about your missing order. I have nothing to \_\_\_\_\_ shipping.
7. If you're going on an important business trip, you should \_\_\_\_\_ so that you don't forget something you'll need later.
8. Jake is trying to \_\_\_\_\_ a way to make money without working.
9. Go upstairs and \_\_\_\_\_ your sister \_\_\_\_\_. I'm afraid she's going to be late for school.
10. We've been talking politics all night. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ things \_\_\_\_\_, OK?
11. I like to \_\_\_\_\_ the radio \_\_\_\_\_ when I go to bed.



phrasal verbs and have to, have got to, and must

EXERCISE 25b — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. Charles wore a red shirt yesterday. What did Charles do?
- 2. Sean wants a 15 percent raise, and he won't accept less. What won't Sean do?
- 3. Dr. Wood is thinking about the important meeting she will go to next week so that she will be ready. What is Dr. Wood doing?
- 4. Jake hit Jerry so hard that Jerry fell to the floor. What did Jake do to Jerry?
- 5. Ned told Todd to work more quickly. What did Ned tell Todd to do?
- 6. I got a letter about my income taxes. What was the letter about?
- 7. Sergeant Jones has been yelling at the soldiers all day. What should Sergeant Jones do?
- 8. Betty's got to make a Halloween costume, and she's using her imagination to create one. What is Betty doing?

EXERCISE 25c — **Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Use *have to*, *have got to*, or *must* in each sentence.**

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 25d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

burned up, 22	lined up, 18	ripped up, 17	zipped up, 21
cleared up, 22	made-up, 23	shaken up, 24	
dried out, 15	paid up, 22	warmed up, 19	
heated up, 22	plugged up, 22	worn down, 17	

1. It’s freezing outside — make sure your coat is \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Don’t start driving yet. The car’s not \_\_\_\_\_.

3. We talked about the problem, and now everything is \_\_\_\_\_.

4. I need lotion. My skin is really \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Hank is such a liar. Don’t believe any of his \_\_\_\_\_ excuses.

6. After I give Bill ten bucks, I won’t owe him another penny. I’ll be totally \_\_\_\_\_.

7. Pat was pretty \_\_\_\_\_ after the accident.

8. Bill was furious at his ex-wife, and now all his photos of her are \_\_\_\_\_ and in the garbage.

9. People are \_\_\_\_\_ for three blocks to buy World Series tickets.

10. Don’t drink that coffee — it’s not \_\_\_\_\_.

11. I can’t smell or taste anything because my nose is all \_\_\_\_\_.

12. I was really \_\_\_\_\_ after he took my calculator without asking me and then lost it.

13. The heels of my old cowboy boots are \_\_\_\_\_. I need to get them fixed.

EXERCISE 25e, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure to use the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the lesson number given after each one.**

call in, 5	hand out, 10	screw on, 12	stop over, 24
clear up, 22	hook up, 9	show off, 24	trade in, 24
come down, 24	let up, 24	slow down, 24	warm up, 19
go back, 19	print out, 24	stick up, 14	

1. The car dealer is asking \$27,000 for the car I want, but I think he might \_\_\_\_\_ to \$24,000.

2. While you go to the library, I’ll go to the supermarket, and we’ll \_\_\_\_\_ at the corner in one hour.

3. Be sure you \_\_\_\_\_ the top of that mustard jar \_\_\_\_\_ tightly.

4. Erik checks the time every five minutes so that he can \_\_\_\_\_ his new Rolex watch.

phrasal verbs and the adverb back

- 5. Mike wasn't at work today. He \_\_\_\_\_ sick.
- 6. When Bill flies to Los Angeles, he always \_\_\_\_\_ in Bangkok.
- 7. The car dealer said he'll give me a good deal if I \_\_\_\_\_ my old car.
- 8. We \_\_\_\_\_ the notices \_\_\_\_\_ all over town.
- 9. The memo from the personnel office \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of confusion about the new vacation policy.
- 10. This weather is terrible. I wonder if this storm is ever going to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 11. Turn the heater on, and the room will \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_.
- 12. Nancy was driving too fast, so I told her to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 13. The teacher won't \_\_\_\_\_ the tests until the students are quiet.
- 14. After you finish writing your report, \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and give it to me.
- 15. Raul's from Colombia, but he hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ there for seven years.

26. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and the adverb back

The adverb *back* is sometimes used with phrasal verbs to mean *again*. The following sentences have the same meaning:

We **got together** again.  
We **got back together**.

*Back* is always placed directly before the particle. When *back* is used with separable phrasal verbs, the object must separate the verb and particle, and *back* must be placed between the object and the particle:

I **put** the engine **back together**.  
~~I **put back together** the engine.~~

Do not confuse the adverb *back*, which modifies phrasal verbs, with the particle *back* that is part of some phrasal verbs (and has the same meaning of *again*).

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
get together	get together & gets together	getting together	got together	gotten/got together

1. **get together** (with) *p.v.* When two people **get together**, they meet and spend time together. When you **get together** with someone, you meet and spend time with



that person. When a man and woman resume a relationship after separating, they **get back together**.

*If you're not busy tomorrow night, would you like to **get together**?*  
*We're going to **get together** with Bill and Nancy tomorrow.*  
*Judy and Sam had separated, but now they've **gotten back together**.*

**get-together** *n.* An informal gathering is a **get-together**.

*I'm having a little **get-together** tonight. Would you like to come?*

**2. get ... together** *p.v.* When you **get** things **together**, you collect them so they are in the same place.

*You should **get** all your tools **together** so you will have them when you need them.*  
*Linda **got** all her tax records **together** to show to her accountant.*

**3. get ... together** *p.v. [informal]* When you **get** yourself **together**, or **get it together**, you gain control of your emotions after you have become upset or emotional.

*Bob was very upset before the party, but he **got it together** before the guests came.*  
*Hey, **get** yourself **together**! Everyone is watching you.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
go over	go over & goes over	going over	went over	gone over

**1. go over** (to) *p.v.* When people move from where you are to a place, thing, or person that is farther away from you, they **go over** or **go over** to that place, thing, or person.

*I'm busy. **Go back over** there and stop bothering me.*  
*I was hot, so Maria **went over** to the window and opened it.*

**2. go over** (to) *p.v.* When you go to someone's house for a visit, you **go over** or **go over** to that person's house.

*Have you **gone over** to Nicole's house to see her new baby yet?*  
*I **went over** to Erik's for dinner last night.*

**3. go over** *p.v.* When you carefully read or review important written material, you **go over** it.

*Here's a magazine article I just finished writing. **Go over** it and tell me what you think.*  
*The actor **went over** his lines before the audition.*

**going-over** *n.* When you examine or inspect something carefully, you give it a **going-over**.

*I gave his report a good **going-over** and found a lot of mistakes.*

**4. go over** *p.v.* When you carefully explain something, usually something that is complicated but important, you **go over** it.

phrasal verbs and the adverb back

Before the trial Hank and his lawyer **went over** what Hank was going to say.  
No one understood the manager’s plan after he explained it, so he **went back over** it.

**5. go over** p.v. When an idea, suggestion, or performance is accepted and liked by other people, it **goes over**.

Senator Dolittle’s plan to raise taxes didn’t **go over** with the voters.  
The singer’s performance **went over** well with the critics.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
go up	go up & goes up	going up	went up	gone up

**1. go up** (to) p.v. When you move to a higher level or position, or from south to north, you **go up** or **go up** to that place. **Go down** is the opposite of **go up**.

Suzie came down from her tree house to eat lunch, but she **went back up** after she finished.  
I spend the winters in Mexico, and **go up** to my home in Ohio in the summer.

**2. go up** (to) p.v. When the cost, rate, quality, quantity, or level of something increases, it **goes up**. **Go down** is the opposite of **go up**.

The price of gas hasn’t **gone up** in two years.  
In the summer the temperature in Saudi Arabia can **go up** to 125 degrees.

**3. go up** (to) p.v. When a schedule or plan ends at a certain time or date, the schedule or plan **goes up** to that time or date.

Do you have the new schedule? This one **goes up** only to the end of April.  
The teacher gave the students a syllabus that **went up** to the midterm.

**4. go up** (to) p.v. When something extends to a certain point that is farther north or at a higher elevation, it **goes up to** that point. **Go down** is the opposite of **go up**.

This trail **went up** to the base camp at the foot of the mountain.  
Interstate 5 **goes up** to Seattle.

**5. go up** (to) p.v. When you approach a person, you **go up** to that person.

There’s Sarah over there. **Go up** and introduce yourself.  
Janice isn’t shy — she **went right up** to the president of the company and asked for a raise.

let in on	let in on & lets in on	letting in on	let in on	let in on
-----------	------------------------	---------------	-----------	-----------

**1. let ...in on** p.v. When you tell people information that is secret or not widely known, you **let** that person **in on** the information.

General Chambers **let me in on** the top secret information.  
I’m going to **let you in on** something not many people know about me.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
open up	open up & opens up	opening up	opened up	opened up

**1. open ... up** p.v. When you **open** something **up**, you reveal what is inside so that people can see it.

*Sofia **opened** the box **up** and looked inside.*  
*Mike's going to **open up** his computer to try to find the problem.*

**2. open ... up** p.v. When you **open** a room or building **up**, you unlock or open the doors so that people can enter.

*The office closes at 12:00 for lunch and **opens back up** at 1:00.*  
*The manager was late and didn't **open up** the store until 10:30.*

**3. open ... up** p.v. When a new business starts, it **opens up** or is **opened up** by someone.

*I was driving through town, and I noticed that a new book store has **opened up** on Maple Street.*  
*Jimmy wants to **open** a restaurant **up** near the new office building.*

put together	put together & puts together	putting together	put together	put together
--------------	------------------------------	------------------	--------------	--------------

**1. put ... together** p.v. When you assemble the parts of something, you **put** it **together**. **Put together** is the opposite of **take apart**.

*Sally got a bicycle for her birthday, and her father **put** it **together** after dinner.*  
*It was easy taking my car's engine apart, but **putting** it back **together** was a lot harder.*

**2. put ... together** p.v. When you organize some ideas, plans, or suggestions in order to show them to someone or discuss them with someone, you **put** them **together**.

*Mr. and Mrs. Flores want to redecorate their house, so they asked an interior designer to **put** some ideas **together**.*  
*I have an interesting idea for a new business, and I'm **putting together** a proposal.*

**3. put ... together** p.v. When you position people or things so that they are close to each other or touching, you **put** them **together**.

*The teacher told Timmy and Mike to **put** their desks **together** so they could work on their project.*  
*When you plan your dinner party seating arrangement, **put** Heather and Jimmy **together**.*

shut off	shut off & shuts off	shutting off	shut off	shut off
----------	----------------------	--------------	----------	----------

**1. shut ... off** p.v. When you **shut off** an electrical or mechanical device, you cut the power going to it so that it stops operating. **Turn off** and **switch off** are similar to **shut off**.



Timmy’s mother told him to **shut off** the TV and go to bed.  
I’m freezing. Would you mind **shutting** the air conditioner **off**?

**shut off** *part.adj.* After you **shut off** an electrical or mechanical device, it is **shut off**.  
**Turned off** and **switched off** are similar to **shut off**.

Now I know why it’s so cold in here — the heat’s **shut off**.

**shutoff** *n.* When you **shut off** something, or when something **shuts off**, this action is a **shutoff**. When you **shut off** something, you use the **shutoff** switch, button, valve, and so on.

The electricity **shutoff** lasted 20 minutes.  
In case of emergency, turn this **shutoff** valve here.

start up

start up & starts up	starting up	started up	started up
----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. start ... up** *p.v.* When an electrical or mechanical device **starts up** or someone **starts** it **up**, it begins to operate.

My car’s engine died at a red light, and it wouldn’t **start up** again.  
You push this button here to **start** the computer **up**.

**start-up** *n.* When you **start up** something, or something **starts up**, this action is a **start-up**. When you **start up** something, you use the **start-up** switch, button, and so on.

To **start** the computer **up**, push this **start-up** button.  
If your computer’s hard disk crashes, you can use this CD as the **start-up** disk.

**2. start ... up** *p.v.* When you **start up** a new business or company, you take the steps necessary to begin a new business or company.

You should have a detailed business plan before **starting** a business **up**.  
Jane borrowed the money she needed to **start up** her business from her uncle.

**start-up** *n.* A **start-up** or **start-up** business or company is a new business or company.

Most **start-up** businesses aren’t successful.

EXERCISE 26a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. Your important papers are all over the house. You should \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ and keep them in a safe place.
- 2. It was so cold this morning that it took half an hour to \_\_\_\_\_ my car \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. This is awfully complicated. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ it one more time?
- 4. The police ordered the people in the house to \_\_\_\_\_ the door \_\_\_\_\_.

5. The sergeant \_\_\_\_\_ the hill to look for the enemy soldiers.
6. The account executive was asked to \_\_\_\_\_ some ideas \_\_\_\_\_ for a new advertising campaign.
7. I'm trying to sleep. Would you please \_\_\_\_\_ the lights?
8. Linda saw her favorite movie star, but she was too shy to \_\_\_\_\_ to him and ask him for his autograph.
9. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ a little secret.
10. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ back \_\_\_\_\_ to Todd's house to return his tools.
11. This calendar is useless — it \_\_\_\_\_ only to August.
12. Thank you for your application. I will \_\_\_\_\_ it carefully and call you in a few days.
13. This jigsaw puzzle has 1,000 pieces. It'll take forever to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
14. If that big discount store \_\_\_\_\_ outside of town, all these little shops will go out of business.
15. The level of water in the river always falls during the summer but \_\_\_\_\_ back \_\_\_\_\_ the next spring.
16. Sam's idea of giving all the workers a ten percent pay raise didn't \_\_\_\_\_ well with management.
17. I know you're upset, but you have to \_\_\_\_\_ yourself \_\_\_\_\_.
18. On Saturday nights Mike usually \_\_\_\_\_ with some friends and plays poker.
19. As soon as we arrived at the party, David \_\_\_\_\_ to the buffet table and grabbed a plate.
20. Without the combination, there's no way to \_\_\_\_\_ this safe \_\_\_\_\_.
21. \_\_\_\_\_ all your Spanish books \_\_\_\_\_ on the same shelf.
22. This road \_\_\_\_\_ to the next town, but that's where it ends.
23. I'll need around \$25,000 to \_\_\_\_\_ my new business.

phrasal verbs and the adverb back

EXERCISE 26b — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

1. I wish they would *open up* near me. (a branch office, one)

---

---

---

2. Lydia *put together*. (the food processor, it)

---

---

---

3. Do you know how to *shut off*? (the photocopier, it)

---

---

---

4. Push this button to *start up*. (the generator, it)

---

---

---

EXERCISE 26c — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. Frank read my report carefully. What did Frank do to my report?
- 2. In Question 1, what did Frank give my report?
- 3. Judy walked toward the king, stopped next to him, and gave him the petition. What did Judy do to the king?
- 4. Mike told me a secret. What did Mike do?
- 5. Bill and some friends are going to meet and spend some time together. What are Bill and his friends going to do?



- 6. In Question 5, what is this activity called?
- 7. My computer begins to operate from the hard disk. What does my computer do from the hard disk?
- 8. In Question 7, what would you call the hard disk?
- 9. The mayor’s plan to fight crime in the streets was very successful with the voters. What impression did the mayor’s plan have on the voters?
- 10. The heater stops operating automatically when the temperature reaches a certain point. What does the heater do?
- 11. In Question 10, what is the temperature that makes the heater stop operating called?
- 12. You quit your job so that you could begin your own company. Why did you quit your job?
- 13. In Question 12, what would you call your new company?
- 14. You assembled all the parts of your model airplane. What did you do to your model airplane?
- 15. This airplane schedule gives flight times until December 31. What does the airplane schedule do?
- 16. The supermarket unlocks its doors and lets people in at 7:00 A.M. every day. What does the supermarket do at 7:00 A.M. every day?

EXERCISE 26d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

do with, 25	have on, 25	look over, 21	settle for, 25
end up, 20	hurry up, 25	pick on, 21	show off, 24
go off, 20	knock over, 25	plan ahead, 25	take out on, 21
go on, 20	lighten up, 25	put on, 1	think up, 25

- 1. I’m asking \$10,000 for my car, but I’ll \_\_\_\_\_ \$8,500.
- 2. That new manager is really hard on the employees. He ought to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. At the supermarket, Tom hit the stack of boxes with his shopping cart and \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.

4. We had planned to go to France on our vacation, but we \_\_\_\_\_ going to Spain instead.
5. Will you \_\_\_\_\_! If we don't leave soon we're going to be late.
6. Mark hates his job, and he comes home every night and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ his family.
7. My doctor got the test results from the lab, and she \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ very carefully.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ your coat \_\_\_\_\_. It's cold outside.
9. Don't wait until the last minute to make your vacation airline reservations. You have to \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The detective didn't believe that the gun had \_\_\_\_\_ accidentally.
11. I hated my older brother when I was a kid. He always \_\_\_\_\_ me.
12. How are we going to get \$500 in two days? We need to \_\_\_\_\_ a good plan.
13. I didn't understand everything the computer shop guy said, but it had something to \_\_\_\_\_ memory.
14. Jim tries to answer every question the teacher asks. He's always \_\_\_\_\_.
15. That meeting was so boring. It seemed like it was going to \_\_\_\_\_ forever.
16. The police officer must be off duty. He doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ his uniform \_\_\_\_\_.

---

## 27. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with the particle *off* and the adverb *right*

The particle *off* is used in many phrasal verbs to say that something is separated or removed:

*The cup handle **broke**.* (The handle is broken, but it is still attached to the cup.)

*The cup handle **broke off**.* (The handle is no longer attached to the cup.)

phrasal verbs with the particle off and the adverb right

**dried off** *part.adj.* After something has **dried off**, it is **dried off**.

*They can't play baseball because the field isn't **dried off**.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
knock off	knock off & knocks off	knocking off	knocked off	knocked off

**1. knock ... off** *p.v.* When you **knock** something **off**, you either accidentally or deliberately use force to make it fall from a place above the ground to the ground below.

*Susie **knocked** a glass **off** the table and broke it.*  
*The cat **knocked** the clock **off** the shelf.*

**2. knock off** *p.v. [informal]* When you **knock off**, you finish working.

*I quit working at 5:00 last night, but Sean didn't **knock off** until 8:30.*  
*You've been working all day. Why don't you **knock off**?*

**3. knock ... off** *p.v. [informal]* When you say "**Knock it off**" to people, you want them to stop doing something that is bothering you.

*If you don't **knock it off**, you'll be sorry.*  
*I'm tired of listening to you criticize me. **Knock it off!***

**4. knock ... off** *p.v.* When you **knock** something **off**, you make something quickly and not very carefully.

*The artist **knocked off** a quick sketch and gave it to the waiter.*  
*Dan prefers writing novels, but he sometimes **knocks off** a magazine article to make a few bucks.*

**5. knock ... off** *p.v. [informal]* When you **knock** people **off**, you kill them.

*Jake was sent to prison for **knocking off** his brother-in-law.*  
*Mario was the head of a gang of criminals until he was **knocked off** by a rival.*

tear off	tear off & tears off	tearing off	tore off	torn off
----------	----------------------	-------------	----------	----------

**1. tear ... off** *p.v.* When you use force to remove a piece of something that is flexible — paper, cloth, and so on — you **tear** it **off**.

*I **tore off** a coupon for frozen pizza at the supermarket.*  
*Alex always **tears** the tags **off** his shirt collars.*

**torn off** *part.adj.* After something has been **torn off**, it is **torn off**.

*There aren't any more coupons. They're all **torn off**.*

wash off	wash off & washes off	washing off	washed off	washed off
----------	-----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. wash ... off** *p.v.* When you **wash** something **off** or **wash** the dirt **off** something, you use water and soap to remove dirt or unwanted items from a surface.



Mike **washed off** his car.  
Mike **washed** the dirt **off** his car.

**washed off** *part.adj.* After you **wash** something **off** or **wash** the dirt **off** something, it is **washed off**.

The maid said she had **washed** the grease **off** the wall, but the wall didn't look **washed off** to me.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
wear off	wear off & wears off	wearing off	wore off	worn off

**1. wear off** *p.v.* When the surface of something is gradually removed by friction or exposure to the elements so that what is beneath the surface is exposed, the surface **wears off**.

You could see the wood where the paint had **worn off**.  
The gold **wears off** this cheap jewelry right away.

**worn off** *part.adj.* After something has worn off, it is **worn off**.

These ancient temples used to be very colorful, but now all the paint is **worn off**.

**2. wear off** *p.v.* When the effects of drugs or alcohol gradually go away, they **wear off**.

The wounded soldier was in great pain after the morphine **wore off**.  
He's going to have a big headache after the vodka **wears off**.

**3. wear off** *p.v.* When an emotional feeling gradually goes away, it **wears off**.

After the shock of getting fired **wore off**, I started to get angry.  
When I met Jim I fell in love immediately, but that **wore off** quickly as I got to know him better.

wipe off	wipe off & wipes off	wiping off	wiped off	wiped off
----------	----------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

**1. wipe ... off** *p.v.* When you completely remove a liquid from a surface by moving a towel or sponge across it with a sweeping motion, you **wipe** the surface **off**. You can either **wipe off** something that is wet or **wipe off** the liquid. **Wipe up** is similar to **wipe off**; however, you **wipe up** a liquid, but you **wipe off** the surface the liquid is on.

**Wipe off** your face.  
**Wipe** the food **off** your face.

**wiped off** *part.adj.* After something has been **wiped off**, it is **wiped off**.

That table doesn't looked **wiped off** to me. **Wipe it off** again.

2. The movers *broke off*. (the cup handle, it)

---

---

---

3. Please *dry off*. (the dishes, them)

---

---

---

4. Don't *knock off*. (the ash tray, it)

---

---

---

5. Can I *tear off*? (these mattress tags, them)

---

---

---

6. The janitor *washed off*. (the blood, it)

---

---

---

7. She didn't *wipe off*. (the milk, it)

---

---

---

EXERCISE 27c — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Try to use *right* with some of the answers. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. I used water to remove the mud from my car. What did I do to my car?

phrasal verbs with the particle off and the adverb right

- 2. Timmy forcibly removed the propellers of my model airplane. What did Timmy do to my model airplane’s propellers?
- 3. In Question 2, how would you describe the model airplane’s propellers?
- 4. You put your arm in the water, and the shark removed it with its teeth immediately. What did the shark do to your arm?
- 5. You could see that the ring wasn’t solid gold because the brass under the gold was visible. What happened to the gold?
- 6. In Question 5, how would you describe the gold?
- 7. I accidentally hit the lamp with my arm, and it fell to the floor. What did I do to the lamp?
- 8. You used a paper towel to remove the glass cleaner from the mirror. What did you do to the mirror?
- 9. In Question 8, how would you describe the mirror after you removed the glass cleaner?
- 10. You have to remove the water from the table before you paint it. What do you have to do to the table before you paint it?
- 11. In Question 10, how would you describe the table after the water is removed?
- 12. You removed the gift wrapping paper from the gift. What did you do to the gift wrapping paper?
- 13. In Question 12, after using force to remove the gift wrapping paper, how would you describe the wrapping paper?

EXERCISE 27d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

clear up, 22	go up, 26	open up, 26	shut off, 26
come down, 24	heat up, 22	pay up, 22	start up, 26
eat up, 22	let in on, 26	plug up, 22	think ahead, 21
go over, 26	let up, 24	put together, 26	trade in, 24



1. If I don't come up with \$230 by Friday, they're going to \_\_\_\_\_ my electricity.
2. The guy from the collection agency demanded that Miguel \_\_\_\_\_ immediately.
3. It rained for 40 days and 40 nights before it \_\_\_\_\_.
4. If you had \_\_\_\_\_, you would have everything you need now.
5. We had a lot of questions about our school project, but the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Mark said his audition didn't \_\_\_\_\_ well, and he doesn't think he'll get the part.
7. Soldiers are trained to take their rifles apart and \_\_\_\_\_ them back \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I think \$15,000 is a little high for that car. If you \_\_\_\_\_ a little, I might be interested.
9. The police closed the illegal casino, but it \_\_\_\_\_ right back \_\_\_\_\_ a few days later.
10. No one at the party ate the carrot sticks, but they \_\_\_\_\_ the shrimp right \_\_\_\_\_.
11. I hate using the stove on really hot summer days because it \_\_\_\_\_ the whole house \_\_\_\_\_.
12. My salary hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ in more than three years.
13. The senator \_\_\_\_\_ her aides \_\_\_\_\_ her plan to run for the presidency.
14. I doubt if I'll get much if I \_\_\_\_\_ this old car \_\_\_\_\_.
15. The engine \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_ when I turned the key.
16. My daughter put one of her stuffed animals in the toilet and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

**breakup** *n.* When two people end a romantic relationship, a **breakup** occurs.

*Nancy is very upset about the **breakup**.*

**4. break ... up** *p.v.* When something breaks into smaller pieces, it **breaks up**. When you break something into smaller pieces, you **break it up**.

*The meteor **broke up** when it entered Earth's atmosphere.*

*Sally **broke** the cookie **up** before giving it to her baby.*

**breakup** *n.* When something breaks into smaller pieces, a **breakup** takes place.

*The **breakup** of AT&T created several smaller telephone companies.*

**5. break ... up** *p.v.* When something **breaks up** the day or some other period of time, it interrupts that time and makes it less boring.

*The bank guard likes to chat with the tellers once in a while to **break up** the day.*

*My day was **broken up** by a going-away party for one of my coworkers.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
call back	call back & calls back	calling back	called backed	called back

**1. call ... back** *p.v.* When you **call** someone **back**, you call a person on the telephone who has called you earlier.

*Janice left a message asking me to **call** her **back**.*

*Bob was **called back** by the salesman.*

**2. call ... back** *p.v.* When you leave a place or walk away from a person and are then asked to return, you are **called back**.

*I remembered something after she walked away, and I **called** her **back**.*

*Mike handed his letter of resignation to his boss, but he was **called back** after he left the office.*

call up	call up & calls up	calling up	called up	called up
---------	--------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

**1. call ... up** *p.v.* When you **call** people **up**, you call them on the telephone.

*Nicole **called** me **up** and asked me to come to her party.*

*Every evening I'm **called up** by charities asking for money.*

carry out	carry out & carries out	carrying out	carried out	carried out
-----------	-------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

**1. carry ... out** *p.v.* When you **carry out** a duty, task, assignment, or order, you do it.

*Sean will **carry** your duties **out** while you're on vacation.*

*The boss was furious because his orders hadn't been **carried out**.*

**2. carry ... out** (of) *p.v.* When you **carry** something **out** of a place, you hold it in your hands and take it from that place.

*It took four guys to **carry** the pool table **out**.*  
*My three-year-old son fell asleep, so I had to **carry** him **out** of the restaurant.*

**carryout** *n.* Food that you take from a restaurant and eat in another place is **carry-out** or **carryout** food. **Takeout** and **takeout** food are the same as **carryout** and **carryout** food.

*We usually take **carryout** food when we go to visit Aunt Kathy.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
give away	give away & gives away	giving away	gave away	given away

**1. give ... away** *p.v.* When you **give** something **away**, you give it to someone without asking for anything in return because you do not want it or because you want to help the person you are giving it to.

*This old furniture isn't worth very much, so I think I'll just **give** it **away**.*  
*He made nearly a billion dollars, but after he retired he **gave** most of his money **away**.*

**2. give ... away** *p.v.* When you **give** a secret **away**, you accidentally reveal that secret.

*I haven't seen that movie yet, so don't **give away** the ending.*  
*You can trust me with the secret. I won't **give** it **away**.*

**3. give ... away** *p.v.* When you **give** yourself **away**, you accidentally reveal something secret about yourself. When something **gives** you **away**, it accidentally reveals something secret about you.

*Mark tried to keep his affair a secret, but he was **given away** by his credit card bills.*  
*Todd claimed he didn't care about Sally anymore, but he **gave** himself **away** when he asked who she had gone to the party with.*

**giveaway** *n.* A **giveaway** is a statement or action that reveals secret information.

*I knew I was going to be fired from my job when everyone stopped talking to me — that was the **giveaway**.*

mess up				
	mess up & messes up	messing up	messed up	messed up

**1. mess ... up** *p.v. [informal]* When you **mess up** a place, you make it dirty or disorganized.

*Jim made spaghetti sauce, and he really **messed up** the kitchen.*  
*You kids can play in the living room, but don't **mess** it **up**.*

**messed up** *part.adj.* After you **mess up** a place, it is **messed up**.

*It looks like Timmy was the last one in the bathroom — it's really **messed up**.*

**2. mess ... up** *p.v. [informal]* When you **mess up** a situation, you create problems. When you **mess up** a plan or arrangement, you interfere with it and prevent it from happening as planned. **Mess up** is similar to **screw up**.



Everything was perfect until you **messed it up**.  
Our honeymoon was **messed up** by the airline strike.

**messed up** *part.adj.* When you interfere with a plan or arrangement and prevent it from happening as planned, it is **messed up**. **Messed up** is similar to **screwed up**.

Bob changed my plan, and now it's totally **messed up**.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
stand up	stand up & stands up	standing up	stood up	stood up

**1. stand up** *p.v.* When you **stand up**, you change from a sitting position to a standing position. **Get up** is similar to **stand up**.

Everyone **stands up** when the judge enters the courtroom.  
When the students are sleepy, the teacher makes them **stand up**.

**2. stand ... up** *p.v. [informal]* When you **stand** people **up**, you do not arrive at their house as you have promised or at a social event or meeting where you are expected.

Heather had a date with Jim last Saturday night, but she was **stood up**.  
The senator was scheduled to speak at our meeting, but he **stood us up**.

EXERCISE 28a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. If you \_\_\_\_\_ a long airplane flight into two or three shorter flights, it isn't as boring.
2. My workroom was clean and neat, but my brother did some work and he \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
3. It's going to be a surprise party, so don't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The neighborhood council asked the police to \_\_\_\_\_ their patrols in high crime neighborhoods.
5. I haven't talked to Sam in a long time. I think I'll \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.
6. The general expects his orders to be \_\_\_\_\_ immediately.
7. In some countries, students always \_\_\_\_\_ when they speak in class.
8. The huge iceberg \_\_\_\_\_ when it drifted into warmer water.
9. Breaking my leg sure \_\_\_\_\_ my ski trip \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Janice didn't come to my house last night as she promised. She \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.

passive phrasal verbs, part 2

- 11. Timmy and his friend were fighting, and Timmy’s mother \_\_\_\_\_ the fight \_\_\_\_\_.
- 12. These boxes are really heavy. Can you help me \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ of the house?
- 13. After the protest rally ended, the crowd quickly \_\_\_\_\_ and went home.
- 14. I’m too busy to talk on the phone now. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ later?
- 15. Bob claimed to have an excellent education, but he was \_\_\_\_\_ by his poor grammar.
- 16. Mark is very upset. His girlfriend just \_\_\_\_\_ with him.
- 17. Jim told the Girl Scouts that he didn’t want to buy any cookies, but as they walked away he changed his mind and \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
- 18. Instead of charging for the software program, the company decided to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ for free.

EXERCISE 28b — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

1. The White House *beefed up*. (security, it)

2. The police are *breaking up*. (the protest, it)

3. A trained technician ought to *carry out*. (the experiment, it)

4. The foundation *gave away*. (the money, it)

---

---

---

5. Susie always *messes up*. (the bathroom, it)

---

---

---

6. Todd *stood up*. (Heather, her)

---

---

---

EXERCISE 28c — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Make all the phrasal verbs passive.**

- 1. Dr. Wood will do the test of the new drug. What will happen to the test?
- 2. The statue was smashed by thieves. What happened to the gold statue?
- 3. The children made the house dirty and disorganized. What happened to the house?
- 4. In Question 3, how would you describe the house?
- 5. Mike’s friend promised to come to his house, but he didn’t. What happened to Mike?
- 6. Karen called Sarah, but Sarah was at school. Sarah didn’t call Karen later. What didn’t happen to Karen?
- 7. A supermarket chain gave the food to charity and didn’t receive any money for it. What happened to the food?
- 8. The palace is making security stronger. What is happening to security at the palace?
- 9. In Question 8, how would you describe the security now?



passive phrasal verbs, part 2

10. The personnel manager will call all the candidates for the job. What will happen to all the candidates for the job?

EXERCISE 28d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

back up, 11	fix up, 15	rip up, 17	tear down, 8
blow away, 15	hand out, 10	stick up, 14	track down, 13
cut off, 11	hold up, 7	take in, 7	use up, 14
drop off, 11	lay off, 10	take out, 11	wake up, 11

- 1. The hard disk is \_\_\_\_\_ by the computer operator every day.
- 2. The old buildings are being \_\_\_\_\_ to make room for a new office building.
- 3. There isn't any paper in the copier. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. Last night I was \_\_\_\_\_ by a loud noise.
- 5. I can't believe I was naive enough to be \_\_\_\_\_ by him.
- 6. The library book I wanted had already been \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7. Something amazing happened yesterday. You are going to be \_\_\_\_\_ when I tell you about it.
- 8. After the old house had been \_\_\_\_\_, it looked a lot better.
- 9. Many employees are really worried that they're going to be \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10. I was talking to my brother on the phone when I was suddenly \_\_\_\_\_.
- 11. My shirt was \_\_\_\_\_ when I fell off my bicycle.
- 12. The entire building is \_\_\_\_\_ by these four steel beams.
- 13. The pamphlets will be \_\_\_\_\_ in train stations and airports.
- 14. The supermarket was \_\_\_\_\_ again last night.
- 15. The film was \_\_\_\_\_ at the photo lab.
- 16. The escaped prisoner was easily \_\_\_\_\_ by the FBI agents.

phrasal verbs and might, may, and can

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
come apart	come apart & comes apart	coming apart	came apart	come apart

**1. come apart** *p.v.* When something **comes apart**, the parts separate because it is old or in bad condition or because the parts were not strongly connected to each other.

*This toy airplane is such a piece of junk that it **came apart** in my hand.*  
*Be careful with this old book. It's **coming apart**.*

drop in	drop in & drops in	dropping in	dropped in	dropped in
---------	--------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. drop in** (on) *p.v.* When you **drop in** on people, you visit them unexpectedly.

*If you're ever in my neighborhood, **drop in**.*  
*Sally **dropped in** on Marsha last night.*

flip out	flip out & flips out	flipping out	flipped out	flipped out
----------	----------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

**1. flip out** *p.v. [informal]* When you **flip out**, you become very upset or very angry.

*Bob **flipped out** when the city doubled his property taxes.*  
*Keep your hands off Jim's computer — he'll **flip out** if you screw it up.*

look out	look out & looks out	looking out	looked out	looked out
----------	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. look out** (for) *p.v.* When you **look out** or **look out** for something, you remain alert for someone or something that is dangerous or important. When you tell people to **look out**, you are warning them of possible danger. **Look out** is the same as **watch out**.

***Look out** for bears when you camp in the mountains.*  
*There's a lot of ice on the road, so **look out**.*

**lookout** *n.* A **lookout** is someone who **looks out** for someone or something that is dangerous or important.

*The drug dealers had **lookouts** on every corner to warn them if the police came.*

luck out	luck out & lucks out	lucking out	lucked out	lucked out
----------	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. luck out** *p.v. [informal]* When you **luck out**, something good happens to you or you avoid something bad happening to you.

*Todd **lucked out** when he found that lottery ticket on the ground. It was a \$1 million winner.*  
*I missed my flight, and the plane crashed. I guess I **lucked out**.*

6. Andrew Carnegie was a very rich man, but he \_\_\_\_\_ most of his money  
\_\_\_\_\_ before he died.
7. I gave Erik my telephone number, and he said he might \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_  
tonight.
8. Erik called while I was in the shower, so now I need to \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
9. After the Soviet Union \_\_\_\_\_ in 1991, several new nations came into  
existence.
10. The coach is worried that the rain-soaked football field might not \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ in time for the game.
11. The company is planning to \_\_\_\_\_ a major reorganization.
12. Don't put the candle there; the cat might \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and start a fire.
13. The students didn't understand the lesson, so the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ it again.
14. It's really cold out there — you might want to \_\_\_\_\_ your coat \_\_\_\_\_.
15. The Wilsons aren't sure where they will spend their vacation. They may \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ to Alaska to visit their son.
16. Ned's a dreamer. He's always trying to \_\_\_\_\_ a way to make money  
without working.



### 30. FOCUS ON: participle adjectives formed from phrasal verbs, part 2

As we saw in Section 14, the past participles of many phrasal verbs can be used as participle adjectives. The adverb *all* is sometimes used to emphasize participle adjectives with the meaning of *very* or *completely*. But the sentence must be logical — *all* is used only to emphasize a participle adjective that describes a condition that can be partial, less than complete, and so on. Look at this example with *very* and two ordinary adjectives:

- makes sense: *He's very sick.*
- does not make sense: *He's very dead.*

The first sentence above makes sense because it is possible to be very sick, but the second does not make sense because it is not possible to be very dead.



participle adjectives formed from phrasal verbs, part 2

makes sense: *The man is all spaced-out.*  
does not make sense: *The man is all locked in.*

The first sentence makes sense because it is possible to be slightly **spaced-out**, but it is not possible to be slightly **locked in** (a door is either locked or it isn't).  
When *all* is used with the meaning of *very* or *completely* in a sentence with a plural subject, it is identical in appearance to *all's* more common meaning of *all the people, all the things*, and so on.

*The men are all spaced-out.*

This sentence is ambiguous: it could be understood to mean that every man is **spaced-out** or that the men are *completely* **spaced-out**.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
lock in	lock in & locks in	locking in	locked in	locked in

**1. lock ...in** *p.v.* When you **lock** people **in**, you lock a door or gate so that they cannot leave a room, building, or other place.  
*Seven people died because they were **locked in** the burning building.*  
*It's dangerous to **lock** children **in** a car.*

**locked in** *part.adj.* When people cannot leave a room, building, or other place because the door or gate is locked, they are **locked in**.  
*We're **locked in** — we'll have to break a window.*

**2. lock ...in** *p.v.* When you **lock in** an interest rate, price, time slot, and so on, you make it definite so that it will not change in the future.  
*I met with the loan officer at the bank and **locked in** a mortgage rate.*  
*If you want to use the condo at the beach this weekend, you need to pay a deposit to **lock it in**.*

**locked in** *part.adj.* After you make an interest rate, price, time slot, and so on, definite so that it will not change in the future, it is **locked in**.  
*The farmer isn't worried about what happens to the price of soybeans because the price of his crop is **locked in**.*

lock out	lock out & locks out	locking out	locked out	locked out
----------	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. lock ...out** (of) *p.v.* When you **lock** people **out** or **lock** people **out** of a place, you lock a door or gate so that they cannot enter a room, building, or other place.  
*The Youngs got home and found that their son had **locked** them **out** of their house.*  
*I hide an extra key under the bumper of my car so that I won't get **locked out**.*

**locked out** *part.adj.* When people cannot enter a room, building, or other place because the door or gate is locked, they are **locked out**.

*We're **locked out**. We'll just have to wait outside until someone comes home.*

**2. lock ... out** *p.v.* When a business **locks out** workers, the workers are prohibited from working by the business management.

*Management **locked** the workers **out** after they refused to sign the new contract.  
When the owners heard talk of a strike, they **locked** the employees **out**.*

**locked out** *part.adj.* After a business **locks out** workers in order to prohibit them from working, the workers are **locked out**.

*We're **locked out**. How can we earn a living?*

**lockout** *n.* When a business **locks out** workers in order to prohibit them from working, it is a **lockout**.

*The **lockout** lasted for three months.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
punch in	punch in & punches in	punching in	punched in	punched in

**1. punch ... in** *p.v.* When you come to your workplace and put your time card in the time clock to record the time you have arrived, you **punch in**.

*Don't forget to **punch in** as soon as you get to work.  
Mark was late, so I **punched** him **in**.*

**punched in** *part.adj.* When you are **punched in**, you are at your workplace, on duty, and being paid.

*If you're **punched in**, you shouldn't be sitting down smoking a cigarette.*

punch out	punch out & punches out	punching out	punched out	punched out
-----------	-------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

**1. punch ... out** *p.v.* When you leave your workplace and put your time card in the time clock to record the time you have left, you **punch out**.

*Sally's not at work. She **punched out** at 5:08.  
Jim usually forgets, so his boss **punches** him **out**.*

**punched out** *part.adj.* When you are **punched out**, you are not at your workplace, or if you are there, you are off duty and not being paid.

*The manager asked why I wasn't working, and I told him I was **punched out**.*

put out	put out & puts out	putting out	put out	put out
---------	--------------------	-------------	---------	---------

**1. put ... out** *p.v.* When you extinguish a fire or something that is burning, you **put it out**.

participle adjectives formed from phrasal verbs, part 2

EXERCISE 30a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. I had to break a window when I \_\_\_\_\_ myself \_\_\_\_\_ of my car.
- 2. Judy was all \_\_\_\_\_ by her brother’s criticism of the way she’s raising her children.
- 3. The guard \_\_\_\_\_ the prisoner \_\_\_\_\_ her jail cell.
- 4. The Bakers organized a nice party for their daughter’s birthday. They really \_\_\_\_\_ themselves \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. My brown socks are mixed with my black socks. I have to \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. Joe was late to work, so the manager \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7. The forest fire was \_\_\_\_\_ by the rain.
- 8. The restaurant manager told the cook to \_\_\_\_\_ before handling food.
- 9. The factory workers finished their shifts and \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10. Thanks for helping me move my piano. I’m sorry to \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_.
- 11. We got a fixed-rate mortgage so we could \_\_\_\_\_ a low rate.
- 12. The workers were \_\_\_\_\_ by management during a labor dispute.
- 13. I totally \_\_\_\_\_ and forgot about the cake in the oven.
- 14. Sally and her brothers had a big argument, but they got everything \_\_\_\_\_.
- 15. As I was falling, I \_\_\_\_\_ my arm \_\_\_\_\_ to protect my head.
- 16. Wreckage from the crashed airplane \_\_\_\_\_ on the coast.
- 17. Jim \_\_\_\_\_ bowls of peanuts \_\_\_\_\_ for his guests.
- 18. The band hasn’t \_\_\_\_\_ a CD in three years.

EXERCISE 30b — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

- 1. He *locked in*. (the crazy guy, him)
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_



6. Joe went to the store, but when he got there, he couldn't remember what he wanted.  
He was \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Nancy invited her father-in-law for dinner, and after dinner he told Nancy that she was a bad cook. Nancy was really \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The manager asked, "If you're \_\_\_\_\_, why aren't you working?"

**EXERCISE 30d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. There was a fire in the wastebasket, so I got some water to extinguish it. What did I do?
2. I don't want the children in here while I'm working, so I'm going to push the button on the doorknob to lock the door. What am I going to do to the children?
3. In Question 2, how would you describe the children after I lock the door?
4. David forgot what he was going to say. What did David do?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe David when he forgot what he was going to say?
6. Sally told me to use soap and water to get my hands clean before I handle food. What did Sally tell me to do?
7. The newspaper is published only once a week. What is done to the newspaper only once a week?
8. Lydia put Jim's time card in the time clock when Jim was late for work. What did Lydia do for Jim?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe Jim after Lydia put his time card in the time clock?
10. Your books are all mixed together and you ought to separate them into different groups. What should you do to your books?
11. In Question 10, how would you describe your books after you separate them into different groups?
12. I made the thief stay until the police came by putting him in the closet and using a key to prevent him from leaving the closet. What did I do to the thief?

- 13. In Question 12, how would you describe the thief after I used the key to prevent him from leaving the closet?
- 14. It really annoyed Erik when Jane told him that he needed to lose weight. How was Erik affected by Jane’s remark?
- 15. In Question 14, how would you describe Erik after Jane told him he needed to lose weight?
- 16. The employees can’t put their time cards in the time clock and go home before 4:30. What can’t the employees do?
- 17. In Question 16, after the employees put their time cards in the time clock, how would you describe them?
- 18. Mary didn’t try very hard to make her brother and his family comfortable when they stayed with her. What didn’t Mary do?

EXERCISE 30e, Review — **Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

beefed up, 28	lit up, 13	shut off, 26	worn off, 27
broken off, 27	made out, 29	torn off, 27	
closed off, 13	made-up, 23	washed off, 27	
dried off, 27	messed up, 28	wiped off, 27	

- 1. The children baked cookies this morning, and they left the kitchen all \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. The \_\_\_\_\_ security force can handle any terrorist attack.
- 3. Charles didn’t pay his bill, and now his electricity is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. I can’t read the sign because the paint is all \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. There aren’t any tags on this mattress. They’re all \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. Those apples aren’t \_\_\_\_\_, so don’t eat them.
- 7. You can’t drive down that street. It’s \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. This check isn’t blank. It’s \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9. The Christmas tree isn’t \_\_\_\_\_ now, but when it is it’ll be beautiful.
- 10. I put the coffee cup with the \_\_\_\_\_ handle downstairs. I’m going to fix it later.

- participle adjectives formed from phrasal verbs, part 2
11. The kitchen counter isn't \_\_\_\_\_, so don't put those papers on it — they might get grease on them.

12. That was quite a rain we just had. I don't think I'll drive to work until the roads have \_\_\_\_\_.

13. I didn't believe a word he said. It was just a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ nonsense.

EXERCISE 30f, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

ask for, 29	fill out, 14	make out, 29	wipe off, 27
butt in, 14	have on, 25	open up, 26	work out, 11
carry out, 28	head into, 17	stand up, 28	
drop in, 29	hurry up, 25	trade in, 24	
drop out, 23	knock over, 25	wash off, 27	

1. \_\_\_\_\_ of school was the dumbest thing I ever did.

2. The loan application was rejected because it hadn't been \_\_\_\_\_ properly.

3. I'm going to ask the car dealer how much I can \_\_\_\_\_ my car \_\_\_\_\_ for.

4. My feet are killing me. I've been \_\_\_\_\_ all day.

5. Did you see what Sally was wearing yesterday? She \_\_\_\_\_ a green dress and purple shoes \_\_\_\_\_.

6. Mike \_\_\_\_\_ the bartender \_\_\_\_\_ a gin martini, but she made a vodka martini instead.

7. We'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ if we're going to get to the theater before the movie starts.

8. Don't leave that glass there — the baby might \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

9. Dad's hardware store went out of business after a huge discount store \_\_\_\_\_ across the street.



Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
do without	do without & does without	doing without	did without	done without

- 1. do without** p.v. When you **do without** something, you continue living or working without something that you want or need because it is not possible or available.
- Washing your hair everyday is something you have to **do without** when you go camping.*
- Doing without** is something you get used to when you're poor.*

look into	look into & looks into	looking into	looked into	looked into
-----------	------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

- 1. look into** p.v. When you **look into** something or **look into** doing something, you investigate it or get more information about it.
- After receiving many complaints about the company, the attorney general decided to **look into** the matter.*
- Maybe leasing a car instead of buying one is something I should **look into**.*

plan on	plan on & plans on	planning on	planned on	planned on
---------	--------------------	-------------	------------	------------

- 1. plan on** p.v. When you **plan on** something, you expect it.
- They wanted a large family, but having 13 children certainly wasn't what they **planned on**.*
- You should **plan on** at least two years to finish the master's degree program.*
- 2. plan on** p.v. When you **plan on** doing something, you intend to do it.
- What are you **planning on** doing tonight?*
- I **plan on** fishing and taking a lot of pictures on my vacation.*

put off	put off & puts off	putting off	put off	put off
---------	--------------------	-------------	---------	---------

- 1. put ...off** p.v. When you **put off** something or **put off** doing something, you delay or postpone it. When you **put** people **off**, you delay doing something they want you to do.
- Buying a new house will have to be **put off** until we can afford it.*
- The students begged the teacher to **put** the test **off** until the next week.*
- He pressured me for a decision, but I kept **putting** him **off**.*
- 2. put ...off** p.v. When people **put** you **off**, they do or say something that offends you.
- Everyone was **put off** by his racist jokes.*
- Todd went out to dinner with Nancy last night, and the way she treated the waiter really **put** him **off**.*

**put off** *part.adj.* After people do or say something that offends you, you are **put off**.

*What’s wrong? You seem a little **put off**.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
rule out	rule out & rules out	ruling out	ruled out	ruled out

**1. rule ... out** *p.v.* When you **rule out** people or things, you eliminate them from a list. When you **rule out** doing something, you decide that it is something you will not do because you do not want to, because it is impossible, and so on.

*The detective interviewed all the suspects and **ruled** everyone **out** except the victim’s ex-wife.*

*Ater the hurricane they **ruled out** moving to Florida.*

*With all these medical bills to pay, maybe we should consider **ruling out** buying a new car.*

EXERCISE 31a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. I suggested moving to Minnesota, but my wife \_\_\_\_\_ moving anywhere cold.
2. My doctor says I should \_\_\_\_\_ scuba diving until my ear gets better.
3. The health department wants to \_\_\_\_\_ smoking within 20 years.
4. I saw a funny cartoon in the paper, so I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and sent it to my brother.
5. Some countries have an excellent health care system. No one has to \_\_\_\_\_ medical treatment.
6. I was a little \_\_\_\_\_ by his unfriendliness.
7. Let’s go to a different restaurant; I don’t \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese food.
8. I’m going to \_\_\_\_\_ this situation to see what the problem is.
9. After the revolution, all members of the royal family were \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Several scenes of the film had to be \_\_\_\_\_ before the censors would approve it.
11. Jim had to quit his job to \_\_\_\_\_ his sick wife.

12. I had to take a taxi to work yesterday. My car's motor \_\_\_\_\_ right in the middle of an intersection.
13. What a surprise! Being transferred to Hawaii is something I never \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Getting your car's brakes fixed is not something you should \_\_\_\_\_.
15. What are you \_\_\_\_\_ doing with your time after you retire?

**EXERCISE 31b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. You changed your vacation plans. You're not going next week; you're going to go later. What did you do to your vacation?
2. Everyone likes Jim more now that he has stopped acting like such a big shot. What did Jim do?
3. The President said that nothing has been eliminated from the list of things that might be done about the crisis. What did the President say about what might be done about the crisis?
4. Mike's parents don't like his new friend. How do Mike's parents feel about his new friend?
5. A law was passed that prohibits child labor. What did the law do to child labor?
6. There aren't any stores out here in the woods, so if you forgot something, you'll just have to continue without it. What will you have to do if you forgot something?
7. I'm so tired of this car's ugly color. I'm going to get information about having it painted. What am I going to do?
8. If you go to Chicago in January, you can expect to freeze to death. What can you do if you go to Chicago in January?
9. Betty was a little offended by Sam's behavior. How did Betty react to Sam's behavior?
10. In Question 9, how did Sam's behavior make Betty feel?
11. The police suspected that Mr. Gara had been killed by a coworker. What did the police suspect about Mr. Gara?
12. Dr. Smith removed the entire tumor with a knife. What did he do?
13. My father kept his car in good condition, and it lasted for 40 years. What did my father do to his car?



phrasal verbs and gerund subjects

EXERCISE 31c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to use gerunds as the subjects of some of the sentences.

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 31d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

ask for, 29	cut down, 23	get away, 23	luck out, 29
beef up, 28	drop in, 29	get back at, 17	make out, 29
come apart, 29	flip out, 29	get off, 18	make up, 23
crack down, 23	go about, 17	look out, 29	run across, 29

- 1. I'm thinking about investing in the stock market, but I'm not sure how to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 2. The sound on the language lab tapes is so bad that I can't \_\_\_\_\_ what they're saying.
- 3. The world is \_\_\_\_\_ of many different countries.
- 4. We'll need to buy a new suitcase soon. This old one is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. That was a terrible thing he did to me — I'll \_\_\_\_\_ him someday.
- 6. Hank fell from a fifth-floor window, but he landed in a swimming pool and wasn't hurt at all. He sure \_\_\_\_\_, didn't he?
- 7. The hockey coach said that the team's offense is good, but the defense needs to be \_\_\_\_\_.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
empty out	empty out & empties out	emptying out	emptied out	emptied out

**1. empty ... out** *p.v.* When you completely remove the contents of a space or container, you **empty** it **out**.

*The police officer told me to **empty out** my pockets.*  
*After we **empty** this room **out**, we can start painting.*

**emptied out** *part.adj.* After the contents of a container have been completely removed, the container is **emptied out**.

*Now that the room is **emptied out**, we can start laying the carpet.*

**2. empty out** *p.v.* When all the people in a place leave it, the place **empties out**.

*After the concert is over, it'll be 20 minutes before the auditorium **empties out**.*  
*There was trash everywhere after the stadium **emptied out**.*

fall out	fall out & falls out	falling out	fell out	fallen out
----------	----------------------	-------------	----------	------------

**1. fall out** (of) *p.v.* When you fall from or through something that is above ground level to the ground below, you **fall out** or **fall out** of it.

*Did he **fall out** or was he pushed?*  
*I found a baby bird that had **fallen out** of its nest.*

**2. fall out** (with/over) *p.v.* When you **fall out** with people, you become upset or angry with them. When two people **fall out** over something, they become upset or angry with each other because of a disagreement about that thing.

*Michael **fell out** with his sister when he criticized her husband.*  
*Melanie and Sarah started a company, but they **fell out** over who would be president and who would be vice-president.*

**falling-out** *n.* When people have a **falling-out**, they become upset or angry with each other and no longer have friendly relations.

*The manager of the baseball team quit after he had a **falling-out** with the team's owner.*

go out	go out & goes out	going out	went out	gone out
--------	-------------------	-----------	----------	----------

**1. go out** (of) *p.v.* When people or things leave a place, room, or house that you are in, they **go out** or **go out** of it. **Come in** is the opposite of **go out**.

*I'm trying to study — **go out** and play in the backyard.*  
*Nancy was so sick that she didn't **go out** of the house for a week.*

**2. go out** (to) *p.v.* When people leave a city where you are and travel to a place outside the city, they **go out** to that place.

17. The reporter said that he expected the governor to \_\_\_\_\_ against the proposed legislation.
18. Jim's going to be storing some of his stuff in the attic, so let's go up and \_\_\_\_\_ some space for it.
19. Scott \_\_\_\_\_ of the trial with his reputation badly damaged.
20. After the bomb threat was announced, the theater \_\_\_\_\_ in about two minutes.
21. Betty has been \_\_\_\_\_ with Erik since high school.
22. It's not very smart to \_\_\_\_\_ your arm \_\_\_\_\_ the window of a moving car.
23. I like it here in the city. When I \_\_\_\_\_ to David's house in the country I get bored.
24. The talk show host asked the author about his new book which is \_\_\_\_\_ soon.
25. The burglars \_\_\_\_\_ the coin shop \_\_\_\_\_ of its most valuable coins.
26. It's been an hour. Are you ever going to \_\_\_\_\_ of the bathroom?
27. Don't even bother washing this blouse — the ink will never \_\_\_\_\_.
28. Mike wants to sell his car, so he's going to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and wash it before anyone looks at it.
29. I don't remember much about Ned, but one thing \_\_\_\_\_ — he always wore black.

**EXERCISE 32b — Complete the sentences with the correct second particles.**

1. The crooked lawyer *cleaned them out* \_\_\_\_\_ a small fortune.
2. Jake *came out* \_\_\_\_\_ the bank and surrendered.
3. Would you like to *come out* \_\_\_\_\_ my place in the country?
4. Several publishers are *coming out* \_\_\_\_\_ books on the subject.
5. The prime minister liked the idea, so we weren't surprised when he *came out* \_\_\_\_\_ the plan.



- 6. As expected, the leader of the opposition *came out* \_\_\_\_\_ the plan.
- 7. Mike *fell out* \_\_\_\_\_ his brother \_\_\_\_\_ who would pay their father's medical bills.
- 8. Timmy's father told him not to *go out* \_\_\_\_\_ the house.
- 9. We're *going out* \_\_\_\_\_ the suburbs next weekend.
- 10. Heather's *going out* \_\_\_\_\_ Tom tonight.
- 11. Hank *fell out* \_\_\_\_\_ a hot air balloon.

EXERCISE 32c — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

- 1. My son *cleaned out*. (the basement, it)

- 2. I need to *clear out*. (the storeroom, it)

- 3. Sarah *emptied out*. (the boxes, them)

- 4. The factory *left out*. (an important part, it)

EXERCISE 32e, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

care for, 31	hold out, 23	punch out, 30	sort out, 30
cut out, 31	lock in, 30	put off, 31	space out, 30
do away with, 31	look into, 31	put out, 30	wash up, 30
do without, 31	punch in, 30	rule out, 31	watch out, 23

1. Susie, I told you to stop teasing your sister, so \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_!
2. After I lost my job, I learned to \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of things I used to think were necessities.
3. Watson made a real mess out of the project, so the boss asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I totally \_\_\_\_\_ and drove 20 miles past where I was going.
5. Hey, that's really dangerous, you'd better \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I'm going to get to work late tomorrow. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_?
7. I'm really sick of this city. I'm going to fly to San Francisco and \_\_\_\_\_ the job situation there.
8. Most of the players have signed their contracts, but a few are \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Water won't \_\_\_\_\_ an electrical fire.
10. The manager reminded me to \_\_\_\_\_ before going home.
11. Scientists are trying to \_\_\_\_\_ cancer.
12. The chances that his horse will win the race are very small, but I wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ completely.
13. Look how dirty your hands are! Go \_\_\_\_\_ before you eat dinner.
14. I want to \_\_\_\_\_ a low interest rate before rates go up again.
15. Thanks for inviting me to the concert, but I don't \_\_\_\_\_ rap music.
16. Millions of people \_\_\_\_\_ doing their taxes until the last minute.

### 33. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and midsentence adverbs

As we saw in Section 17, adverbs are words that modify verbs. Some adverbs are called *midsentence* adverbs because they are commonly placed in the middle of a sentence. Midsentence adverbs are usually placed before main verbs:

*He X **goofs around**.*  
*She X **helped** him **out**.*

after any form of *be*:

*He is X **goofing around**.*  
*She was X **helping** him **out**.*

and between an auxiliary (helping) verb and the main verb:

*He will X **goof around**.*  
*She can X **help** him **out**.*

In questions, a midsentence adverb is usually placed between the subject and the main verb:

*Does he X **goof around**?*  
*Is he X **goofing around**?*  
*Has she X **helped** him **out**?*

The following are common midsentence adverbs.

#### Adverbs of frequency

<i>ever</i>	<i>typically</i>	<i>normally</i>	<i>hardly ever</i>
<i>always</i>	<i>ordinarily</i>	<i>occasionally</i>	<i>almost never</i>
<i>constantly</i>	<i>often</i>	<i>sometimes</i>	<i>never</i>
<i>almost always</i>	<i>frequently</i>	<i>seldom</i>	<i>not ever</i>
<i>usually</i>	<i>generally</i>	<i>rarely</i>	

#### Other midsentence adverbs

<i>already</i>	<i>merely</i>	<i>ultimately</i>	<i>probably</i>
<i>just</i>	<i>finally</i>	<i>eventually</i>	<i>most likely</i>



Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
blow up	blow up & blows up	blowing up	blew up	blown up

**1. blow ... up** *p.v.* When something **blows up** or when someone **blows** something **up**, it explodes.

*Seven people were killed when the building **blew up**.*  
*The hijackers ultimately **blew** the plane **up**.*

**2. blow ... up** *p.v.* When something **blows up** or when someone **blows** something **up**, it becomes much larger because air or something else is being forced into it.

*It always takes me an hour or more to **blow up** the balloons for a party.*  
*Hank **blew up** a beach ball and threw it in the pool.*

**3. blow ... up** *p.v.* When you make a picture or photograph larger, you **blow it up**.

*I **blew** the photograph **up** and framed it.*  
*When you **blow** this photo of the car **up**, you can make out the license plate number.*

**blowup** *n.* A **blowup** is a picture or photograph that has been made larger.

*I made a **blowup** of the photo and framed it.*

**4. blow up (at/over)** *p.v. [informal]* When you **blow up** or **blow up** at someone, you suddenly become very angry. When you **blow up** over something, you suddenly become very angry because of it.

*Heather **blew up** when she saw her boyfriend dancing with Linda.*  
*Heather **blew up** at her boyfriend when she saw him dancing with Linda.*  
*Dad **blew up** over the increase in our property taxes.*

catch on	catch on & catches on	catching on	caught on	caught on
----------	-----------------------	-------------	-----------	-----------

**1. catch on** *p.v.* When a fashion or habit becomes popular and is adopted by many people, it **catches on**. When a product or service becomes popular and is used or bought by many people, it **catches on**.

*Cell phones really **caught on** and now everyone has one.*  
*If his striped business suits **catch on**, the designer will become famous.*

**2. catch on** *p.v.* When you eventually begin to understand something or begin to learn a skill after practicing and studying, you **catch on**.

*When Sally studies something, she usually **catches on** right away.*  
*Learning to dance the cumbia wasn't easy, but I eventually **caught on**.*

**3. catch on (to)** *p.v.* When you **catch on** or **catch on** to people, you realize that they are trying to trick or cheat you.

*If you keep lying to everyone, they'll eventually **catch on**.  
It took me a while, but I finally **caught on** to him.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
come about	come about & coming about	come about	came about	come about

**1. come about** p.v. When something **comes about**, it happens, usually as a result of a series of events and actions.

*He was the richest man in town, and now he's bankrupt. How did that **come about**?  
Several major medical advances have **come about** in the last 50 years.*

fall behind	fall behind & falls behind	falling behind	fell behind	fallen behind
-------------	----------------------------	----------------	-------------	---------------

**1. fall behind** p.v. When you are in a group that is walking, running, driving, and so on, and they move ahead of you because you are moving more slowly than the others, you **fall behind**. **Keep up** is the opposite of **fall behind**.

*Keith and Tom are walking so fast that I've **fallen behind**.  
I was supposed to be following Linda to the party, but I **fell behind** and got lost.*

**2. fall behind (in)** p.v. When you are in a group that is studying, working, and so on, and they learn faster or get more work done because you are learning or working more slowly than the others, you **fall behind** or **fall behind** in your work, studies, and so on. When you do not complete work as fast as it was originally planned and expected, you **fall behind** schedule. **Get behind** is similar to **fall behind**. **Keep up** is the opposite of **fall behind**.

*Timmy was sick last semester, and he **fell behind** in his studies.  
The sales manager wanted to know why I had **fallen behind** the rest of the department.  
The building project will **fall behind** schedule if the construction workers go on strike.*

**3. fall behind (in)** p.v. When you do not make the regular payments you are required to make, you **fall behind** or **fall behind** in your payments.

*When I lost my job, I **fell behind** in my mortgage payments.  
Don't **fall behind** in your payments, or your car will be repossessed.*

goof around	goof around & goofs around	goofing around	goofed around	goofed around
-------------	----------------------------	----------------	---------------	---------------

**1. goof around** p.v. [informal] When you waste time playing or doing silly or unimportant things, you **goof around**. **Fool around** is the same as **goof around**.

*My brother drives his teachers crazy. He constantly **goofs around** and creates problems.  
Stop **goofing around** and get to work.*



Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
help out	help out & helps out	helping out	helped out	helped out

1. **help ... out** (with) *p.v.* When you **help out** or **help** people **out**, you assist them in doing some work or you lend or give them money or something else that they need.
- Can you **help me out**? I need a hundred bucks until payday.*
- We had a lot of work to do, so Maria **helped out**.*

know about	know about & knows about	knowing about	knew about	known about
------------	--------------------------	---------------	------------	-------------

1. **know about** *p.v.* When you **know about** a situation, plan, or other information, you are aware of it.
- Jim isn't here. Maybe he doesn't **know about** the schedule change.*
- Thanks for telling me, but I already **know** all **about** it.*
2. **know about** *p.v.* When you have studied something and learned it, you **know about** it.
- I don't **know** much **about** history. I was a business major.*
- Knowing about** art and being an artist are two different things.*

pull off	pull off & pulls off	pulling off	pulled off	pulled off
----------	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

1. **pull ... off** *p.v.* When you **pull** something **off**, you succeed in doing something difficult and possibly sneaky or illegal even though the chances of success are not high.
- Mike tried to juggle three butcher knives and two bowling balls at the same time, but he couldn't **pull it off**.*
- When Jake said he was going to try to rob a Las Vegas casino, no one believed he could **pull it off**.*
2. **pull off** *p.v.* When you are driving and you **pull off** the road, you drive to the side of the road and stop.
- If I get sleepy while I'm driving, I always **pull off** the road and take a nap.*
- When I heard that strange noise, I **pulled off** to the side and checked the engine.*

EXERCISE 33a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. I need to move some furniture, and it's too heavy for me. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ tonight?



2. Television was invented in the 1920s, but it didn't start to \_\_\_\_\_ until the 1950s.
3. Math is very difficult for Mike. If he takes the advanced class, he'll most likely \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I didn't think Todd could manage going to school and working at the same time, but he \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
5. When Jim shows his terrible report card to his mother, she'll \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Nancy's a hard worker. She never \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The terrorists tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the embassy.
8. A lot of changes have \_\_\_\_\_ in the last few years.
9. The truck driver was lost, so he \_\_\_\_\_ to the side of the road and checked his map.
10. Sam and Dave are so much faster on their bikes than I am that I always \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Don't ask Ann. She doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ anything \_\_\_\_\_ it.
12. I used to be able to trick my rich uncle into giving me money, but he's starting to \_\_\_\_\_ to me.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ the balloons now. The party's going to start soon.
14. Bob started taking dance lessons, and he \_\_\_\_\_ right away.
15. If you \_\_\_\_\_ in your credit card payments, you'll damage your credit rating.
16. I usually ask Bill what he thinks before I buy a stock. He \_\_\_\_\_ a lot \_\_\_\_\_ investing.
17. I asked the photo lab to \_\_\_\_\_ the photo \_\_\_\_\_ 300 percent.

EXERCISE 33b — **Complete the sentences with the correct second particles.**

1. Todd was fired after he *blew up* \_\_\_\_\_ his boss.
2. Todd is usually so easygoing. What did he *blow up* \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Karen thinks she's so clever, but I'm starting to *catch on* \_\_\_\_\_ her.

1. Jake was in jail when the crime was committed, so the police were able to \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ as a suspect.
2. My fiancée's father got sick suddenly, so we had to \_\_\_\_\_ the wedding until later.
3. I was a little \_\_\_\_\_ when Melanie disagreed with me.
4. Linda's going to \_\_\_\_\_ getting her teeth bleached.
5. No one was surprised when the news \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The family business had to be sold after the family members \_\_\_\_\_ with each other.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ and forgot to put socks on this morning.
8. I felt like an idiot — I had to \_\_\_\_\_ all day without socks on.
9. You can still eat this apple — just \_\_\_\_\_ the bad part.
10. When we decided on the Bahamas for our honeymoon, we didn't \_\_\_\_\_ a hurricane.
11. I was angry with my sister, but we talked and \_\_\_\_\_ everything \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Timmy told his mother that he hadn't eaten any cake, but the chocolate frosting on his face \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
13. If you're studying a language, you can't \_\_\_\_\_ a dictionary.
14. Jim's job is very dangerous, but if he \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ for another year, he can retire with a pension.
15. These trash cans are getting full. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_, please?
16. Put some more wood on the fire — it's starting to \_\_\_\_\_.

**2. stand for** p.v. When people or objects support, represent, or are identified with ideas, values, or beliefs, they **stand for** them.

*This flag **stands for** freedom.*  
*He was a great man who **stood for** equal rights and opportunity for all people.*

**3. stand for** p.v. When you will not **stand for** something that you think is illegal, improper, or unjust, you will not tolerate it or allow it to happen.

*Cruelty to animals is one thing I will never **stand for**.*  
*I told my son I wouldn't **stand for** that kind of language in this house.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
stick around	stick around & sticks around	sticking around	stuck around	stuck around

**1. stick around** p.v. [informal] When you **stick around**, you stay where you are.

*Can you **stick around**? We're going to have lunch in an hour.*  
*Don't go yet — **stick around** until Sarah gets here. She'd love to see you.*

stick to	stick to & sticks to	sticking to	stuck to	stuck to
----------	----------------------	-------------	----------	----------

**1. stick to** p.v. When one thing **sticks to** another, it remains attached to it.

*The magnet **sticks to** the chalkboard because there's metal underneath.*  
*I used the wrong glue, and the tiles didn't **stick to** the floor.*

**2. stick to** p.v. When you are speaking or writing and you **stick to** a certain subject, you talk or write about that subject only.

*The teacher said, "Do this paper over and **stick to** the point — don't talk about 100 other things that aren't important."*  
*In his news conference, the President **stuck to** the new tax legislation, but the reporters kept asking about the latest scandal.*

**3. stick to** p.v. When you **stick to** a certain belief, claim, policy, habit, plan, type of work, and so on, you continue as before, without change. **Stick with** is similar to **stick to**.

*Jake claimed he was innocent of Hank's murder. He **stuck to** his alibi that he had been at the racetrack when the murder occurred.*  
*After the audition, the director told me I was a terrible actor and that I should **stick to** singing.*

**4. stick ... to** p.v. [informal] When you **stick it to** people, you deliberately try to tease, annoy, or embarrass them with an accusation, provocative statement, or difficult question.

*Sam thinks the new manager is an idiot, and he likes to **stick it to** him.*  
*One woman at the shareholders' meeting really **stuck it to** the president of the company. She asked why he deserved a \$19 million bonus even though the company had lost money that year and 4,000 workers had been laid off.*



**7. take ... back (to) p.v.** When something reminds you of a place where you were in the past or of something you experienced in the past, it **takes** you **back** or **takes** you **back** to a time in the past.

*Looking through my high school year book sure **takes** me **back**.*

*My grandfather found his old uniform in the attic, and he said it **took** him **back** to when he was stationed in England during the war.*

**EXERCISE 34a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- After being embarrassed last night, I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ a policy of minding my own business.
- Have you seen the manual for this program? It's \_\_\_\_\_ the office somewhere, but I can't find it.
- It's too bad you can't \_\_\_\_\_. I was just about to barbecue some chicken.
- Look at these old pictures. They sure \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
- In my history class we studied the events that \_\_\_\_\_ World War II.
- Rosa tried to return her engagement ring to her fiancé, but he wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
- The lawyer told his client to \_\_\_\_\_ the facts when she testifies.
- The escaped prisoner was \_\_\_\_\_ to prison.
- It's not like Erik to do such a terrible thing. I think someone \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- I hate it when it's so humid that your clothes \_\_\_\_\_ your skin.
- "UAE" \_\_\_\_\_ for United Arab Emirates.
- I felt terrible about what I said, and I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ immediately.
- One of the guys at work is a real baseball nut from Chicago, so we love to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ him about how bad the Cubs are.
- I don't have Linda's electric drill anymore. I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
- When people see our company's logo, they know it \_\_\_\_\_ quality.

16. The tailor didn't do what I wanted him to do with this dress. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to him.
17. The restaurant manager told the bartender that she would not \_\_\_\_\_ drinking on the job.
18. Mark did such a bad job painting his house that he had to get a professional house painter to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
19. As soon as the company president mentioned the decrease in sales and the need to reduce labor costs, we knew what he was \_\_\_\_\_.
20. Don't leave these dirty dishes here; \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ to the kitchen.
21. Don't pay any attention to that rumor — it's been \_\_\_\_\_ for three years.

**EXERCISE 34b — Review the explanation at the beginning of this section of how two- and three-word phrasal verbs are pronounced. Then, say each sentence in Exercise 34a aloud and circle the verb or particle that is stressed.**

**EXERCISE 34c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Janice said I was cheap, but she later admitted that it wasn't true. What did Janice do?
2. A number of situations and events helped to cause the Civil War. What did those situations and events do?
3. You've rewritten this story four times, and you're still not happy with it. What have you done to the story four times?
4. When I opened the box of cereal, it was full of bugs, so I returned it to the store. What did I do to the box of cereal?
5. Bill has a system for picking good stocks, and he always uses it. What does Bill do with his system?
6. Mr. Tucker's 15-year-old daughter wants to get a tattoo, but he absolutely will not allow it. What won't Mr. Tucker do?
7. Visiting his old high school brought back a lot of memories. What did visiting his old high school do to him?

8. Carlos came to my house and stayed for a while. What did Carlos do after he came to my house?

9. People in my office have been reading the latest issue of *Time* magazine and then giving it to someone else. What has the magazine been doing?

10. She asked me what “Ph.D.” represents. What did she ask me?

11. I felt ridiculous dressing as a pink dinosaur for my nephew’s birthday party, but my brother persuaded me to do it. What did my brother do?

EXERCISE 34d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

bite off, 27	fall behind, 33	plan ahead, 25	shake up, 24
catch on, 33	get together, 26	print out, 24	stay out, 23
come about, 33	goof around, 33	pull off, 33	stop over, 24
come out, 32	let in on, 26	put together, 26	wear off, 27

1. I asked Sam how his job interview \_\_\_\_\_, and he said it went great.

2. I asked my history teacher what led up to the American Revolution, and he said the war \_\_\_\_\_ as a result of several factors.

3. After the tranquilizer \_\_\_\_\_, the elephant will wake up.

4. The new owners of the company said they planned to \_\_\_\_\_ things \_\_\_\_\_.

5. When you’re an adult, you can’t just think about today. You have to \_\_\_\_\_.

6. Tonight I’m going to \_\_\_\_\_ with some friends and watch the game.

7. Mark has a rich father, so Mark doesn’t work; he just \_\_\_\_\_ most of time.

8. The finance minister \_\_\_\_\_ a plan to revive the nation’s economy.

9. That’s a pretty big project. Are you sure you haven’t \_\_\_\_\_ more than you can chew?

10. The new system at the warehouse was a disaster, and we \_\_\_\_\_ in filling orders.

11. I didn’t sleep at all last night — I \_\_\_\_\_ dancing until dawn, and I’m really beat.



12. People have been talking about picture phones for years, but they've never \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.
13. The boss \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ the new strategy.
14. If you're not busy, would you like to \_\_\_\_\_ for a while? We could watch TV or play cards.
15. The crooks tried to steal a 747 by pretending to be pilots, but they couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
16. I finished my letter, but I can't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ because I'm out of toner.

---

## 35. FOCUS ON: gerund phrasal verbs

In Section 10 we looked at gerunds as the objects of phrasal verbs. Now we will look at phrasal verbs as gerunds themselves. Like ordinary verbs, gerund phrasal verbs can be the subject of a sentence:

***Narrowing down*** the list will be difficult.

*subject*

the object of a sentence:

We discussed ***narrowing down*** the list.

*object*

or the object of a preposition:

We talked about ***narrowing down*** the list.

*object of preposition*

How and when phrasal verbs can be separated is unaffected by their use as gerunds:

***Narrowing it down*** will be difficult.

We discussed ***narrowing it down***.

We talked about ***narrowing it down***.

---

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
fool around	fool around & fools around	fooling around	fooled around	fooled around

- 1. fool around** *p.v.* When you waste time playing or doing silly or unimportant things, you **fool around**. **Goof around** is the same as **fool around**.

*My son is lazy. He spends his time **fooling around** instead of looking for a job.*  
*My boss said, "I'm not paying you to **fool around** — get to work!"*
- 2. fool around** (with) *p.v.* When you **fool around** with something, you do something that may be dangerous or foolish.

***Fooling around** with drugs is pretty stupid.*  
*You shouldn't **fool around** with the insides of your computer unless you know what you're doing.*
- 3. fool around** (with) *p.v. [informal]* When two people **fool around** or **fool around** with each other, they have sexual relations, even though one or both of them may be married to someone else or even though their families or society may not approve.

*Sally's father caught her and Jim **fooling around** in the basement.*  
*Her husband's been **fooling around** with his secretary, and everyone in town knows it.*

go by	go by & goes by	going by	went by	gone by
-------	-----------------	----------	---------	---------

- 1. go by** *p.v.* When people **go by** a place or thing, they pass near that place or thing. When a thing **goes by** or **goes by** you, it passes near you.

*We watched the parade **go by**.*  
*I **went by** Jim's house to see if his car was in the driveway.*
- 2. go by** *p.v.* When you **go by** a place, you go there so that you can do something or get something.

*Let's **go by** Raul's house to get his tools before we work on your car.*  
*You can forget about **going by** the dry cleaner to pick up your stuff — it's closed.*
- 3. go by** *p.v.* When a period of time **goes by**, it passes.

*I can't believe that 30 years have **gone by** since I got out of high school.*  
*As time **went by**, Betty moved up in the company until she was the head of the finance department.*
- 4. go by** *p.v.* When you **go by** a policy or standard, you use it as a reference or a guide in making decisions and determining your behavior. When you **go by** the book, you follow rules, policies, or laws exactly.

***Going by** the book has always been my policy.*  
*Jim told me to do one thing, and Tom told me to do another, but since Tom is the boss, I'm going to **go by** what he says.*

gerund phrasal verbs

5. **go by** p.v. When you **go by** a clock, you use it to tell the time.

*Don't **go by** the clock on the wall. It's fast. **Go by** the clock on the desk.*  
*No wonder I'm always late for work — the clock I've been **going by** is ten minutes slow.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
hold against	hold against & holds against	holding against	held against	held against

1. **hold ... against** p.v. When you **hold** things **against** people, you continue to blame them for something and continue to be upset about it.

*Ten years ago I got a promotion that Ned thought he deserved, and he's **held it against** me ever since.*  
*Jane lost her job because of a mistake Bob made, but she doesn't **hold it against** him.*

leave behind	leave behind & leaves behind	leaving behind	left behind	left behind
--------------	------------------------------	----------------	-------------	-------------

1. **leave ... behind** p.v. When you **leave** someone or something **behind**, you go to a different place.

*The explorers **left** the mountains **behind** and entered the jungle.*  
*The enemy soldiers retreated and **left behind** a city in ruins.*

2. **leave ... behind** p.v. When you **leave** something or someone **behind**, you do not take them with you because you forgot or because you cannot or do not want to take them.

*We packed too much luggage for our trip, so we had to **leave** some things **behind**.*  
***Leaving** our children **behind** at a gas station was pretty dumb.*

3. **leave ... behind** p.v. When you move, learn, or work faster than others in your group, you **leave** them **behind**.

*My husband walks so fast that he always **leaves** me **behind**.*  
*If you don't start working harder, you're going to be **left behind**.*  
*Mark was so good at calculus that he soon **left** the rest of the class **behind**.*

live with	live with & lives with	living with	lived with	lived with
-----------	------------------------	-------------	------------	------------

1. **live with** p.v. When you **live with** someone, you live at the same address. When you say that one person **lives with** a person of the opposite sex, you mean that they live in the same place but are not married.

***Living with** my in-laws is driving me crazy.*  
*Mike's been **living with** his girlfriend for five years. Are they ever going to get married?*

2. **live with** p.v. When you **live with** a disease or other problem, you endure or put up with it.



**Living with** this disease is not easy.  
I can't change the situation, so I'll just have to learn to **live with** it.

**3. live with** p.v. When you **live with** shame, guilt, or a painful memory, you continue with your life in spite of the shame, guilt, or painful memory.

**Living with** those terrible memories is very difficult.  
Jake could not **live with** the shame of what he had done.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
make of	make of & makes of	making of	made of	made of

**1. make of** p.v. What you **make of** something is your understanding or opinion of it.  
*So what did you **make of** the prime minister's speech?*  
*What he said was so strange that I didn't know what to **make of** it.*

narrow down	narrow down & narrows down	narrowing down	narrowed down	narrowed down
-------------	----------------------------	----------------	---------------	---------------

**1. narrow ... down** p.v. When you **narrow down** things or people in a list or group, you remove some of them so that the number of things or people is reduced.  
*All the candidates for the job have excellent qualifications. **Narrowing** the list **down** won't be easy.*  
*The detective **narrowed** the suspects **down** to the butler, the cook, and the maid.*

trick into	trick into & tricks into	tricking into	tricked into	tricked into
------------	--------------------------	---------------	--------------	--------------

**1. trick ... into** p.v. When you **trick** people **into** doing something, you persuade them to do something by fooling or deceiving them. **Con into** is similar to **trick into**.  
*The con artist **tricked** them **into** giving him their life savings.*  
*I was foolish to let Hank **trick** me **into** selling him my car for so little money.*

EXERCISE 35a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. The man who was killed in the accident \_\_\_\_\_ a wife and three children \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The prosecutor \_\_\_\_\_ Jake \_\_\_\_\_ admitting his guilt.
3. I took a job in Japan, and six years \_\_\_\_\_ before I returned to the United States.
4. Paul's been \_\_\_\_\_ his parents since his house burned down.

- 3. Sally and her sister’s husband go to a motel sometimes during their lunch hour. What are they doing?
- 4. My father has a lot of horrible memories from the war. What does he have to do with them?
- 5. Bill made a list of cities that he might move to, and then he eliminated those that are too cold or have high crime rates. What did Bill do to his list of cities?
- 6. When the boss isn’t in the office, you just play computer games and make personal phone calls. What do you do when the boss isn’t in the office?
- 7. Hank told his sister that he needed money for his wife’s doctor bills, but he really wanted money to buy drugs. What did Hank do to his sister?
- 8. The scientist asked her colleague his opinion of the test results. What did the scientist ask her colleague about the test results?
- 9. A police car passed me while I was driving. What did the police car do?
- 10. Susie’s parents are going to take a vacation without her. What are Susie’s parents going to do to her?
- 11. The last year passed quickly. What did the last year do?

EXERCISE 35c — **Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to make all the phrasal verbs gerunds and to use them as subjects, objects, or objects of prepositions.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. \_\_\_\_\_

6. \_\_\_\_\_

7. \_\_\_\_\_

8. \_\_\_\_\_

15. Bill was talking about moving to Florida or Hawaii, but I'm not sure where he finally  
\_\_\_\_\_.
16. Someone told me that Sarah is in town, but I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ her yet.

### 36. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with the particle *down*

The particle *down* is used in many phrasal verbs and has many meanings. *Down* can be used to say that something literally moves from a higher position to a lower position or from north to south:

- Bob **went down** the ladder.*
- His friends **came down** from Canada.*
- Sit down.** Dinner is ready.*

that something decreases in size, intensity, quantity, or quality:

- Her fever has **gone down** to 100 degrees.*
- The doctor gave her a sedative to **calm her down**.*
- We've **narrowed** the list **down** to three choices.*

that something or someone is fought, defeated, or overpowered:

- Hank **backed down** when he saw my shotgun.*
- The police **cracked down** on street crime.*

that something falls to the ground:

- The boy was running and **fell down**.*
- The warehouse **burned down**.*
- Open the door or I'll **break it down**!*

or that a process or activity is ending or has ended:

- My car **broke down** on the highway.*
- The FBI **tracked down** the spy.*
- The campaign is **winding down**.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
back down	back down & backs down	backing down	backed down	backed down

**1. back down** *p.v.* When one side in a disagreement stops making threats and lets the other have what it wants or do what it wants, the side that stops making threats **backs down**.



**4. go down** *p.v.* When something **goes down** in a certain way, people react to or perceive it in this way.

*The new no smoking policy didn't **go down** very well with the smokers in the office.*  
*The judge's decision **went down** well with the prosecutor.*

**5. go down** *p.v.* When a computer or computer network stops working because of a problem or because it has been disconnected, it **goes down**.

*I couldn't withdraw any money at the bank because its computers had **gone down**.*  
*If your computer terminal **goes down**, you can use the one in the next office.*

**6. go down** *p.v.* When the sun goes below the horizon, it **goes down**.

*After the sun **goes down**, it'll get a little cooler.*  
*The sun **went down** at 8:34 last night.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
lay down	lay down & lays down	laying down	laid down	laid down

**1. lay ... down** (on) *p.v.* When you **lay** something **down**, you put it on a horizontal surface. **Put down** is similar to **lay down**.

*Marsha **laid** the tray **down**.*  
*The police ordered Jake to **lay down** his gun and surrender.*

**2. lay down** *p.v.* When you **lay down** a new law, policy, rule, and so on, you create and announce it.

*The IRS **laid down** several new tax regulations.*  
*Congress decided against **laying down** any new campaign financing laws.*

put down	put down & puts down	putting down	put down	put down
----------	----------------------	--------------	----------	----------

**1. put ... down** *p.v.* When you **put** something **down**, you put something in your hand or something that you are carrying on a horizontal surface.

*The suitcase was so heavy that I had to **put it down** and rest for a minute.*  
*Susie, **put** that knife **down**. It's dangerous!*

**2. put ... down** *p.v.* When you **put** people **down**, you criticize them.

*Jim hates his stepfather and **puts him down** constantly.*  
*I'm not inviting Sam to any more parties. I hate the way he **puts** everyone **down**.*

**put-down** *n.* A **put-down** is an insult or critical remark.

*At the party Sam asked Nancy if she had made her dress from an old curtain.*  
*What a **put-down**!*

**3. put ... down** (on) *p.v.* When you **put** money **down** or **put** money **down** on something, you pay a portion of the cost of something you want to buy to be sure that it will still be available to you when you are able to pay the rest of the cost.

phrasal verbs with the particle down

The real estate agent asked me how much money I want to **put down** on the house. I told her that I could **put** as much as \$15,000 **down**.

**4. put ... down** (on/for) *p.v.* When you add something to a list or other written material, you **put it down** or **put it down** on the list. When you add people to a list in order to assign something to them, you **put them down** or **put them down** for that assignment.

Melanie's collecting money for charity, so I told her to **put me down** for \$50. I'm making a list of volunteers to help reelect Senator Dolittle. Can I **put your name down** on the list?

**5. put ... down** (on) *p.v.* When an airplane **puts down** or a pilot **puts** an airplane **down**, the airplane lands.

After the engine quit, the pilot looked for a place to **put down**. Fortunately, the pilot was able to **put** the plane **down** on a frozen lake.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	run down	running down	ran down	run down

**1. run down** (to) *p.v.* When you move quickly to a lower level or place, you **run down** or **run down** to that place.

Mike was **running down** the stairs when he fell and broke his leg. I saw someone trying to steal my car, and I **ran down** to the street to try to stop him.

**2. run ... down** *p.v.* When vehicles or people driving vehicles hit and injure or kill someone, they **run** that person **down**.

The man was **run down** and killed by a speeding taxi. Ali was arrested after he **ran** three people **down**.

**3. run down** *p.v.* When you discuss or review items on a list from the first to the last, you **run down** the list.

Let's **run down** the Christmas list and decide what to give everyone. The teacher **ran down** the list of students and marked the ones who are failing.

**rundown** *n.* A **rundown** is a discussion or review of items on a list.

The consultant gave the manager a **rundown** of the problems she had found.

**4. run down** *p.v.* When batteries or machines **run down** or are **run down** by someone, they gradually lose power or energy.

Don't leave the car lights on for too long when the car isn't running or the battery will **run down**. What time is it? My watch **ran down** last night.

**rundown** *part.adj.* A person or thing that is **rundown** is exhausted, without power or energy.

Maybe I need to go to the doctor. I feel so **rundown** all the time.

**rundown** *part.adj.* A **rundown** building or neighborhood is in poor condition because it has not been maintained.

I went back to my old neighborhood, and I was shocked to see how **rundown** it had become.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
sit down	sit down & sits down	sitting down	sat down	sat down

**1. sit down** *p.v.* When you **sit down**, you change from a standing position to a sitting position.

The teacher told his students to **sit down** and open their books.  
I'm exhausted; I haven't **sat down** all day.

**2. sit ... down** *p.v.* When you **sit** people **down**, you order them to sit, usually so that you can have a serious discussion.

When I found marijuana in my daughter's purse, I **sat** her **down** and had a serious talk with her.  
The detective **sat** Hank **down** and began to interrogate him.

EXERCISE 36a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Heather thinks she's so high-class. She \_\_\_\_\_ other people all the time.
2. The situation \_\_\_\_\_ after the cease-fire was declared.
3. The sun comes up around 6:00, and it \_\_\_\_\_ around 8:00.
4. Here's the list of candidates for the promotion. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ the list and decide.
5. The old water tower \_\_\_\_\_ during the storm.
6. You must be exhausted. Why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ and take it easy?
7. I saw a tow truck looking for illegally parked cars, so I \_\_\_\_\_ to my car and moved it.
8. My office is on the 90th floor, so sometimes it takes me 15 minutes to \_\_\_\_\_ to the lobby.
9. It's hard to write sympathy notes. I never know what to \_\_\_\_\_.



phrasal verbs with the particle down

- 9. The company’s management stopped threatening to fire the workers and agreed to raise their wages. What did the company do?
- 10. The dentist’s secretary wrote my name in her appointment book. What did the secretary do?
- 11. The soldiers stopped fighting and put their rifles on the ground. What did the soldiers do with their rifles?
- 12. You slipped and landed on the ground. What did you do?

EXERCISE 36d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

burned up, 22	locked in, 30	punched in, 30	spaced-out, 30
cleaned out, 32	locked out, 30	punched out, 30	sorted out, 30
emptied out, 32	paid up, 22	put out, 30	torn off, 27
left out, 32	plugged up, 22	shaken up, 24	

- 1. David’s totally \_\_\_\_\_ today. He has even forgotten his girlfriend’s name.
- 2. I like this coat, but I don’t know what size it is because the tag’s\_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. I don’t know why that guy from the collection agency called me — all my bills are \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. Nicole isn’t \_\_\_\_\_. Either she’s late for work or she forgot.
- 5. Mark borrowed Bob’s car and had an accident, and Mark’s really \_\_\_\_\_ about it.
- 6. The manager wondered why I wasn’t working, but after I told her I was \_\_\_\_\_, she said it was OK.
- 7. Take this medicine. It’s great for \_\_\_\_\_ noses.
- 8. Do you have a key? I’m \_\_\_\_\_ and can’t get out.
- 9. Do you have a key? I’m \_\_\_\_\_ and can’t get in.
- 10. Jane’s really \_\_\_\_\_. She just found out that her brother was murdered.
- 11. Jim’s socks are mixed with his brother’s socks. They’re not \_\_\_\_\_.

phrasal verbs used as nouns, part 3

12. George and Linda \_\_\_\_\_ for three years before they got married.
13. Several people were killed when the bomb \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Bob and Marsha aren't \_\_\_\_\_ spending more than \$250,000 for their new house.
15. My divorce settlement cost me a lot of money. It almost \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
16. The FBI started with a list of six suspects, but they \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to two.

37. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs used as nouns, part 3

When phrasal verbs are used as nouns, the verb is usually in the infinitive form; however, a small number use a different form of the verb.

For example, **left over** and **grow up** use the past participle:

*We ate **leftovers** the day after Thanksgiving.*  
*The **grown-ups** sat at one table, and the children sat at another.*

**talk to** and **go over** use the -ing form:

*Mr. Young gave his son a good **talking-to**.*  
*Before I buy this car, I'm going to give it a good **going-over**.*

and **grown-up** uses the past participle:

*Only **grown-ups** are allowed to drive.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
brush off	brush off & brushes off	brushing off	brushed off	brushed off

**1. brush ... off** p.v. When you **brush** people **off**, you ignore them or refuse to listen to them because you are not interested in or do not like what they are saying.

*My boss just **brushes** me **off** when I try to tell her how to increase our profits.*  
*The reporters tried to ask him some questions, but he **brushed** them **off**.*

**brush-off** n. When you give people the **brush-off**, you ignore them or refuse to listen to them because you are not interested in or do not like what they are saying.

*The boss just gave me the **brush-off** when I tried to give him some advice.*

**2. brush ... off** p.v. When you **brush off** a critical remark or problem, you ignore it and continue as before without letting it affect you.

*I told Dr. Smith that he had made a mistake, but he **brushed** it **off**.*  
*My father's cholesterol is very high, but he just **brushes** it **off**.*

phrasal verbs used as nouns, part 3

**come-on** *n.* A discount or special offer designed to get people to buy something is a **come-on**.

*The bank is offering a free computer as a **come-on** if you open an account with them.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
cover up	cover up & covers up	covering up	covered up	covered up

**1. cover ... up** *p.v.* When you cover something completely, you **cover it up**.

*I **covered** the cake **up** so no bugs would land on it.*

***Cover** this stuff **up** — I don't want anyone to see it.*

**covered up** *part.adj.* After something has been completely covered, it is **covered up**.

*Is the meat **covered up**? I don't want flies to land on it.*

**2. cover ... up** *p.v.* When you **cover up** a crime, you do something to try to prevent other people from learning of it.

*There's no point in trying to **cover up** the crime. Too many people already know about it.*

*The mayor was accused of **covering up** his ties to organized crime.*

**cover-up** *n.* Something you do in order to prevent a crime from becoming known is a **cover-up**.

*The mayor denied being part of a **cover-up** and claimed he was innocent.*

hang out				
	hang out & hangs out	hanging out	hung out	hung out

**1. hang out** *p.v. [informal]* When you **hang out** at a place, you spend time there without any important purpose. **Hang around** is similar to **hang out**.

*Doesn't Nancy have a job? It seems as if she **hangs out** at the beach every day.*

*I don't have any place to go. Do you mind if I **hang out** here for a while?*

**hangout** *n. [informal]* A **hangout** is a place where you spend time without any important purpose.

*The police closed the club, saying it was a **hangout** for crooks and gang members.*

leave over				
	left over			

**1. leave over** *p.v. [always passive]* When something is **left over**, it remains after people have used or taken as much of it as they need or want.

*I guess I made too much food. Look how much is **left over**.*

*I paid all my bills and had only \$17 **left over**.*



5. I set the thermostat so that the air conditioner \_\_\_\_\_ if it gets over 80 degrees.
6. You can trust Erik to keep his promises. He won't \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I didn't like that car salesman we talked to last night. He \_\_\_\_\_ too strong.
8. I called Heather last night, but I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ her. She was in the shower.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ in bars isn't my idea of fun.
10. I tried to apologize to Jane, but she just \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ and continued walking.
11. I want to \_\_\_\_\_ my mortgage \_\_\_\_\_ early, so I'm making two payments every month.
12. Look at *TV Guide* to see when the show \_\_\_\_\_.
13. Karen sure isn't shy. Did you see how she was \_\_\_\_\_ to my brother at the party?
14. After Thanksgiving so much turkey will be \_\_\_\_\_ that we'll be eating it for two weeks.
15. I hope I'm not getting sick. I feel a cold \_\_\_\_\_.
16. The contractor was accused of \_\_\_\_\_ city officials in exchange for contracts.

EXERCISE 37b — **Complete the sentences with nouns from this section.**

1. You need to finish school. The \_\_\_\_\_ won't come for years, but it's worth it.
2. I didn't have time to make anything for dinner, so we're having \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.
3. This place isn't as beautiful as it looked in the pictures. What a \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Judy isn't interested in anything I say. She always gives me the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The senator was convicted of taking a \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The low interest rate the credit card company offers if you switch to their card is just a \_\_\_\_\_. After six months they increase it to 18 percent.
7. The politician was accused of being part of a \_\_\_\_\_.

8. You can usually find Joe at the nightclub across the street. That's his favorite \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Timmy's not causing any problems today. Maybe someone gave him a \_\_\_\_\_.

**EXERCISE 37c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Ned spends a lot of time at Joe's Diner relaxing and talking to his friends. What does Ned do at Joe's Diner?
2. In Question 1, what is Joe's Diner to Ned?
3. Mark said something that I thought was ridiculous, and I told him to be serious and reasonable. What did I say to Mark?
4. You had \$400, but after you went shopping, you had \$100 remaining. What did you have?
5. My favorite TV show begins at 9:00. What does my favorite show do at 9:00?
6. Dan promised his daughter that he would take her to the circus, but he couldn't get off work that day. What did Dan do to his daughter?
7. Maria is going to pay her last car loan payment. What is she going to do to her car loan?
8. In Question 7, how would you describe Maria's car loan after she makes the last payment?
9. Nicole spoke with her brother about his drinking problem. What did she do to her brother?
10. In Question 9, what did Nicole give to her brother?
11. The heat in our house starts to operate when the temperature gets below 60 degrees. What does the heat in our house do?
12. For lunch you ate the spaghetti that your family didn't eat the night before. What did you eat for lunch?
13. The restaurant owner gave the health inspector \$200 to ignore the rats in the kitchen. What did the restaurant owner do to the health inspector?
14. In Question 13, what was the \$200 that the restaurant owner gave the health inspector?

phrasal verbs used as nouns, part 3

- 8. Timmy told his mother that he hadn't eaten any cookies, but he had chocolate all over his face, so she knew he was lying. The chocolate on his face was the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9. Before you spend \$13,000 on a used car, I suggest that you give it a thorough \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10. Carlos made paper \_\_\_\_\_ shaped like dinosaurs.
- 11. The police chief gave the mayor a \_\_\_\_\_ of the previous month's crime statistics.

EXERCISE 37e, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

calm down, 36	fall down, 36	hold against, 35	narrow down, 35
catch on, 33	fool around, 35	leave behind, 35	pull off, 33
do away with, 31	go by, 35	live with, 35	put down, 36
empty out, 32	go down, 36	make of, 35	sit down, 36

- 1. My best friend, Heather, really likes Mike, but Mike asked me to go to the dance with him. I hope Heather doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ me.
- 2. The real estate agent has shown us several houses, but we've \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to three that we really like.
- 3. Mike took the wastebaskets outside and \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. Before we go to the beach, let's \_\_\_\_\_ Tom's house and see if he wants to come with us.
- 5. Maria's a fast learner. She had never played chess before, but she \_\_\_\_\_ right away.
- 6. No one thought I could get 100 on the test, but I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7. Nothing like that ever happened before. I didn't know what to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 8. You can really screw up your computer with that program, so don't \_\_\_\_\_ with it unless you know what you're doing.
- 9. Pets aren't allowed where we're moving, so we're going to have to \_\_\_\_\_ our dog \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10. Polio has been almost completely \_\_\_\_\_.



- 11. \_\_\_\_\_ that guy for 15 years was horrible.
- 12. Joe was so upset after the accident that it was 20 minutes before he \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ enough to tell the police officer what happened.
- 13. Be careful on that icy sidewalk — you don't want to \_\_\_\_\_ and break  
your neck.
- 14. In the summer the sun doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ until 9:00 in the evening.
- 15. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ \$4,000 \_\_\_\_\_ on my new car and finance the rest.
- 16. I've been standing all day. I need to \_\_\_\_\_.

### 38. FOCUS ON: the verb *keep* and adverbs and adverbials showing degrees of variability

#### Phrasal verbs with *keep*

Several phrasal verbs are based on the verb *keep*, and it is important to understand that the essential meaning of *keep* in these phrasal verbs is *no change*. As you study these verbs, remember that in each meaning of each verb something is not changing, something is continuing in the same direction or in the same manner, or something is staying in the same place or in the same condition.

#### Adverbs and adverbials showing degrees of variability

A variety of adverbs and adverbial groups of words that together function as adverbs are used to modify phrasal verbs that relate to something variable, such as distance, time, cost, speed, temperature, amount, or quantity.

Adverbs and adverbials allow the speaker to be more precise about what is being measured — to say whether it was *a little* or *a lot* or to be precise about exactly *how much*. But the verb must be something that is variable. It cannot be something either/or, such as **shut off**, for example (a TV is either on or off — it cannot be in between). Adverbs and adverbials are used to strengthen the meaning of the verb:

He fell asleep on the train and **went well beyond** his stop.  
She **fell way behind** in her work when she was sick.  
**Keep far away** from the fire.

to weaken the meaning of the verb:

I **went a bit over** my budget.  
**Keep slightly to** the right on that road.  
He **fell a little behind**.  
The meeting may **run somewhat over**.

the verb keep and adverbs and adverbials showing degrees of variability

or to be exact:

We **planned** two weeks **ahead**.  
Go three floors **up**.

Sometimes, in informal English, way is repeated for extra emphasis:

What Jim said **went** way, way, way **beyond** impolite — it was outrageous.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
keep at	keep at & keeps at	keeping at	kept at	kept at

**1. keep at** p.v. When you **keep at** it, you continue with an activity even though it may be difficult. When you say “**Keep at** it” to people, you encourage them to finish with an activity that is difficult.

*I know this work is difficult, but you have to **keep at** it.*  
***Keep at** it! You’re almost finished.*

keep away	keep away & keeps away	keeping away	kept away	kept away
-----------	------------------------	--------------	-----------	-----------

**1. keep away** (from) p.v. When you **keep away** or **keep away** from people, you do not come close to them or associate with them. When you **keep away** or **keep away** from things, you do not touch them, come close to them, or use them. When you **keep away** or **keep away** from places, you do not come close to them or go to them.

*Mark was very sick yesterday, so everyone **kept away** from him.*  
*We’re going to eat dinner in a few minutes, so **keep away** from those cookies.*  
*That’s a bad neighborhood, so **keep away** from it.*

**2. keep ... away** (from) p.v. When you **keep** people or things **away** or **keep** them **away** from something or someone else, you do not allow them to come close to or associate with someone or come close to or touch something.

*That dog is dangerous, so **keep it away**.*  
*Paul is trying to lose weight, so **keep him away** from the desserts at the party tomorrow.*

keep down	keep down & keeps down	keeping down	kept down	kept down
-----------	------------------------	--------------	-----------	-----------

**1. keep ... down** p.v. When you **keep** the cost, quantity, or amount of something **down**, you keep it a low level.

*The company tried to **keep** its prices **down**.*  
*They wanted a small wedding, but they have such large families that it was hard to **keep** the number of guests **down**.*

**2. keep ... down** p.v. When you **keep** the volume of noise, music, or conversation **down**, you keep it at a low level. When people are being noisy and you want them to be quieter, you tell them to **keep it down**.

**5. keep ... up** p.v. When people or things **keep** you **up**, they prevent you from going to bed, or if you are in bed, they prevent you from falling asleep.

*Our guests just would not leave last night. They **kept** me **up** until 2:00 in the morning.  
That noisy party across the alley **kept** me **up** all night.*

**EXERCISE 38a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section.  
Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. The student's excuse for not doing his homework was so ridiculous that his teacher couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ laughing.
2. What I'm going to tell you is highly confidential, so \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ yourself.
3. The baby's crying \_\_\_\_\_ Judy \_\_\_\_\_ half the night.
4. Don't quit now — you're almost finished. \_\_\_\_\_ it.
5. The company increased its profits by \_\_\_\_\_ costs \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I've tried to quit smoking a hundred times, but I just can't \_\_\_\_\_ cigarettes longer than a day.
7. Slower traffic should \_\_\_\_\_ the right.
8. Now that I live in New York, I can't \_\_\_\_\_ with local news in my hometown.
9. Sally is really angry at your brother, so it would be a good idea to \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ from her.
10. My algebra class is too difficult for me. I can't \_\_\_\_\_.
11. You're going to have to walk faster than that if you want to \_\_\_\_\_ with us.
12. Please \_\_\_\_\_ your dog \_\_\_\_\_ our lawn.
13. If you don't \_\_\_\_\_ your exercise program, you're going to gain all the weight back.
14. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ the music \_\_\_\_\_? Your mother's trying to sleep.
15. Parents try to \_\_\_\_\_ their children \_\_\_\_\_ making mistakes, but sometimes it isn't easy.



16. If you \_\_\_\_\_ eating so much butter and so many eggs, you're going to have a heart attack.
17. The new owner said the company was losing too much money to \_\_\_\_\_ all the workers \_\_\_\_\_ and that some would have to be laid off.
18. Look at the prices on this menu! Let's try to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ a hundred dollars, OK?
19. I don't want to talk to you ever again, so \_\_\_\_\_ from me!

**EXERCISE 38b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. My father asked me to speak more quietly. What did my father ask me to do?
2. I told the travel agent that we have only \$4,000 to spend on our vacation, so she has to make sure the cost doesn't go over that. What did I ask the travel agent to do?
3. My geometry class is so boring that I can't stop myself from falling asleep. What can't I do in my geometry class?
4. My teacher told me that calculus is difficult but that I have to continue trying to understand it. What did my teacher tell me?
5. The political situation in Washington changes every day, and it's hard to understand what is happening. What is it hard to do?
6. Sarah and I were running. I quit after three miles, but she continued running. What did Sarah do?
7. You've got to remain at a great distance from this area because it is radioactive. What have you got to do about the radioactive area?
8. Heather thinks Mike isn't telling her everything. What does Heather think about Mike?
9. Janice got excellent grades in her first year of college. I hope she can continue to do well. What do I hope Janice can do?
10. I asked my husband not to let the children near my computer. What did I ask my husband?
11. The economist said it's important not to let inflation go higher. What did the economist say?

12. Bill hasn't used drugs for five years. What has Bill done?
13. My son is 18, so I can't stop him if he wants to join the Army. What can't I do to my son?
14. Sarah's having a little trouble in school. It's hard for her to stay at the same level as the other students. What is hard for Sarah?

EXERCISE 38c — **Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 38d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

back down, 36	come on, 37	goof around, 33	leave over, 37
brush off, 37	fall behind, 33	hang out, 37	run down, 36
calm down, 36	fall down, 36	know about, 33	sit down, 36
come about, 33	go down, 36	lay down, 36	talk to, 37

1. Raul is constantly criticizing me, but I usually just \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I can barely hear this radio. The batteries must be \_\_\_\_\_.
3. When the electricians went on strike, the entire construction project \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ schedule.
4. Jake's claim that he didn't rob the bank didn't \_\_\_\_\_ well with the jury.
5. The dictator \_\_\_\_\_ after three aircraft carriers started sailing toward his country.

The dance floor **filled up** quickly when the band began to play.  
The hotels in Rio de Janeiro always **fill up** at carnival time.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	pick up	picking up	picked up	picked up

- 1. pick ... up** p.v. When you **pick** something **up**, you lift it with your hand.

*All this trash has to be **picked up**.*  
*Sam **picked up** his briefcase and left his office.*
- 2. pick ... up** p.v. When you go to a place to get something that was created, prepared, or left for you and is now ready, you **pick it up**.

*The garbage is supposed to be **picked up** before 9:00 A.M.*  
*The travel agent said I could **pick** the tickets **up** tomorrow.*

**pickup** n. Something that is to be **picked up** or the process of **picking it up** is a **pickup**.

*The restaurant uses the back door for **pickups** and deliveries.*
- 3. pick ... up** p.v. When you **pick** people **up**, you stop your vehicle and give them a ride away from that place.

*You'll be **picked up** at the airport by the hotel van.*  
***Picking up** hitchhikers is dangerous.*

**pickup** n. Someone who is to be **picked up** or the process of **picking** someone **up** is a **pickup**.

*The taxi driver went to 2122 N. Clark Street for a **pickup**.*
- 4. pick ... up** p.v. When you **pick** something **up** in a store, you quickly go into a store to buy something you need.

*I need to **pick up** some milk on the way home.*  
*Could you **pick** a loaf of bread **up** on your way over?*
- 5. pick ... up** p.v. When you **pick up** a skill, you learn it easily. When you **pick up** a habit, you acquire the habit.

*Children can **pick up** a new language very quickly.*  
*My son is **picking** some bad habits **up** from his friends.*
- 6. pick ... up** p.v. When you resume doing something at the point where you stopped doing it earlier, you **pick up** at that point.

*The teacher started the class by **picking up** where she had left off the previous week.*  
*When you return to work after a long vacation, it's hard to know where to **pick up**.*
- 7. pick ... up** p.v. When you **pick up** a radio or television station or a certain frequency on a receiver, you are able to tune it to that station or frequency.



When the weather is right, you can **pick** radio stations **up** that are hundreds of miles away.  
General Johnston’s radio transmission was **picked up** by the enemy.

8. **pick ... up** p.v. When the police or other authorities arrest people, they **pick** them **up**.  
The border patrol **picks up** several people every day trying to bring drugs into the country.  
Charles was **picked up** for driving without a license.

9. **pick ... up** p.v. When you get something by chance without looking for it, you **pick** it **up**.  
I **picked up** a few stock tips from a guy I met on the plane.  
Marsha **picked up** some interesting books at a used bookstore.

10. **pick ... up** p.v. When you **pick up** the check or the tab (a *tab* is a list of money that someone owes) in a restaurant or other place, you pay it.  
Tom’s really cheap. He never **picks up** the check.  
Heather’s father **picked up** the tab for the entire wedding.

11. **pick up** p.v. When the speed, level, or condition of something increases or improves, it **picks up**.  
Business is slow this time of year, but it should **pick up** in December.  
The song starts out slowly, but then it **picks up**.

**pickup** n. An improvement in the speed, level, or condition of something is a **pickup**. If a motor vehicle is able to accelerate quickly, it has **pickup**.  
The company’s profits increased after a **pickup** in sales.  
I need to take my truck to the mechanic. It doesn’t have any **pickup**.

12. **pick ... up** p.v. When you **pick up** a place that is messy, you organize or tidy it.  
Timmy’s mother told him he couldn’t play outside until he **picked up** his room.  
Let’s **pick** this place **up** — it’s a mess.

13. **pick ... up** p.v. [informal] When you **pick up** members of the opposite sex, you approach and successfully interest them in a sexual or romantic encounter.  
Hank tried to **pick up** Frank’s sister at the party last night, but she wasn’t interested.  
Pat **picked up** someone, and they went to a cheap motel.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
sell out	sell out & sells out	selling out	sold out	sold out

1. **sell out** (of) [often passive] p.v. When a store **sells out** of something or is **sold out** of something, it sells all of it.

The toy store **sold out** of antigravity boots in two days.  
I wanted to buy that new computer game, but every store I went to was **sold out** of it.

**sold out** *part.adj.* After all of something for sale in a store has been sold, the item is **sold out**.

I saw the most beautiful shoes at the mall, but my size was all **sold out**.

**sold out** *part.adj.* After all the tickets to a concert, play, or other public performance have been sold, the event is **sold out**.

You'll never get a ticket for the Superbowl — it's been **sold out** for weeks.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
straighten out	straighten out & straightens out	straightening out	straightened out	straightened out

1. **straighten ... out** *p.v.* When something is bent, crooked, or curved and you make it straight, you **straighten** it **out**.

My elbow is so swollen that I can't **straighten** my arm **out**.  
As the city grew, many of the winding streets were **straightened out**.

2. **straighten ... out** *p.v.* When you **straighten out** a confused situation or misunderstanding, you take steps to make it understandable and satisfactory to everyone involved. **Sort out** is similar to **straighten out**.

My hotel had me booked for the wrong days in the wrong room, but the manager **straightened** everything **out**.  
Save your questions for the meeting. Everything will be **straightened out** then.

**straightened out** *part.adj.* After a confused situation or misunderstanding has been made understandable and satisfactory to everyone involved, it is **straightened out**. **Sorted out** is similar to **straightened out**.

Erik was upset with Dan, but they had a talk and now everything is **straightened out**.

3. **straighten ... out** *p.v.* When you **straighten out** people who are acting foolishly, you do or say something that causes them to act more responsibly. When you **straighten out** people who are confused, you help them to understand.

I told my son that if he gets in trouble one more time, I'm going to send him to military school. That really **straightened** him **out**.  
I'm totally confused about what I'm supposed to do. Can you **straighten** me **out**?

take over	take over & takes over	taking over	took over	taken over
-----------	------------------------	-------------	-----------	------------

1. **take ... over** (to) *p.v.* When you take something from one place to another, you **take it over** or **take it over** to a person or place.

Jane's at home sick, so I'm going to **take** some chicken soup **over**.  
After I finished my report, I **took** it **over** to the finance department.



**2. take ... over** *p.v.* When people, groups, or countries take control of a place by force, they **take it over**.

*After the government troops fled, the country was **taken over** by the rebels.  
The hijackers **took over** the plane and ordered the pilot to fly to Havana.*

**takeover** *n.* A **takeover** is an action to take control of a country, city, building, or other place by force.

*If the situation doesn't stabilize soon, there's a real chance of a military **takeover**.*

**3. take over** (from/as) *p.v.* When people are elected, appointed, or hired to take control of a country, state, city, business, school, building, and so on, and to replace the people in control, they **take over**, **take over** as something, or **take over** from someone.

*Carlos Ortega will be **taking over** as sales manager next year.  
Ortega **took over** from Margaret Cummings, who had been the sales manager for 14 years.*

**takeover** *n.* When people who are elected, appointed, or hired take control of a country, state, city, business, school, building, and so on, and replace the people in control, a **takeover** occurs.

*After the **takeover**, the new president made a lot of changes.*

**4. take over** (for) *p.v.* When you start to do a job or some work that other people are doing in order to allow them to take a break or because the previous shift has ended and a new shift has begun, you **take over**. When you assume an obligation or accept responsibility from someone, you **take it over**.

*We work from 4:00 P.M. to midnight, and then the night shift **takes over**.  
When Linda was sick she couldn't care for her children, so her sister **took over** for her until she was well again.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	wipe out	wiping out	wiped out	wiped out

**1. wipe ... out** *p.v.* When you remove dirt or liquid from the inside of a container with a cloth, sponge, or paper towel, you **wipe it out**.

***Wipe** the microwave **out** — it's got spaghetti sauce inside it.  
I **wiped out** the inside of the glasses so they wouldn't dry with spots.*

**2. wipe ... out** *p.v.* When you are trying to kill people, weeds, insects, and so on, and you kill all of them, you **wipe them out**.

*An entire regiment was **wiped out** in the battle.  
The general said he would **wipe out** the rebels.*

**wipeout** *n.* A situation in which all people, weeds, insects, and so on, are killed is a **wipeout**.

*The battle was a complete **wipeout**. Not a single soldier survived.*



**EXERCISE 39a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Your pictures are ready and can be \_\_\_\_\_ between 10:00 A.M. and 6:00 P.M.
2. I didn't get the book I wanted because the store was \_\_\_\_\_ of them.
3. There's a lot of confusion about the new policy. We need to have a meeting to \_\_\_\_\_ everything \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The vice-president \_\_\_\_\_ after the president died.
5. Susie, your room is very messy. Come in here and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ right now!
6. Mr. Nelson asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ for Lydia while she's on vacation.
7. Sales of air conditioners always \_\_\_\_\_ in the spring.
8. If we get a bigger antenna, we might be able to \_\_\_\_\_ a lot more stations \_\_\_\_\_.
9. It took me an hour to \_\_\_\_\_ everything for the beef stew.
10. The soldiers were ordered to \_\_\_\_\_ the rebels.
11. Sally called and asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ a few things on the way home.
12. A country this small could be \_\_\_\_\_ in a few days.
13. I wish I hadn't \_\_\_\_\_ on bread. Now I can't finish my dinner.
14. I'm going to play golf with Charles next week. He's really good, so maybe I can \_\_\_\_\_ a few ways to improve my game.
15. The theater \_\_\_\_\_ ten minutes before the start of the opera.
16. My car's frame was so badly damaged in the accident that there was no way it could be \_\_\_\_\_.
17. You don't need to take any money to the restaurant. Karen said she would \_\_\_\_\_ the check.
18. Don't just clean the outsides of the desks. \_\_\_\_\_ the insides \_\_\_\_\_, too.
19. I'll be arriving at 3:40 A.M. Would \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ that early be a problem?
20. Hank's giving orders like he's the president of the company. Someone needs to \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.

21. Smoking is a bad habit that I \_\_\_\_\_ in the Navy.
22. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ these canteens before we begin our hike.
23. This couch is really heavy. Can you help me \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_?
24. After you get your paycheck, you can \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ to the cashier to cash it.
25. Can you believe what Hank did? He tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the boss's daughter at the company picnic.
26. I finished page 47 yesterday, so I'll \_\_\_\_\_ on page 48 today.
27. You can \_\_\_\_\_ my name \_\_\_\_\_ the list. I've changed my mind.

EXERCISE 39b — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

1. Have you *chopped up*? (the onions, them)
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
2. You can *cross off*. (Linda's name, her)
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
3. *Fill up* with water. (the aquarium, it)
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
4. I need to *pick up* at the train station. (my parents, them)
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

8. Someone ought to draw a line through Karen’s name on the list. What ought to be done to Karen’s name?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe Karen’s name after someone draws a line through it?
10. Sarah went to the store to buy a CD, but they had all been sold. What did the store do?
11. In Question 10, how would you describe the CDs?
12. Tom tried to buy a ticket for the concert, but all the tickets had been sold. Why couldn’t Tom buy a ticket for the concert?
13. You cut some bacon into very small pieces before you put it on your salad. What was done to the bacon?
14. The laundry closes at 6:00, so Jane has to go there before 6:00 to get her dress. What has to be done to the dress?
15. The copilot flew the plane so that the pilot could eat dinner. What did the copilot do?
16. Todd often asks me to stop at the store and buy a newspaper. What does Todd often ask me to do?
17. I’ll tell Susie not to make the water in the bathtub rise all the way to the top and go over the side. What will I tell Susie?
18. I stopped writing my book at page 94 and later started writing again on page 95. What did I do?

EXERCISE 39d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

bite off, 27	come out, 32	leave out, 32	pull over, 19
blow up, 33	cut down, 23	look over, 21	settle down, 21
break off, 27	hand over, 19	make up, 23	slow down, 24
bring back, 19	knock off, 27	pick on, 21	wear down, 17

1. David’s mother told him she’d like some grandchildren, but he’s having too much fun as a bachelor and isn’t interested in \_\_\_\_\_.



2. I didn't finish my work because I was training a new employee, and explaining everything really \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Bob's doctor told him he was doing too much weight lifting and that he should \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The movie wasn't the same as the novel. Several characters were \_\_\_\_\_.
5. When I caught my 16-year-old daughter smoking cigarettes, I really \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I didn't say you could use my car. \_\_\_\_\_ those keys right now!
7. There must be something wrong with my camera — none of the pictures I took \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Can I borrow your food processor? I promise I'll \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
9. We've been working since 7:00 A.M. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ and finish tomorrow.
10. Everything on the menu looks delicious. I just can't \_\_\_\_\_ my mind.
11. If you don't stop \_\_\_\_\_ me, I'm going to tell Mommy.
12. I told Mark not to pet the lion, but he didn't listen, and his hand was \_\_\_\_\_.
13. He realized he was lost, so he \_\_\_\_\_ his car \_\_\_\_\_ and looked at a map.
14. My son asked me for a motorcycle for his birthday, but I told him no, so he's trying to \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ by asking me again and again and again.
15. I gave my job application to the human resources director, and he said he'd \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and give me a call.
16. Do you have any glue? One of the arms has \_\_\_\_\_ this ceramic doll.

# 40. FOCUS ON: gerund phrasal verbs vs. phrasal verbs followed by the -ing form

We have seen in previous sections that phrasal verbs are sometimes followed by the *-ing* form. We have also seen that transitive phrasal verbs sometimes take gerund objects. At a glance, there seems to be no difference between these two constructions:

*Jim **went away** singing.*  
*-ing form*

*Jim **stuck with** singing.*  
*gerund*

But because a gerund is a verb functioning as a noun, it can be replaced with an ordinary nongerund noun. However, this is not true of the *-ing* form:

*~~Jim **went away** it.~~*

*Jim **stuck with** it.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	blow off	blowing off	blew off	blown off

**1. blow ... off** *p.v. [informal]* When you do not do something that you are supposed to do because you do not want to or because you do not think it is important, you **blow it off**.

*I was supposed to report for jury duty Monday morning, but I **blew** it **off**.*  
*Bob was sick, so he **blew off** helping Marsha fix her car.*

bring up	bring up & brings up	bringing up	brought up	brought up
----------	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

**1. bring ... up** (to) *p.v.* When people bring something from a higher level or position or from south to north to where you are, they **bring it up** or **bring it up** to where you are.

*Would you please go downstairs and **bring up** the package that was just delivered?*  
*The rescue workers **brought** morphine **up** to the injured mountain climber.*

**2. bring ... up** *p.v.* When you introduce a new topic into a conversation, you **bring it up**.

*Last night during dinner, Dad **brought up** the idea of saving money by staying home instead of taking a vacation this year.*  
*You and your big mouth! We were having a great time until you **brought** that **up**.*

**3. bring ... up** (to) *p.v.* When you **bring up** children, you care for them as they grow to adulthood. When you **bring up** children to believe something or to behave in a certain way, you try to teach this belief or behavior to them.

gerund phrasal verbs vs. phrasal verbs followed by the -ing form

Tom was born in Canada, but he was **brought up** in the United States.  
**Bringing** quadruplets **up** is a lot of work.  
I was **brought up** to believe in honesty and compassion.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
burst out	burst out & bursts out	bursting out	burst out	burst out

**1. burst out** *p.v.* When you **burst out** laughing or crying, you begin laughing or crying loudly and suddenly.  
*Heather **burst out** laughing when I fell into the swimming pool.*  
*When Sam heard the news, he **burst out** crying.*

come back	come back & comes back	coming back	came back	come back
-----------	------------------------	-------------	-----------	-----------

**1. come back** (to/from) *p.v.* When people return to a place where you are, they **come back** or **come back** to that place or **come back** from the place where they were before.  
*Todd went to Florida thinking it would be hot and sunny, but he **came back** talking about how cold and rainy it was.*  
*I'm never **coming back** to this awful place again.*

**2. come back** *p.v.* When people, organizations, companies, or athletes overcome difficulties and become successful again, they **come back**.  
*My home team **came back** from last place and won the championship.*  
*Senator Dolittle lost in 1988, but he **came back** to win in 1994.*

**comeback** *n.* When people, organizations, companies, or sports teams overcome difficulties and become successful again, they make a **comeback**.  
*The Bulls were down by 34 points but won the game with an 18-point lead — what a **comeback**!*

**3. come back** *p.v.* When a condition, problem, situation, or activity returns or greatly increases, it **comes back**.  
*I need to see the doctor. The pain in my shoulder has **come back**.*  
*There isn't much chance that smallpox will **come back** any time soon.*

**comeback** *n.* When a condition, problem, situation, or activity returns or greatly increases, it makes a **comeback**.  
*Health officials are concerned that tuberculosis is making a **comeback**.*

**4. come back** *p.v.* When a fashion or fad **comes back**, it becomes popular again.  
*Miniskirts are **coming back** this year.*  
*Western movies and TV shows go out of style and then **come back** every few years.*



**comeback** *n.* When a fashion or fad becomes popular again, it makes a **comeback**.

*I saved all my wide neckties because I knew they'd make a **comeback** someday.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
get off on	get off on & gets off on	getting off on	got off on	gotten off on

**1. get off on** *p.v. [informal]* When you **get off on** something or **get off on** doing something, you find it enjoyable and exciting.

*Sally loves winter sports, and she especially **gets off on** snowboarding.  
Mountain climbing is what I **get off on**.*

go away	go away & goes away	going away	went away	gone away
---------	---------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

**1. go away** *p.v.* When you leave a place or leave a person, you **go away**.

***Go away!** I'm trying to study.  
Mark **went away** not realizing he had left his briefcase behind.*

**2. go away** (for) *p.v.* When you travel for a period of time, you **go away** for this time.

*We always **go away** for a few weeks in the winter.  
Lydia is going to **go away** for a while.*

**3. go away** (to) *p.v.* When you leave your home and live temporarily at another place, such as a school, you **go away** to that place.

*Jane didn't **go away** to school. She went to a school near her home.  
Some young people are nervous about **going away** to school, but others look forward to it.*

**4. go away** *p.v.* When a condition, problem, situation, or activity disappears or greatly decreases, it **goes away**.

*I have a pain in my back that never **goes away**.  
If the rain doesn't **go away**, we'll have to call off the game.*

run around	run around & runs around	running around	ran around	run around
------------	--------------------------	----------------	------------	------------

**1. run around** *p.v.* When you **run around** a place, you run to various parts of it.

*The cat **ran around** the room chasing the mouse.  
The children were **running around** the museum, and the guard told them to stop.*

**2. run around** *p.v.* When you **run around** doing something, you go to various places trying urgently to accomplish something that is important to you.

*The woman was **running around** the store looking for her lost child.  
We **ran around** the house trying to rescue whatever we could from the rising floodwater.*

gerund phrasal verbs vs. phrasal verbs followed by the -ing form

- 3. You started to cry suddenly and loudly. What did you do?
- 4. Hank was supposed to meet with his lawyer in the morning, but he didn't go because he wanted to sleep late. What did Hank do to his meeting with his parole officer?
- 5. The hotel desk clerk didn't tell me he had canceled my reservation by mistake. Instead he invented a lot of crazy excuses that he knew weren't true. What did the hotel desk clerk do?
- 6. Todd's sister was very upset, and he asked what the problem was, but she told him to leave her alone. What did Todd's sister ask him to do?
- 7. Skiing is what Heather likes more than anything. How does Heather feel about skiing?
- 8. Everyone in the factory was busy, so when the delivery truck came, David was forced to unload it by himself. What happened to David?
- 9. Nancy began talking about joining the Peace Corps. What did Nancy do?
- 10. The number of people with malaria decreased, but now the number is increasing every year. What is malaria doing?
- 11. Poverty is a problem that never decreases or disappears. What doesn't poverty do?
- 12. You went on a business trip three weeks ago, and you haven't returned yet. What haven't you done yet?
- 13. Ned had to call his broker immediately, so he ran to various places looking for a telephone. What did Ned do?
- 14. It would be nice to leave this city for a week or two. What would be nice?
- 15. When I was young, my parents taught me to believe in the golden rule. What did my parents do?

EXERCISE 40c — **Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to use either gerunds or the -ing form.**

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_

two-word phrasal verbs with the particle *in* that require *into* when used with an object

13. My son is a good boy. If he was shoplifting, I'm sure someone \_\_\_\_\_ him  
\_\_\_\_\_ it.
14. In my history class we studied the various things that \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ the current situation.
15. The month we spent in Italy was a lot of fun, but it seemed to \_\_\_\_\_  
so quickly.
16. My brother-in-law is so sneaky. He tried to \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ telling him the  
combination to my safe.

# 41. FOCUS ON: two-word phrasal verbs with the particle *in* that require *into* when used with an object

We have seen in Sections 9 and 23 that some two-word phrasal verbs require a second particle when they are transitive, which makes them three-word phrasal verbs. Many phrasal verbs with the particle *in* have a meaning that relates to *entering* or *penetrating*. When what is being entered or penetrated is named, these verbs become transitive; however, this is not done by adding a second particle but by changing *in* to *into*. Another way to look at it is to consider *into* two particles, *in* and *to*, written as one word:

The thief **broke in**.  
The thieves **broke into** the jewelry store.

But this is true only for meanings of the phrasal verb that relate to entering or penetrating, not for all meanings. Some meanings with *in* have no *into* version (and are included in this section), and some meanings with *into* have no *in* version (and are not included in this section). Moreover, sometimes *into* is optional, and the verb can be used transitively with either *in* or *into*.

We see also in this section that there is often a phrasal verb with an opposite meaning with *in* and *into* corresponding to *out* and *out of*:

I **sneaked in**.  
I **sneaked out**.  
  
I **sneaked into** the house.  
I **sneaked out of** the house.



two-word phrasal verbs with the particle *in* that require *into* when used with an object

*That bag is too big for carry-on — you'll have to **check it in**.*

**checked in** *part.adj.* Luggage that has been **checked in** or passengers that have **checked in** are **checked in**.

*Now that we're **checked in**, we can wait in the boarding lounge.*

**4. check in** (with) *p.v.* When you visit or call people briefly and regularly because you want to get or receive important information from them or to make sure that a situation you are both interested in is satisfactory, you **check in** or **check in** with them.

*After surgery, you'll need to **check in** once in a while to make sure the bone is healing properly.*

*If Hank doesn't **check in** with his parole officer every week, the police will arrest him.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	check out check out & checks out	checking out	checked out	checked out

**1. check out** (of) *p.v.* When you pay your bill, return your key, and leave a hotel, you **check out** or **check out** of the hotel.

*There's always a long line of people waiting to **check out** at that time of the morning.  
Mrs. Garcia **checked out** of her hotel and took a taxi to the airport.*

**checked out** *part.adj.* After you have paid your bill, returned your key, and left a hotel, you are **checked out**.

*OK, we're **checked out**. Now let's get a taxi and go to the airport.*

**checkout** *n.* The time before which you must **check out** of a hotel in order to avoid paying for another day is the **checkout** time.

*We can sleep late tomorrow. **Checkout** time isn't until 1:00 P.M.*

**2. check ... out** *p.v.* When you **check** a place or thing **out**, you inspect it carefully or learn more about it.

*That new Mexican restaurant is great — you should **check it out**.  
Hey George, **check out** that car Todd is driving. When did he buy it?*

**3. check ... out** *p.v.* When you **check** people **out**, you investigate them in order to learn more about them. If you say that people **check out**, you mean that the information they have given you about themselves, such as their education and work experience, has been investigated and found to be accurate.

*Applicants for child care jobs should be thoroughly **checked out**.  
Before you give that guy money to invest, you should **check him out**.  
Frank didn't get the job he wanted with the CIA. Some things on his résumé didn't **check out**.*

**4. check out** *p.v.* When you **check out** at a store, you bring the items you want to buy to the cashier and pay for them.

two-word phrasal verbs with the particle *in* that require *into* when used with an object

*I **plugged** my 110-volt TV **into** a 220-volt outlet and ruined it.*  
*This phone isn't broken; you just forgot to **plug** the phone cord **in**.*

**plugged in** *part.adj.* When an electrical device is connected to an electrical outlet, it is **plugged in**.

*Be careful with that iron — it's **plugged in**.*

Infinitive			
	present tense	-ing form	past tense
sneak in	sneak in & sneaks in	sneaking in	sneaked in

**1. sneak in/into** *p.v.* When you enter a place without anyone seeing or hearing you, you **sneak in** or **sneak into** the place.

*When I was a kid I used to **sneak into** the movie theater through the emergency exit.*  
*If you don't have a ticket for the game, you'll have to **sneak in**.*

sneak out	sneak out & sneaks out	sneaking out	sneaked out
-----------	------------------------	--------------	-------------

**1. sneak out** (of) *p.v.* When you leave a place without anyone seeing or hearing you, you **sneak out** or **sneak out** of the place.

*Susie's father told her to stay upstairs in her room, but she **sneaked out** through the window.*  
*The principal caught me **sneaking out** of my chemistry class.*

EXERCISE 41a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Close the door! You're \_\_\_\_\_ the bugs \_\_\_\_\_.
2. One of the students \_\_\_\_\_ and stole the answers for the final exam.
3. My grandfather always \_\_\_\_\_ a new car by not driving it over 50 miles per hour until it had gone 1,000 miles.
4. Mark told me he bought a new computer. Let's go to his house and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
5. My laptop computer is in this bag, so I think it would be better to keep it with me on the flight than to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
6. These speakers \_\_\_\_\_ sockets in the back of the stereo.
7. Are you sure this is the right key for this lock? It won't \_\_\_\_\_.
8. When I'm away on a business trip, I always \_\_\_\_\_ with my office every morning.

9. I was late for class, so I waited until the teacher wasn't looking and \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The soldiers were ordered to \_\_\_\_\_ and capture the enemy position.
11. I don't trust that guy my daughter wants to marry. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Dinner is being served. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ the dining room.
13. There's a crack in the basement wall that's \_\_\_\_\_ water.
14. At the supermarket you can \_\_\_\_\_ in the express line only if you have fewer than 15 items.
15. We'll \_\_\_\_\_ the Grand Hotel on Wednesday.
16. After a week at the hotel, we'll \_\_\_\_\_ and go home.
17. Any burglar who tries to \_\_\_\_\_ my house is going to get a big surprise — I've got three big dogs that aren't very friendly.
18. I \_\_\_\_\_ only 15 minutes before my flight time, and I almost missed the plane.

**EXERCISE 41b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Janice entered the house quietly so that no one would hear her. What did Janice do?
2. Lydia unlocked the door so that her brother could enter the house. What did Lydia do?
3. Ms. Cummings paid her hotel bill and left. What did Ms. Cummings do?
4. In Question 3, Ms. Cummings had to leave the hotel before noon so that she would not have to pay for another day. What is noon at the hotel?
5. The window of Nancy's house was broken, and her jewelry, TV, and computer were gone. What happened to Nancy's house?
6. In Question 5, what happened at Nancy's house?
7. When I arrive at the airport, I'll give my ticket to the agent, and she'll give me a boarding pass. What will I do at the airport?



two-word phrasal verbs with the particle *in* that require *into* when used with an object

- 8. In Question 7, where will I go in the airport?
- 9. The room is full of cigarette smoke, and Karen doesn't want to enter it. What doesn't Karen want to do?
- 10. I saw an interesting house with a "for sale" sign on Pine Street as I was driving home. Tomorrow I'll stop and learn more about it. What will I do to the house tomorrow?
- 11. When Erik flies to Colorado to go skiing, he always gives his skis to the airline agent so that they will be put in the baggage compartment. What does Erik always do with his skis?
- 12. In Question 11, how would you describe Erik's skis after he gives them to the airline agent?
- 13. You opened the window quietly, when no one was looking, and left your house. What did you do?
- 14. Mr. Baker hasn't arrived at his hotel and arranged for a room yet. What hasn't Mr. Baker done yet?
- 15. Hank bought a new CD player and connected the plug to the outlet. What did Hank do?
- 16. In Question 15, how would you describe Hank's new CD player?
- 17. Before Ned was hired for his job in a nursing home, the human resources manager at the nursing home called his previous employer and asked questions about Ned. What was done to Ned?
- 18. My feet are killing me. It wasn't very smart to wear new hiking boots that aren't soft and comfortable. Why are my feet killing me?

EXERCISE 41c — **Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.**

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_

**2. get by** (on) *p.v.* When you **get by** or **get by** on a certain amount of money, you continue with your work or continue with your life even though it may be difficult.

*Don't worry about me; I'll **get by** somehow.*  
*It's not easy **getting by** on \$250 a week.*

**3. get by** *p.v.* When something, such as a mistake or a problem, **gets by** you, you do not notice it.

*I've got a great editor. No mistakes **get by** her.*  
*I checked this report twice. How did all these misspellings **get by** me?*

Infinitive

	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
get down	get down & gets down	getting down	got down	gotten/got down

**1. get down** (to) *p.v.* When you move to a lower level or place or from north to south, you **get down** or **get down** to that level or place. **Get up** is the opposite of **get down**. **Go down** is similar to **get down**.

*You're going to fall out of that tree and break your neck. **Get down** right now!*  
*The first thing I did after I **got down** to Miami was go to the beach.*

**2. get ... down** (from) *p.v.* When you **get** things or people **down**, you move them from a higher level or place to a lower one.

*Why do you always put the dishes on the top shelf? I can't **get** them **down**.*  
*The firefighters **got** the people **down** from the roof of the burning building.*

**3. get down** *p.v.* When you bend your body and lower your head to avoid danger or to prevent people from seeing you, you **get down**.

*When the enemy soldiers started shooting, the sergeant ordered his men to **get down**.*  
***Get down!** If the police catch us here we'll be in a lot of trouble.*

**4. get ... down** *p.v.* When things or people **get** you **down**, they make you sad or depressed.

*Don't let your troubles **get** you **down**. Everything will be all right.*  
*Jim's marriage problems are really **getting** him **down**.*

get in

	get in & gets in	getting in	got in	gotten/got in
--	------------------	------------	--------	---------------

**1. get in/into** *p.v.* When you **get in** or **get into** a place, building, room, car, boat, and so on, you enter it.

***Get in** the car! We're going now.*  
*We'd better **get into** the school — the bell's going to ring soon.*

**2. get ... in/into** *p.v.* When you **get in** or **get into** a place, building, club, restaurant, meeting, and so on, you obtain permission to enter. When you **get** other people **in** or **get** other people **into** a building, club, restaurant, meeting, and so on, you arrange for them to enter.

phrasal verbs with get, part 1

**3. get ... out** (of) *p.v.* When you **get** people **out** or **get** them **out** of a place, you take them out or you arrange for them to leave.

*The soldiers were surrounded, so they called for a helicopter to **get** them **out**.  
After Hank was arrested, his lawyer **got** him **out** of jail.*

**4. get ... out** (of) *p.v.* When you **get out** or **get out** of a dangerous, awkward, or difficult situation, you avoid it. When you **get** people **out** of a dangerous, awkward, or difficult situation, you help them to avoid it.

*Erik made a date with two girls for the same night. How is he going to **get out** of this mess?  
You got me into this mess — you **get** me **out**!*

**5. get ... out** (of) *p.v.* When you **get** something **out** or **get** something **out** of a container or place, you remove it.

*Mother's coming for dinner tonight, so let's **get** the good china **out**.  
The videotape is jammed. I can't **get** it **out** of the VCR.*

**6. get ... out** (of) *p.v.* When you **get** dirt or a stain **out** or **get** dirt or a stain **out** of a material, you remove it by cleaning.

*This detergent's ad claims it'll **get** dirt **out** even in cold water.  
Do you think bleach will **get** this coffee stain **out** of my white blouse?*

**7. get out** *p.v.* When information **gets out**, it becomes known to people who are not supposed to know it.

*Be careful — we'll be in a lot of trouble if this information **gets out**.  
There was a huge scandal after the news **got out**.*

**8. get out** (of) *p.v.* When you leave your house and do things that are relaxing and fun, you **get out** or **get out** of the house.

*You work too hard. You should **get out** more.  
Ned doesn't **get out** of the house much. He prefers to stay home and play computer games.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
get over	get over & gets over	getting over	got over	gotten/got over

**1. get over** (to) *p.v.* When you **get over** to a place, you go there. When you tell people to **get over** here, you want them to come where you are.

*Francisco called and he said he needs you to help him with something, so **get over** to his house right away.  
Susie, **get over** here and clean up this mess immediately!*

**2. get over** *p.v.* When you **get over** a problem, illness, or emotionally painful experience, you stop letting it affect you and continue with your life.



*I've got a bad cold. I've been sick for a week, and I still haven't **gotten over** it.*  
*You can't feel sorry for yourself forever — you've got to **get over** it and get on with your life.*

**3. get over** *p.v.* When something happens that surprises you or makes you angry, and you cannot stop thinking about it, you cannot **get over** it.

*I can't **get over** seeing my ex-wife with her new husband.*  
*The coach couldn't **get over** losing the state championship 47 to 0.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
get up	get up & gets up	getting up	got up	gotten/got up

**1. get up** (to) *p.v.* When you move to a higher level or place, or from south to north, you **get up** or **get up** to that level or place. **Get down** is the opposite of **get up**. **Go up** is similar to **get up**.

*Tom, your brother is in the basement. Please go tell him to **get right up** here and start doing his homework.*  
*I haven't **gotten up** to my brother's house in Canada for a long time.*

**2. get ... up** *p.v.* When you **get up** or someone **gets** you **up**, you rise from your bed. When you **get** people **up**, you cause them to rise from their beds.

*I don't usually **get up** until 11:00 on weekends.*  
*I make breakfast. **Getting** the children **up** and ready for school in the morning is Bill's job.*

**3. get up** *p.v.* When you change from a sitting or lying position to a standing position, you **get up**. **Stand up** is similar to **get up**.

*The teacher told the sleeping students to **get up**.*  
*After he hit me, I **got right up** and hit him back.*

EXERCISE 42a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. That bomb might explode. Maybe we should \_\_\_\_\_ a little.
2. As soon as the car stopped, I \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_ and went inside the house.
3. I'll lose my job if this information \_\_\_\_\_, so don't tell anyone.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Jim's death took me a long time.
5. Now the police are outside. Look at all the trouble you've \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_!
6. I thought these pants were ruined after I got ink on them, but this detergent \_\_\_\_\_ the ink right \_\_\_\_\_.

26. If you lose your receipt, \_\_\_\_\_ your money \_\_\_\_\_ for something you bought is usually impossible.
27. Timmy's mother said, "Who said you could leave the table? \_\_\_\_\_ back \_\_\_\_\_ here and finish your vegetables!"
28. Our neighbor called and said, "Your dog is in my garden. \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_!"
29. The situation in that country is very dangerous, so Washington is making plans to \_\_\_\_\_ its embassy staff \_\_\_\_\_.
30. David was so sick he couldn't even \_\_\_\_\_ of bed.
31. It isn't easy to \_\_\_\_\_ this big car \_\_\_\_\_ that small garage.

**EXERCISE 42b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. My father came into my bedroom, shook my shoulder, and told me that breakfast was almost ready. What did my father do?
2. I live in New Orleans, and it's difficult to find the time to travel to Minnesota to visit my sister. What is difficult?
3. After you were arrested for reckless driving, you were in a lot of trouble. What did you do?
4. You need to return to your home very quickly. What do you need to do?
5. After Judy pays her bills, she just barely has enough money to survive until the end of the month. What can Judy just barely do?
6. If Heather doesn't work harder in her math class, she will not be able to stay at the same level as the other students. What will happen to Heather if she doesn't work harder?
7. It's been five years, but Frank is still sad about his brother's death. What hasn't Frank done yet?
8. I was trapped in my car after an accident, but a rescue worker removed me from my car. What did the rescue worker do?
9. Alex is removing his toy train from the closet. What is Alex doing to his toy train?
10. Carlos is standing on a table so that he can get the toy airplane that he threw on top of the refrigerator. What is Carlos doing?

phrasal verbs with get, part 1

- 11. The sofa was too big, and the movers couldn't bring it inside our new house. What couldn't the movers do?
- 12. There is a huge truck in front of us, and we can't pass it. What can't we do?
- 13. Lydia left the building when she heard the fire alarm. What did Lydia do?
- 14. After getting out of her car, Janice entered it again. What did Janice do?
- 15. Erik's bicycle was stolen, but now he has it again. What did Erik do?
- 16. The pilot had mechanical problems with her airplane, but the controllers on the ground helped her land. What did the controllers do to the pilot?
- 17. Bill called and asked me to come to his house very quickly. What did Bill ask me to do?

EXERCISE 42c, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

brush off, 37	float around, 34	punch in, 30	sneak out, 41
call back, 28	go in/into, 41	punch out, 30	start up, 26
call up, 28	leave behind, 35	run around, 40	
clear out, 32	pick up, 39	sell out, 39	
cross off, 39	plug in/into, 41	sneak in/into, 41	

- 1. There's nothing to eat for dinner tonight. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ some takeout food \_\_\_\_\_ when you come home from work tonight?
- 2. My brother wants to store some of his stuff in my attic, so tonight I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ some of the junk up there \_\_\_\_\_ to make more room.
- 3. If you want to get a ticket for the Super Bowl, you'll need to hurry — they're \_\_\_\_\_ fast.
- 4. When I go on vacation, I want to relax at the beach and \_\_\_\_\_ my worries \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. Ned is worried. There's a rumor \_\_\_\_\_ that someone is going to get fired.
- 6. I can't find the toy my daughter wants for her birthday anywhere. I've been \_\_\_\_\_ all day looking for it.
- 7. I'm going to be late for work. Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_?
- 8. Dan must still be here in the office somewhere. He hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ yet.



9. I haven't talked to Nancy in a long time. I think I'll \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.
10. Nancy was in the shower when I called, but her brother said she'd \_\_\_\_\_ me right \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Are you sure this is the right key? It won't \_\_\_\_\_ the lock.
12. Margaret Cummings decided to leave her job with a big company and \_\_\_\_\_ her own company.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ the theater was easy. One of our friends went inside and opened the fire exit for the rest of us.
14. My father won't let me go to the dance, so I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ after he goes to bed.
15. None of the bad things people say about Charles bother him. He just \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
16. I made a list of people to invite to my wedding, but after I heard all those nasty things Sarah said about my fiancé, I \_\_\_\_\_ her name \_\_\_\_\_ the list.
17. Well, I think I've fixed the vacuum cleaner. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and see if it works now.

## 43. FOCUS ON: modals and present perfect phrasal verbs

Remember that the present perfect is formed with *have* or the contraction *'ve* and the past participle. The only difference is that *has* is not used for the third person singular:

*He has **run up** a big bill.*

*He would have **run up** a big bill.*

The meanings of the modal and semimodal auxiliaries are unchanged in the present perfect, except for *may* and *might*.

### Past speculation and you do not know what happened: *might have* or *may have*

When discussing something that was possible in the past and you do not know what happened, either *might have* or *may have* can be used:

*I wonder where Jim is. He might have **stopped off** at the gym.*  
*I wonder where Jim is. He may have **stopped off** at the gym.*

Because you do not know whether Jim stopped off at the bar, either *might have* or *may have* can be used.

**Past speculation and you know what happened: only *might have***

When discussing something that was possible in the past and you know what happened, only *might have* can be used:

*Climbing that tree was stupid. You might have **fallen out**.*  
*Climbing that tree was stupid. ~~You may have **fallen out**.~~*

Because I know that the person I am talking to did not fall out of the tree, only *might have* can be used.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
blow out	blow out & blows out	blowing out	blew out	blown out

**1. blow ... out** *p.v.* When a flame **blows out** or is **blown out** by a strong wind, it stops burning. When you **blow out** a flame, you use your breath to make the flame stop burning.

*Don't open the window — the candles will **blow out**.*  
*I couldn't light my cigarette. The wind kept **blowing** the match **out**.*  
*The stove isn't working. Maybe the pilot light has **blown out**.*

**2. blow ... out** (of) *p.v.* When something is moved outward away from where it was by an explosion or a very strong wind, it is **blown out** or **blown out** of where it was before.

*The force of the explosion **blew** all the windows **out**.*  
*Look, there's a dead bird. The wind might have **blown** it **out** of its nest.*

**blowout** *n.* When a tire bursts and suddenly loses its air while you are driving, you have a **blowout**.

*Maria had a **blowout** while she was driving, lost control of her car, and hit a tree.*

**3. blow ... out** *p.v.* When a piece of electrical equipment or a fuse **blows out**, it fails because too much electricity is passing through it.

*Don't be surprised if the fuse **blows out** — you have seven lights, your computer, and your TV all plugged into one outlet.*  
*When lightning hit our house, it **blew** all the telephones **out**.*

modals and present perfect phrasal verbs

- 4. I was so angry that when I saw him I *ran up* \_\_\_\_\_ him and hit him.
- 5. George and Tom might have *stopped off* \_\_\_\_\_ New York.
- 6. Maybe they *stopped off* \_\_\_\_\_ Jim’s house in the suburbs.

EXERCISE 43c — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

- 1. The wind *blew out*. (the candle, it)

---

---

---

- 2. They might have *given out*. (the information, it)

---

---

---

- 3. She *ran up*. (a \$4,000 bill, it)

---

---

---

- 4. Can I *try on*? (these pants, these)

---

---

---

- 5. The smell may have *grossed out*. (everyone, them)

---

---

---



EXERCISE 43d — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. Rosa bought a coat, but it’s too small. What should Rosa have done?
- 2. Your car’s transmission finally stopped working after several days of problems. What did your car’s transmission do?
- 3. The price of gold increased a lot very quickly. What would you call this increase in the price of gold?
- 4. Todd didn’t know that the taco he ate at Miguel’s house was made with cow brains. When Miguel told Todd what he had eaten, what must that have done to Todd?
- 5. In Question 4, how must Todd have been?
- 6. The children ran toward Betty very quickly. What did the children do?
- 7. The truck driver wouldn’t have traveled toward Detroit. What wouldn’t the truck driver have done?
- 8. Janice used her breath to stop the kerosene lamp from burning. What did Janice do?
- 9. Stopping Marty from talking is nearly impossible. What is impossible?
- 10. Sally asked her brother how he could have accumulated such a large credit card bill. What did Sally ask her brother?
- 11. David stayed for a couple of nights in Denver before continuing to Las Vegas. What did David do?
- 12. My tire burst while I was driving. What did I have?

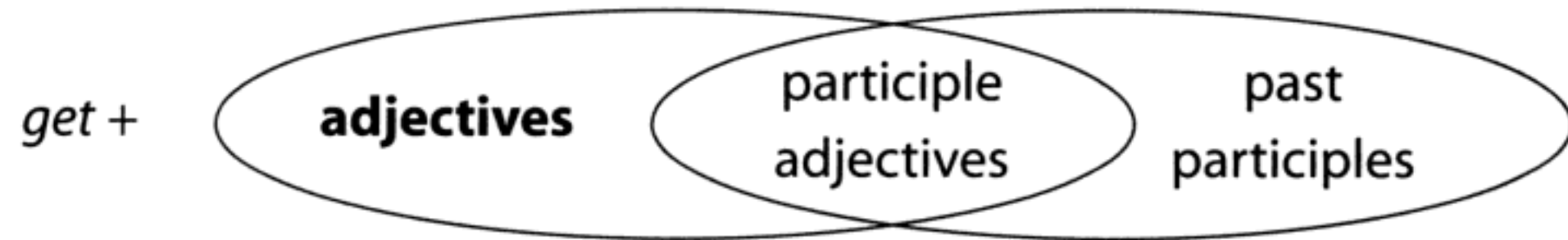
EXERCISE 43e, Review — **Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

broken in, 41	crossed off, 39	plugged in, 41
checked in, 41	filled up, 39	put off, 31
checked out, 41	leftover, 37	rundown, 36
chopped up, 39	let down, 37	sold out, 39
covered up, 37	paid off, 37	straightened out, 39

# 44. FOCUS ON: participle adjectives and passive phrasal verbs with the verb *get*

It is important to understand two different but related uses of *get* in forming the passive voice.

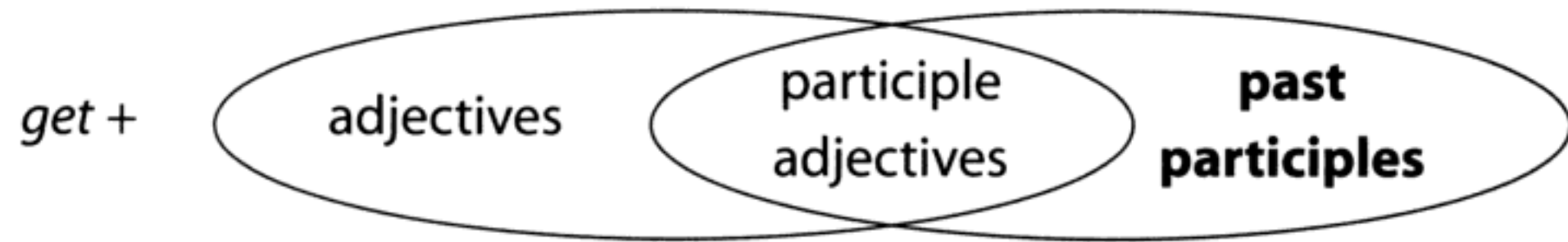
## *get* + adjectives: *get* = *become*



It is very common in English to use *get* followed by an adjective. This is not the passive. In this case *get* is similar to *become*:

*She got sick yesterday.*  
*She became sick yesterday.*

## *get* + past participles: a form of the passive



It is also very common to use *get* in place of *be* to form the passive voice. The construction is the same. *Get* is followed by the past participle:

*Judy got **kicked out** of school.*  
*Judy was **kicked out** of school.*

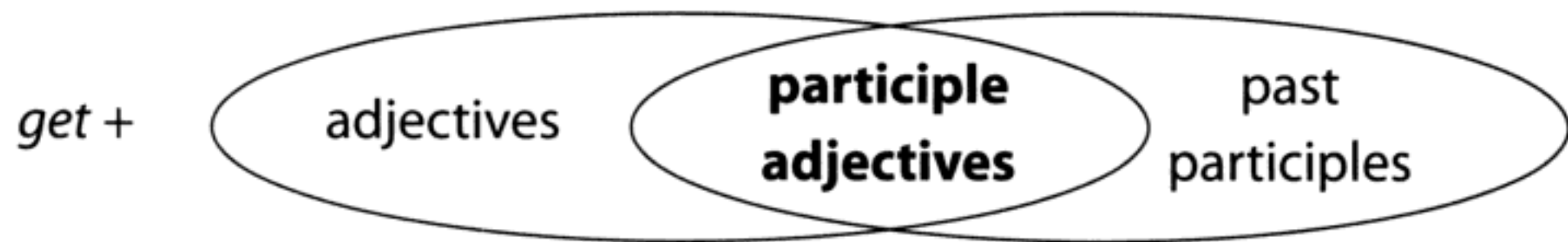
There is a difference, however, between the passive formed with *be* and the passive formed with *get*: When the passive is formed with *get*, there is often (but not always) a suggestion that the subject of the sentence was somehow responsible or partially responsible for what happened:

*Judy got **kicked out** of school.*

A person hearing the sentence above would probably think that Judy did something wrong that resulted in her getting **kicked out** of school. Sometimes, to leave no doubt that the subject is responsible for what happened, a reflexive pronoun is used:

*Judy got herself **kicked out** of school.*

## *get* + participle adjectives: adjective or passive?



As we have seen, in English the past participles of many verbs are used as adjectives. When *get* is followed by a past participle, it is not always clear whether the sentence is passive or whether the past participle is functioning as an adjective:

*I **got mixed up** yesterday.*  
*I **became mixed up** yesterday.*

In the examples above, we can see that the past participle is clearly functioning as an adjective since *get* can be replaced with *become*, but notice that the sentence can also pass the *by* test (discussed in Section 13), which indicates that it is passive:

*I **got mixed up** by all the confusing road signs yesterday.*

Again, we see how closely related adjectives and past participles are in English and how it is not always easy to distinguish between the two. Fortunately, it is not usually very important. What is important is to be comfortable using past participles as adjectives, and the key to doing so is *not* to understand the difference between true adjectives derived from past participles and past participles with an adjective function but instead to understand that there often is no difference.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
	beat up & beats up	beating up	beat up	beaten up

- 1. beat ... up** *p.v. [informal]* When you **beat** people **up**, you hit them or kick them repeatedly.
- The muggers stole my money and then **beat me up**.*  
*Timmy got **beaten up** at school today.*

**beat-up** *part.adj.* When something is in bad condition because of heavy use, it is **beat-up**.

*My car is an old, **beat-up** piece of junk.*

carry away	carried away
------------	--------------

- 1. carry away** (with) *p.v. [always passive]* When you get **carried away** or **carried away** with something, you do more than is necessary or proper because you enjoy it or because you think it is important.
- I was going to make a dozen cupcakes for desert tonight, but I got **carried away** and ended up making 40.*  
*You should always start a new exercise program slowly. If you get **carried away** with it, you might hurt yourself.*

kick out	kick out & kicks out	kicked out	kicking out	kicking out
----------	----------------------	------------	-------------	-------------

- 1. kick ... out** (of) *p.v.* When you **kick** people **out** or **kick** people **out** of a group, place, building, room, and so on, you order them to leave. **Throw out** is similar to **kick out**.



participle adjectives and passive phrasal verbs with the verb get

David cheated and got himself **kicked out** of the game.  
Bob's in our car pool, but he's always arguing with the other guys about something, so we're going to **kick him out**.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
lock up	lock up & locks up	locking up	locked up	locked up

**1. lock ... up** *p.v.* When you **lock** all the doors and windows of a building, you **lock it up**.

*The manager always **locks up** before he goes home.*  
*We **locked** our house **up** before we went on vacation.*

**locked up** *part.adj.* After all the doors and windows of a building have been locked, it is **locked up**.

*You can't get in the house — it's **locked up**.*

**2. lock ... up** *p.v.* When you **lock** people **up**, you put them in prison.

*The police **locked** Hank **up** after they caught him shoplifting.*  
*Whoever committed that terrible crime ought to be **locked up** forever.*

**locked up** *part.adj.* Someone who has been put in prison is **locked up**.

*Being **locked up** in jail was a terrible experience.*

**lockup** *n.* A prison or other place where people are **locked up** is a **lockup**.

*Omar was put in the **lockup** after he was arrested for driving without a license.*

mix up	mix up & mixes up	mixing up	mixed up	mixed up
--------	-------------------	-----------	----------	----------

**1. mix ... up** *p.v.* When you **mix** something **up** that has two or more ingredients, you stir it so that the ingredients will be thoroughly combined.

*Put in the eggs, butter, sugar, flour, and water and then **mix** them **up** well.*  
*An electric mixer will **mix up** the ingredients better than a hand mixer.*

**2. mix ... up** *p.v.* When you **mix** two things **up**, you confuse them with each other.

*Jerry and his twin brother look exactly the same, and everyone **mixes** them **up**.*  
*Newborn babies sometimes get **mixed up** in the hospital.*

**mixed up** *part.adj.* When you are confused about something that you want to understand, or when you have emotional or behavioral problems, you are **mixed up**.

*Can you help me with my calculus homework? I'm really **mixed up**.*  
*Jimmy is a **mixed up** kid who gets in trouble with the police a lot.*

**mix-up** *n.* A mistake, misunderstanding, or confused situation is a **mix-up**.

*Waiter, I think there's been a **mix-up**. I asked you for a chicken salad sandwich, but you brought me a tuna salad sandwich.*

3. Erik promised me that he would come to my house to help me move some stuff this morning, but he still hasn't shown up. He's always doing things like that, and it really \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
4. If Janice doesn't pass her chemistry test tomorrow, she won't graduate with the rest of her class, and worrying about it so much is really \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I got \_\_\_\_\_ of school after I got caught cheating on the test.
6. The robbers \_\_\_\_\_ the shop owner so badly that she had to be hospitalized.
7. Add a cup of water and four eggs to the cake mix and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ well.
8. The night manager forgot to \_\_\_\_\_ when she left the restaurant.
9. The jewelry store \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_. I paid \$5,000 for a diamond ring made of glass.
10. The teacher has two students with the same name, and she always \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.

**EXERCISE 44b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

1. The thugs *beat up*. (the woman, her)

---

---

---

2. The hotel manager *kicked out*. (the rock group, them)

---

---

---

3. The cops are going to *lock up*. (the crook, her)

---

---

---

3. After the new manager \_\_\_\_\_ next month, you can expect a lot of changes.
4. Will you kids \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_, please? I'm on the phone.
5. I told you to stop. If you \_\_\_\_\_ doing that, I'm going to get pissed off.
6. The police think the burglars may have \_\_\_\_\_ through the back door.
7. If you kids go outside to play, \_\_\_\_\_ from that pile of garbage — it's full of broken glass.
8. I need to talk to Jerry about his bad breath, but I'm nervous about \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Dan is so sad about what happened that he can't \_\_\_\_\_ crying.
10. When I went to the car rental office, they had already rented all the good cars, and they \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ a piece of junk.
11. The legislature passed a tough new law designed to \_\_\_\_\_ drunken drivers \_\_\_\_\_ the streets.
12. When you're depressed you should talk to people about what's troubling you, not \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ yourself.
13. I'm broke — do you think you could \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ till payday?
14. Nothing the inventor tried worked, but he \_\_\_\_\_ it until he solved the problem.
15. I can't believe that my daughter would steal money from me. That awful boyfriend of hers must have \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_ it.
16. Jane did very well in her first semester of college. I hope she can \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ for the next four years.



45. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with the verb turn

Many phrasal verbs are based on the verb *turn*. In most cases, phrasal verbs with *turn* involve two options and a change from one option to the other or, when it is possible, a move closer to one option and farther away from the other. In other words, choosing either A or B or, when it is possible to be somewhere between A and B, moving closer to A and farther away from B, or vice versa.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
turn down	turn down & turns down	turning down	turned down	turned down

1. **turn ... down** *p.v.* When you **turn down** an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to decrease the level of what it is producing or doing. **Turn up** is the opposite of **turn down**.

*Could you **turn** the radio **down**? I'm trying to sleep.*  
*If it gets too cold, I'll **turn down** the air conditioner.*

2. **turn ... down** *p.v.* When you deny a request, you **turn down** the request or **turn down** the person who has made the request.

*I asked Nancy to go to the dance with me, but she **turned me down**.*  
*My request for a pay raise was **turned down**.*  
*Getting **turned down** every time I apply for a job is getting me down.*

turn in	turn in & turns in	turning in	turned in	turned in
---------	--------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

1. **turn ... in** (to) *p.v.* When you inform the police that certain people have committed crimes or tell the police where they are, you **turn them in** or **turn them in** to the police.

*The escaped prisoner got tired of running and **turned himself in**.*  
*When Jake told me that he had murdered Luis, I knew I had to **turn him in** to the police.*

2. **turn ... in** (to) *p.v.* When you return something that was given to you by a person in authority, you **turn** that thing **in** or **turn it in** to a person in authority. **Hand in** is similar to **turn in**.

*The police officer was ordered to **turn in** her badge after she was caught taking a bribe.*  
*The delivery truck drivers have to **turn** their keys **in** to the dispatcher before they go home.*

3. **turn ... in** (to) *p.v.* When you complete a test, report, or project and you give it to the person who assigned the work to you, you **turn it in** or **turn it in** to the person who assigned the work. **Hand in** is similar to **turn in**.

Melanie asked her teacher if she could **turn** her project **in** late.  
I have to finish this report and **turn it in** to the sales manager by tomorrow.

4. **turn in** p.v. When you go to bed, you **turn in**.

I'm really tired. I'm going to **turn in** early.  
It's getting late. I'm **turning in**.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
turn into	turn into & turns into	turning into	turned into	turned into

1. **turn into** p.v. When something **turns into** something else, it becomes that thing.

It was cold and rainy this morning, but it **turned into** a nice day.  
It's amazing that this small seed can **turn into** a huge tree.

2. **turn ...into** p.v. When you **turn** something **into** something else, you change it into that thing.

The Youngs are thinking of **turning** their house in the country **into** a hotel.  
The children **turned** the big box **into** a playhouse.

turn off	turn off & turns off	turning off	turned off	turned off
----------	----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

1. **turn ...off** p.v. When you **turn off** an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to stop it from producing or doing something. **Turn on** is the opposite of **turn off**. **Switch off** and **shut off** are similar to **turn off**.

Would you **turn** the light **off**? I want to go to bed.  
When I'm driving and have to wait for a long freight train to pass, I always **turn** my car **off**.

**turned off** part.adj. After you have changed the controls of an electrical or mechanical device to stop it from producing or doing something, it is **turned off**. **Turned on** is the opposite of **turned off**. **Switched off** and **shut off** are similar to **turned off**.

I can't see anything — the lights are **turned off**.

2. **turn ...off** p.v. [informal] Something that **turns** you **off** offends you and causes you to lose interest in something or someone. Something about a person of the opposite sex that **turns** you **off** causes you to lose sexual or romantic interest in that person. **Turn on** is the opposite of **turn off**.

When I met Dan I thought he was a nice guy, but his racist jokes **turned** me **off**.  
I got **turned off** when she lit a cigarette.

**turned off** part.adj. When something about a person of the opposite sex causes you to lose sexual or romantic interest in that person, you are **turned off**. **Turned on** is the opposite of **turned off**.

What's wrong with Nicole? She was having a good time with Frank a little while ago, but now she seems kind of **turned off**.

- 23. A huge crowd is expected to \_\_\_\_\_ at the airport to welcome the returning Stanley Cup champions.
- 24. This company has been \_\_\_\_\_ first-rate merchandise for a hundred years.
- 25. I told the teacher that I'd been in the hospital and wouldn't be able to \_\_\_\_\_ my project on time.
- 26. We've had one problem after another — this is \_\_\_\_\_ to be a bad day.
- 27. When Jake told his mother that he had murdered someone, she told him he had to \_\_\_\_\_ himself \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 45b — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. Caterpillars become butterflies. What do caterpillars do?
- 2. Dan appeared at his uncle's funeral. What did Dan do?
- 3. Frank was thinking of asking Jane for a date, but when he saw her smoking one cigarette after another, he changed his mind. What did Jane's smoking do to Frank?
- 4. In Question 3, what does Frank think smoking is?
- 5. In Question 3, how did Frank feel when he saw Jane smoking?
- 6. Whenever my wife wears my favorite perfume, I feel romantic. What does the perfume do to me?
- 7. In Question 6, what do I think the perfume is?
- 8. In Question 6, how do I feel whenever my wife wears my favorite perfume?
- 9. You're changing the controls of the heater to make it warmer. What are you doing?
- 10. The rate at which old employees are replaced with new employees in my company is very low. What is very low at my company?
- 11. This factory manufactures 25,000 cars every year. What does the factory do?



phrasal verbs with the verb turn

- 12. Nicole didn't change the controls of her radio to make it louder. What didn't Nicole do?
- 13. The detective asked every bank employee a lot of questions about the missing money, but she hasn't discovered anything. What hasn't the detective done?
- 14. After the gas station went out of business, it was sold and changed into a Chinese restaurant. What happened to the gas station?
- 15. Sally wanted to dye her hair red, but it became orange. What did Sally's hair do?
- 16. Karen's father asked her if he could borrow enough money to pay his property taxes, and Karen couldn't say no to him. What couldn't Karen do?
- 17. Todd's company will probably make \$4 million this year. What will Todd's company probably do this year?
- 18. Ned hasn't given his paper to his teacher. What hasn't Ned done?
- 19. Lydia knows that her brother robbed a bank, but she's not going to tell the police. What isn't Lydia going to do to her brother?
- 20. So many people attended the political rally that there wasn't enough room in the auditorium. Why wasn't there enough room at the political rally?
- 21. In Question 20, the number of people who attended the rally was large. What was large?
- 22. David was too lazy to wash the rug, so he put the dirty side on the bottom and the clean side on the top. What did David do to the rug?

EXERCISE 45c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 45d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

beat up, 44	get by, 42	get over, 42	lock up, 44
carry away, 44	get down, 42	get up, 42	run up, 43
get back, 42	get in/into, 42	gross out, 43	stop off, 43
get behind, 42	get out, 42	head toward, 43	try on, 43

1. I lost a very expensive gold watch, and I'll be very surprised if I ever \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I had dinner with some friends, and we \_\_\_\_\_ a \$500 bill.
3. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ to see your parents in Alaska lately?
4. I should have \_\_\_\_\_ these pants \_\_\_\_\_ before buying them — they're too small.
5. Carlos was hitting his brother Alex, so Alex said to Carlos, "\_\_\_\_\_ of here!"
6. I called my brother in Miami and told him that I was leaving Boston at 8:40 in the morning and that I should \_\_\_\_\_ there around 1:00 in the afternoon.
7. I wish you'd chew with your mouth closed — you're \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Our flight won't \_\_\_\_\_ Santa Fe until after midnight.
9. After I leave Texas, I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ Mississippi.
10. Karen's expecting me for dinner tonight at her house way out in the suburbs, but my car is in the shop. I don't know how I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ there.
11. The night manager has to leave early tonight, so I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ for him.
12. Hank had a fight with a guy at a party and got \_\_\_\_\_ pretty badly.
13. I had a bad day at work, so I \_\_\_\_\_ at the club before going home.
14. Sofia is having a lot of trouble in her history class and is \_\_\_\_\_ further and further \_\_\_\_\_.
15. After her husband died, she had a hard time \_\_\_\_\_ it.
16. You can use my credit card to buy a few things, but don't get \_\_\_\_\_.

46. FOCUS ON: stress in phrasal verbs with the particle *into*

As we saw in Section 6, three-word phrasal verbs are normally stressed on the second, or middle, particle whether they are separable or nonseparable. This also applies to phrasal verbs that convert *in* to *into* when they are used with an object. Although these verbs are not made up of three words, recall that *into* is actually a combination of the particles *in* and *to* — two words written as one. For this reason, it is the first syllable of *into* that is stressed:

*The speakers are **built into** the wall.*

This is also true of phrasal verbs using *into* that do not have an *in* version:

*I **bumped into** an old friend.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
build in	build in & builds in	building in	built in	built in

**1. build ...in/into** *p.v.* When you **build** something **in** or **build** something **into** something else, you put it in the item you are making during its construction or assembly rather than adding it later.

*I told the builder that I wanted him to **build** some shelves **in**.*  
*In the past, FM radios weren't **built into** cars — you had to add one later if you wanted one.*

**built-in** *part.adj.* When something has been put into something else during its construction or assembly, rather than being added later, it is **built-in**.

*The sound from the music system goes to **built-in** speakers in every room of the house.*

bump into	bump into & bumps into	bumping into	bumped into	bumped into
-----------	------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

**1. bump into** *p.v.* When you **bump into** things or people, you accidentally hit them with your body.

*I couldn't see where I was going in the dark, and I **bumped into** the door.*  
*Would you please move these boxes — I keep **bumping into** them.*

**2. bump into** *p.v.* When you meet people unexpectedly or unintentionally, you **bump into** them. **Run into** is the same as **bump into**.

*We **bumped into** Sarah at the mall today.*  
***Bumping into** one of my neighbors while I was in Rome was a big surprise.*



*My father didn't want to let me use his car Friday night, but I **talked** him **into** it.  
This museum is really boring. I wish I hadn't let you **talk** me **into** coming here with you.*

talk out of

talk out of & talks out of

talking out of

talked out of

talked out of

**1. talk ... out of** *p.v.* When you **talk** people **out of** something or **talk** people **out of** doing something, you persuade them not to do it.

*That man was going to jump off the building, but the police officer **talked** him **out of** it.*

*Erik's parents **talked** him **out of** changing his major from business to philosophy.*

**EXERCISE 46a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. My daughter is trying to \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ getting her a pony, but I keep telling her we can't afford one.
2. When I ordered my computer, I had them \_\_\_\_\_ some extra memory.
3. It was a nice surprise to \_\_\_\_\_ Aunt Kathy today. I hadn't seen her in years.
4. Don't tell your mother you're going to shave your head — she'll \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Joe says he's going to quit school, and we can't \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ it.
6. Their sleazy son-in-law \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ lending him \$14,000.
7. It was so dark last night that I \_\_\_\_\_ a tree and broke my nose.
8. Nancy and Tom don't have anything in common — that doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ a happy marriage.
9. Don't trust Marty — he'll \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ your last penny.
10. When the enemy soldiers attacked, we \_\_\_\_\_ the woods.

**EXERCISE 46d, Review — Complete the sentences with these nouns from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

blowout, 43	checkout, 41	mix-up, 44	takeover, 39
break-in, 41	comeback, 40	pickup, 39	wipeout, 39
check-in, 41	lockup, 44	run-up, 43	

- The guy that got arrested didn't have enough money for bail, so he was put in the \_\_\_\_\_.
- The baseball player had a few bad years, but last year he made an amazing \_\_\_\_\_ and had his best year ever.
- Not one person was left alive after the battle — it was a complete \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is two hours before the flight.
- The hotel's \_\_\_\_\_ time is 11:00 A.M.
- There was a tragic \_\_\_\_\_ at the hospital — a patient's healthy left kidney was removed instead of his diseased right kidney.
- The detective asked the store owner for a complete list of items stolen during the \_\_\_\_\_.
- Is this a \_\_\_\_\_ or a delivery?
- After the military \_\_\_\_\_, hundreds of people were arrested.
- Unfortunately, I sold my house before the big \_\_\_\_\_ in real estate prices.
- The truck driver was injured in an accident after she had a \_\_\_\_\_ on the highway.

**EXERCISE 46e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

blow off, 40	give out, 43	lock up, 44	stick with, 40
bring up, 40	go away, 40	piss off, 44	stress out, 44
burst out, 40	kick out, 44	shut up, 43	turn in, 45
get by, 42	let in/into, 41	stand for, 34	turn into, 45

1. Sooner or later he'll get tired of running from the police, and he'll \_\_\_\_\_ himself \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ my children \_\_\_\_\_ to be honest.
3. When we leave our summer home to go back to the city, we always \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ securely.
4. I took three aspirin, but this headache still hasn't \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Do you know what "Ph.D." \_\_\_\_\_?
6. I usually check my work pretty carefully. I don't know how this mistake \_\_\_\_\_ me.
7. Worrying about how I'm going to find the money to pay my taxes is really \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I'm tired of listening to my brother talk about winning \$4 million in the lottery. I wish he would just \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Those new computers are really fast, but I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ the one I have. It's fine for writing letters.
10. The tennis player had to retire when his elbow \_\_\_\_\_.
11. I'm going to talk to my husband about \_\_\_\_\_ the garage \_\_\_\_\_ an apartment for my mother.
12. Joe promised that he'd help me fix my car yesterday, but he never came. He just \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
13. Joe does that sort of thing all the time, and it's very rude. He really \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
14. The door was locked, so I knocked on it again and again until someone \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
15. What did Nancy do to get herself \_\_\_\_\_ of school?
16. When I heard about the crazy thing that Nancy had done at school, I \_\_\_\_\_ laughing.



Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
come in	come in & comes in	coming in	came in	come in

**1. come in/into** *p.v.* When people or things enter a place, room, house, and so on that you are in, they **come in** or **come into** it. **Go out** is the opposite of **come in**.

*Welcome to my house. Please **come in**.*  
*The burglar **came into** the house through the back door.*

**2. come in** *p.v.* When a train, bus, airplane, or ship **comes in**, it arrives. **Get in** is similar to **come in**.

*Do you know when the train from Kankakee **comes in**?*  
*David's plane hasn't **come in** yet.*

**3. come in** *p.v.* When people arrive at the place where they work, they **come in**. **Get in** is similar to **come in**.

*The manager is angry with Linda because she **comes in** late every day.*  
*I called to tell the boss that I was sick and wouldn't be **coming in**.*

**4. come in** *p.v.* When something that a store will sell **comes in**, it is delivered to the store.

*Let's go shopping at Macy's tomorrow. The summer clothes have **come in**.*  
*I couldn't buy that new book I wanted. It hasn't **come in** yet.*

**5. come in** *p.v.* When a thing or skill **comes in** handy, it is something useful that you like to have available when you need it.

*When I travel, I always take a small sewing kit with me; it really **comes in** handy if a button falls off.*  
*I don't know how to speak Japanese, but knowing how to say the numbers and "please" and "thank you" when I was in Japan sure **came in** handy.*

cut back	cut back & cuts back	cutting back	cut back	cut back
----------	----------------------	--------------	----------	----------

**1. cut back (on)** *p.v.* When you **cut back**, or **cut back** on the amount of money you spend, you spend less.

*The President said he was against **cutting back** on spending for education.*  
*My father said that we're spending too much and have to **cut back**.*

**cutback** *n.* A **cutback** is a reduction in the amount of money you spend on something.

*The people who work on the air force base are worried that they'll lose their jobs because of military spending **cutbacks**.*

particles used without verbs

**4. put ...in/into** *p.v.* When you **put** time or effort **in** or **put** time or effort **into** something, you spend time and work hard to accomplish it.

*At the Christmas party, the manager thanked his employees for all the work they had **put in**.*  
*I **put** a lot of time **into** becoming a doctor.*

**5. put ...in/into** *p.v.* When you **put** money **in** or **put** money **into** something, you contribute money to help pay for something or as an investment you hope will return a profit.

*When the check came for dinner, we each **put** \$25 **in**.*  
*I've already **put** \$100,000 **into** this business. I hope it starts making money soon.*

**6. put ...in** *p.v.* When you construct or install something in a building, you **put it in**.

*We're having new carpeting **put in** next week.*  
*Erik and Nancy are thinking about **putting in** central air conditioning.*

**7. put ...in** *p.v.* When you cause people to be in a situation, position, or condition, you **put** them **in** that situation, position, or condition.

*You've **put** Jim **in** a very awkward situation.*  
*Margaret Cummings was **put in** charge of the sales department.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
run out	run out & runs out	running out	ran out	run out

**1. run out** (of) *p.v.* When people or things **run out** or **run out** of a place, room, building, and so on, they leave it very quickly. **Run in/into** is the opposite of **run out**.

*There's Sofia across the street — **run out** and ask her to come over here.*  
*When I opened the door, the dog **ran out** of the house.*

**2. run out** (of) *p.v.* When you do not have any more of something because you have used, consumed, or sold all of it, you **run out** or **run out** of it.

*I'm sorry I can't give you sugar for your coffee — I've **run out**.*  
*Sam was late to work this morning because he **ran out** of gas.*

**3. run out** *p.v.* When something is completely used, consumed, or sold, it **runs out**.

*I played poker last night, and for a while I was ahead by \$3,000. But then my luck **ran out**, and I ended up losing it all.*  
*My brother is too lazy to look for a job. He asks me for money, and when the money **runs out** he comes back for more.*

EXERCISE 47a — **Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. We have a lot of shopping to do, but the store closes in 20 minutes, so let's try to finish before

we \_\_\_\_\_ of time.

2. Michael \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of time \_\_\_\_\_ getting his pilot's license.
3. The government threatened to \_\_\_\_\_ of the cease-fire agreement after the latest terrorist bombing.
4. This little flashlight on my key chain \_\_\_\_\_ handy when it's dark outside.
5. I haven't stopped drinking completely, but I have \_\_\_\_\_ way \_\_\_\_\_.
6. When Timmy's mother saw him outside throwing rocks at cars, she \_\_\_\_\_ and stopped him.
7. We bought a house in Milwaukee, and we're \_\_\_\_\_ it next month.
8. Instead of spending all your money, maybe you should \_\_\_\_\_ some of it \_\_\_\_\_ the bank.
9. I'm starting a new job as a secretary next week, so I need to \_\_\_\_\_ on my typing.
10. After my mother died, I asked my father to \_\_\_\_\_ with me.
11. I'll be waiting for you at the station when your train \_\_\_\_\_.
12. All these problems are \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ a bad mood.
13. How much money are you going to \_\_\_\_\_ this investment fund?
14. We're very busy at work, so my boss asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ early tomorrow.
15. I need to find a new place to live soon. I have to \_\_\_\_\_ of the place I'm in now by the end of the month.
16. These computers are being sold at 15 percent off the regular price for three days only, so hurry before time \_\_\_\_\_.
17. Linda hired a carpenter to \_\_\_\_\_ some shelves \_\_\_\_\_ her son's room.
18. We lost the key for the front door, so everyone's been \_\_\_\_\_ through the back door all day.
19. Since Jim lost his job, we've had to \_\_\_\_\_ a lot on our spending.



Let’s compare a present perfect active sentence containing a modal with a present perfect passive sentence containing a modal:

- active: Jane might have **switched on** the light.
- passive: The light might have been **switched on**.

As we have seen, the object of the active sentence becomes the subject of the passive sentence. Also, there is no object in the passive sentence, so the passive phrasal verb cannot be separated. The object of the active sentence can be used in a *by* phrase:

- active: Jane might have **switched on** the light.
- passive: The light might have been **switched on** (by Jane).

And once again we see that it is not always easy to distinguish between a past participle:

*The burglar alarm must have been **switched off** (by the night manager because he’s the only one with a key).*

and a participle adjective:

*The burglar alarm must have been **switched off** (because if it had been on, everyone in the neighborhood would have heard it when the burglars smashed the window of the jewelry store).*

Infinitive

	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
close down	close down & closes down	closing down	closed down	closed down

**1. close ... down** *p.v.* When you **close down** a business or a business is **closed down**, it closes permanently or for a long time.

- The restaurant was **closed down** by the health department.*
- The ski resort will **close down** for the summer on May 1.*

knock out

	knock out & knocks out	knocking out	knocked out	knocked out
--	------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

**1. knock ... out** *p.v.* When you **knock** people **out**, you hit them hard enough to cause them to lose consciousness. When people are **knocked out**, they are hit by someone or something hard enough to cause them to lose consciousness.

- The boxer **knocked** his opponent **out** with a blow to the head.*
- David fell and hit his head on the sidewalk so hard that it **knocked** him **out**.*

**knockout** *n.* A hit hard enough to cause someone to lose consciousness is a **knockout**.

*At the count of ten the referee declared a **knockout**.*

**2. knock ... out** *p.v.* If something **knocks** you **out**, it impresses or surprises you a lot.

Tom’s new house is fabulous! It really **knocked me out**.  
The Youngs’ daughter is only 12 and she’s already in college? That just **knocks me out**.

**knockout** *n.* A **knockout** is something that impresses or surprises you a lot.

Have you seen Erik’s new girlfriend? She’s a real **knockout**.

**3. knock ... out** *p.v.* When you try very hard to please other people, you **knock** yourself **out** or **knock** yourself **out** to do something.

Marsha’s Thanksgiving dinner was fabulous. She really **knocked herself out**.  
Thanks for inviting me to spend the weekend with you, but don’t **knock** yourself **out** — I don’t mind sleeping on the couch.

**4. knock ... out** *p.v.* When soldiers **knock out** a piece of the enemy’s equipment, they destroy it or damage it enough so that it no longer operates.

The enemy radar installation was **knocked out** by a 500-pound bomb.  
I can’t contact headquarters. I think our communications system might have been **knocked out** during the attack.

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
look down on	look down on & looks down on	looking down on	looked down on	looked down on

**1. look down on** *p.v.* When you **look down on** people, you consider them to be less intelligent, less educated, or from a lower level of society than you.

Some people **look down on** Hank because his father was in prison.  
**Looking down on** people because of things they have no control over is stupid.

look up to	look up to & looks up to	looking up to	looked up to	looked up to
------------	--------------------------	---------------	--------------	--------------

**1. look up to** *p.v.* When you **look up to** people, you admire and respect them.

I’ve always **looked up to** my father because of his honesty and concern for others.  
You should **look up to** people who have overcome difficulties to become successful.

put back	put back & puts back	putting back	put back	put back
----------	----------------------	--------------	----------	----------

**1. put ... back** *p.v.* When you **put** something **back**, you return it to where it was before.

After you finish listening to my CDs, please **put** them **back**.  
Susie, I told you we’re eating dinner in ten minutes, so **put** that cookie right **back**!

**2. put ... back** *p.v.* When something slows the development or progress of project, it **puts** the project **back** or it **puts** the people involved in the project **back**.

The hurricane **put** the hotel construction project **back** by at least three months.  
I had planned to finish college last year, but being hospitalized for several months **put** me **back**.



**3. put ...back** *p.v.* When you **put back** the date that you plan to do or complete something by, you postpone it.

*The closing on the house I'm selling might have to be **put back** if the buyers can't get their loan approved in time.*  
*The graduation date will have to be **put back** if the teachers strike doesn't end soon.*

**4. put ...back** *p.v. [informal]* When you **put back** alcoholic beverages, you drink a lot of them.

*Did you see how much David was drinking last night? He can really **put it back**.*  
*I'm not surprised he has a hangover — he must have **put back** half a bottle of tequila.*

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
switch off	switch off & switches off	switching off	switched off	switched off

**1. switch ...off** *p.v.* When you **switch off** an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to stop it from producing or doing something. **Turn off** is similar to **switch off**. **Switch on** is the opposite of **switch off**.

*Try to remember to **switch off** the lights when you leave the room.*  
*I **switched** the engine **off** and got out of the car.*

**switched off** *part.adj.* After you have changed the controls of an electrical or mechanical device to stop it from producing or doing something, it is **switched off**. **Switched on** is the opposite of **switched off**. **Turned off** is similar to **switched off**.

*Last night the light in the hallway was **switched off**, and I fell down the stairs.*

switch on	switch on & switches on	switching on	switched on	switched on
-----------	-------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

**1. switch ...on** *p.v.* When you **switch on** an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to make it start producing or doing something. **Turn on** is similar to **switch on**. **Switch off** is the opposite of **switch on**.

*Push this button to **switch** the computer **on**.*  
*The sign should have been **switched on** by the manager in the morning.*

**switched on** *part.adj.* After you have changed the controls of an electrical or mechanical device to make it start producing or doing something, it is **switched on**. **Switched off** is the opposite of **switched on**. **Turned on** is similar to **switched on**.

*When I drove by the restaurant, I noticed that the sign wasn't **switched on**.*

throw out	throw out & throws out	throwing out	threw out	thrown out
-----------	------------------------	--------------	-----------	------------

**1. throw ...out** *p.v.* When you **throw** something **out**, you dispose of it by putting it in the wastebasket, trash, and so on. **Throw away** is the same as **throw out**.

*I can't find some important papers. I think they might've been accidentally **thrown out**.*  
*Don't **throw** that newspaper **out** — I haven't read it yet.*



**2. throw ... out** (of) *p.v.* When you **throw** people **out** or **throw** people **out** of a group, place, building, or room, you order them to leave. **Kick out** is similar to **throw out**.

*Frank started a fight and got **thrown out** of the party.*

*I haven't paid the rent in six months, and I'm worried that the sheriff will come and **throw us out**.*

**EXERCISE 48a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. We might \_\_\_\_\_ our wedding \_\_\_\_\_ until September so that Rosa's parents can attend.
2. Please \_\_\_\_\_ the lights \_\_\_\_\_. I'm trying to sleep.
3. Bob was \_\_\_\_\_ when the baseball hit him in the head.
4. When I was a little girl, I \_\_\_\_\_ my grandfather and wanted to be like him.
5. Sam must have \_\_\_\_\_ three gin and tonics in about a half an hour last night.
6. It's cold in here — the air conditioner shouldn't have been \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Mrs. Flores was so angry with her husband that she \_\_\_\_\_ him right \_\_\_\_\_ of the house.
8. My wife thinks I forgot our anniversary again, so she's going to be \_\_\_\_\_ when I give her this gold bracelet.
9. The blizzard has \_\_\_\_\_ our efforts to find the crashed plane, but we'll keep looking until we find it.
10. I'm tired of looking at all this junk — why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_?
11. Citizens of the neighborhood have demanded that the noisy bar be \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Charles \_\_\_\_\_ anyone who comes from the poor side of town.
13. If you're finished with these tools, \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
14. The soldier used a bazooka to \_\_\_\_\_ an enemy tank.

15. Timmy’s mother planned a really nice birthday party for Timmy and all his friends. She really \_\_\_\_\_ herself \_\_\_\_\_.

EXERCISE 48b — **Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

1. The health department should *close down*. (the restaurant, it)

2. General Johnston had to *put back*. (the attack, it)

3. Have you *switched on*? (the TV, it)

4. Are you going to *switch off*? (the lights, them)

5. *Throwing out* is going to be a big job. (all this junk, it)

modals and present perfect passive phrasal verbs

EXERCISE 48c — **Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

- 1. The judge’s decision has slowed our fight for justice. What has the judge’s decision done to us?
- 2. Jim respects his uncle and wants to be like him. What does Jim do to his uncle?
- 3. Todd was really amazed at how good Erik’s new book is. What did Erik’s book do to Todd?
- 4. In Question 3, what would Todd call Erik’s book?
- 5. You pushed the button on the remote, and now the TV is on. What did you do to the TV?
- 6. In Question 5, how would you describe the TV after I pushed the button on the remote?
- 7. The lights were on, but they’re not on anymore. What must have been done to the lights?
- 8. In Question 7, how would you describe the lights now?
- 9. The restaurant owner will be ordered to close his restaurant permanently. What will be done to the restaurant?
- 10. Charles thinks people from that part of town are low-class. What does Charles do to people from that part of town?
- 11. Joe would have been ordered to leave his house if he hadn’t paid his late mortgage payments. What would have happened to Joe if he hadn’t paid his late mortgage payments?

EXERCISE 48d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these nouns from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

carryout, 28	lookout, 29	turnoff, 45	turnover, 45
cutback, 47	make-up, 23	turn-on, 45	rip-off, 44
falling-out, 32	pullout, 47	turnout, 45	runaround, 40

- 1. Heather kind of liked Ann’s brother until she saw him smoking. To her that’s a big \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. The Senate voted against a \_\_\_\_\_ in spending for AIDS research.
- 3. Lydia doesn’t want anyone to take pictures of her without her \_\_\_\_\_ on.
- 4. Bill thinks that Nicole’s short skirt is a \_\_\_\_\_.



- 5. The soldiers were ordered to prepare for a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. I hate cooking, so we eat \_\_\_\_\_ food almost every night.
- 7. I've gone to every office in City Hall about my problem, but no will help me. They just give me the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. The company's high \_\_\_\_\_ rate is one reason why it lost money last year.
- 9. Can you believe the frames for these glasses cost \$300? What a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10. One thief broke into the store while the other stayed outside as a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 11. The \_\_\_\_\_ for the parade would have been a lot bigger if it hadn't been raining.
- 12. George had a \_\_\_\_\_ with his brother and hasn't spoken with him for 15 years.

EXERCISE 48e, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

blow out, 43	con into, 46	pull out, 47	talk into, 46
brush up, 47	con out of, 46	put in/into, 47	talk out of, 46
bump into, 46	move in/into, 47	stick out, 32	turn over, 45
carry away, 44	move out, 47	stress out, 44	turn up, 45

- 1. Your work isn't very good. You ought to \_\_\_\_\_ more effort \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 2. I was so mad at my boss that I almost quit my job. Fortunately, my wife \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 3. Did you see Mike's house? He said he was going to put a few Christmas tree lights on the roof, but there must be 5,000. I guess he got \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. Don't let that dishonest mechanic \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ any money for unnecessary car repairs.
- 5. France was a member of NATO until it \_\_\_\_\_ in 1966.
- 6. Don't quit now, we're almost finished. You've just got to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ for a little while longer.
- 7. What a surprise! I \_\_\_\_\_ Bob at the train station yesterday. I hadn't seen him in years.

8. The police acted on a tip that the suspect would be at the bus station on Saturday morning, but he didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
9. If you're not careful that crook will \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ selling him your land for a lot less than it's worth.
10. Mike used to speak Arabic pretty well, but he ought to \_\_\_\_\_ before he goes to Egypt.
11. How could I have been \_\_\_\_\_ doing something stupid?
12. The apartment has been cleaned and painted. You can \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_ any time you want.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_. I want to see what's on the other side.
14. Living with Sam is driving me crazy — I have to \_\_\_\_\_.
15. After you make a wish you can \_\_\_\_\_ the candles.
16. Living in a house with seven dogs is really \_\_\_\_\_ my cat \_\_\_\_\_.

## 49. FOCUS ON: combinations of *get*, *right*, *back*, and *to*

The focus of this section is an expanded definition of the two-word phrasal verb **get to** and the three-word phrasal verb **get back to**. The purpose is to try to make some sense out of a seemingly limitless number of idiomatic combinations of *get*, *to*, and various particles and adverbs, in particular *right* and *back*, and to demonstrate that many phrasal verbs comprised of *get* and a particle are actually variations of **get to** that can be modified with *right* and/or *back*.

Remember that *back* is sometimes part of a phrasal verb and sometimes an adverb used to modify a phrasal verb (review Section 26), although we will see that there is often no difference in meaning between the phrasal verb **get back** (to), discussed in Section 42, and the phrasal verb **get to** modified by *back* (**get back to**).

The numbers in the chart correspond with the meanings in the definitions.

### **get to**

1. Although the phrasal verb **get to** is defined here as meaning arrive, it can be understood as the basis for some of the phrasal verbs that were discussed in Section 42:

*Bill got to Peoria.* (Bill arrived in Peoria.)

*Bill got back to Peoria.* (Bill returned to Peoria.)

*Bill got up to Peoria.* (Bill arrived in Peoria from the south.)

*Bill got down to Peoria.* (Bill arrived in Peoria from the north.)

combinations of *get*, *right*, *back*, and *to*

two-word phrasal verb <i>get to</i>			
arrive at a location, reach a level	start	be permitted or allowed to do something	bother, annoy
1  <i>get</i> $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} \textit{right} \\ \textit{back} \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ <i>to</i> _____ a place  basis for:  <i>get</i> $\left(\textit{right}\right)$ <i>back to</i>  <i>get</i> $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} \textit{right} \\ \textit{back} \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ <i>up</i> (to)  <i>get</i> $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} \textit{right} \\ \textit{back} \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ <i>down</i> (to)  <i>get</i> $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} \textit{right} \\ \textit{back} \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ <i>over</i> (to)  <i>get</i> $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} \textit{right} \\ \textit{back} \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ <i>out</i> (to)	3  <i>get</i> $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} \textit{right} \\ \textit{back} \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ <i>to</i> _____ something you want or need to do	5  <i>get to</i> _____ do something	6  _____ <i>get to</i> _____ something someone
<div><i>get</i> <math>\left(\begin{smallmatrix} \textit{right} \\ \textit{back} \end{smallmatrix}\right)</math> <i>to</i> <u><i>work</i></u> a place</div>	<div><i>get</i> <math>\left(\begin{smallmatrix} \textit{right} \\ \textit{back} \end{smallmatrix}\right)</math> <i>to</i> <u><i>work</i></u> something you want or need to do</div>	<div>three-word phrasal verb <i>get back to</i></div> <div>contact someone again</div> <div>1 <i>get</i> <math>\left(\textit{right}\right)</math> <i>back to</i> _____ someone</div>	
2  <i>get</i> $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} \textit{right} \\ \textit{back} \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ <i>to</i> _____ a level, amount, number  basis for:  <i>get</i> $\left(\textit{right}\right)$ <i>back</i> (to)  <i>get</i> $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} \textit{right} \\ \textit{back} \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ <i>up</i> (to)  <i>get</i> $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} \textit{right} \\ \textit{back} \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ <i>down</i> (to)	4  <i>get to</i> _____ doing something gradually		

*Bill **got over** to Peoria.* (Bill arrived in Peoria from the east or west.)  
*Bill **got out** to Peoria.* (Bill arrived in Peoria from the east or from a larger city.)

We see that **get back** (to), **get up** (to), **get down** (to), **get over** (to), and **get out** (to) are variations of **get to** but with additional information. These verbs can be modified with *right*, meaning *immediately*, *quickly*, or *directly* (see Section 10):

*Bill **got right back** to Peoria.* (Bill returned to Peoria quickly.)



**Get to** work has two meanings, similar but not the same. **Get to** work can refer to *an arrival at a place where someone works*:

Ann **got to** work. (Ann arrived at the place where she works.)

But **get to** work (see meaning 3) can also mean *start working*, without any reference to a change of location:

Joe **got to** work. (Joe started working.)

Joe **got back to** work. (Joe started working again.)

Joe **got right to** work. (Joe started working immediately.)

Joe **got right back to** work. (Joe started working again immediately.)

The difference in these two meanings is illustrated by the following sentence:

*I **got to** work at 9:00, but I didn't **get to** work until 10:00, which can be paraphrased as I arrived at my office at 9:00, but I didn't start working until 10:00.*

2. Although the phrasal verb **get to** is defined here as meaning *reach a certain level, number, or amount*, it can be understood as the basis for some of the phrasal verbs discussed in Section 42:

Jane **got to** 120 pounds.

Jane **got back to** 120 pounds. (Jane weighs 120 pounds again.)

Jane **got up to** 120 pounds. (Jane used to weigh less than 120 pounds.)

Jane **got down to** 120 pounds. (Jane used to weigh more than 120 pounds.)

We see that **get back** (to), **get up** (to), and **get down** (to) are variations of **get to** but with additional information.

**Get up** (to) and **get down** (to) can be modified by *back*:

Jane **got back up to** 120 pounds. (Jane used to weigh 120 pounds, lost weight, and then gained it back.)

Jane **got back down to** 120 pounds. (Jane used to weigh 120 pounds, gained weight, and then lost it.)

3. If you start to do something, you **get to** it:

*I'll try to **get to** my homework after dinner.*

If you start to do something, stop doing it, and then later start to do it again, you **get back to** it:

*I'll try to **get back to** my homework after dinner.*

If you start to do something, stop doing it, and then later quickly start to do it again, you **get right back to** it:

*I'll try to **get right back to** my homework after dinner.*

Remember that when both *right* and *back* are used, *right* always comes first:

~~*I'll try to **get back right to** my homework after dinner.*~~

combinations of get, right, back, and to

**2. get on** p.v. When you mount an animal, bicycle, motorcycle, and so on, you **get on** it.

***Getting on** a camel isn't as easy as **getting on** a horse.  
The children **got back on** their bikes and went home.*

**3. get on** p.v. When you enter a bus, train, airplane, ship, and so on, you **get on** it.

*The bus stopped so that I could **get on**.  
Only people who are going on the cruise can **get on** the ship.*

**4. get ... on** p.v. When you **get** an item of clothing **on**, you put it on your body.

***Get** your coat **on**. It's cold outside.  
These gloves are too small. I can't **get** them **on**.*

**5. get on** (with) p.v. When you continue doing something, you **get on**, **get on** with what you were doing, or **get on** with it.

*It's getting late. If we're going to finish this work today we'd better **get on** with it.  
I didn't say you could stop! **Get on** with your work.*

get to

get to & gets to	getting to	got to	gotten/got to
------------------	------------	--------	---------------

**1. get ... to** p.v. When you **get to** a place, you arrive there. When you **get** people **to** a place, you help them to go there or take them there. When you **get to** work, you arrive at the place where you work.

*Sarah left her house at 8:30 and **got to** the beach at 9:15.  
When I **get to** Tokyo, I'll call to let you know I arrived safely.  
Frank got fired because he kept **getting to** work late.  
I went to the restaurant across the street for lunch, and I didn't **get back to** work until 2:30.*

**2. get to** p.v. When things or people **get to** a certain level, number, or amount, they reach it.

*It was very hot yesterday. It must have **gotten to** 100 degrees.  
When I run, I always try to **get to** five miles before I quit.*

**3. get to** p.v. When you **get to** something that you want or need to do, you find the time to do it. When you **get to** work, you start working.

*I didn't have time to do the ironing last night. I'll try to **get to** it tonight.  
Karen finally **got back to** her school project yesterday. She hadn't worked on it for weeks.  
You've wasted the entire morning. When are you going to **get to** work?  
My boss told me to get off the phone and **get back to** work.*

**4. get to** p.v. [informal] When you **get to** doing something, you begin to do it gradually.

*Dad **got to** thinking that maybe we ought to move to Los Angeles and try to find work there.*



After seeing all those strange lights in the sky, I **got to** wondering if maybe UFOs really exist after all.

**5. get to** *p.v.* When you **get to** do something, you are allowed to do it or are able to do it.

Timmy was excited because he **got to** ride a pony.  
I hope I **get to** shake the President’s hand after his speech.

**6. get to** *p.v.* When something **gets to** you, it bothers or annoys you, either psychologically or physically.

Jim’s constant complaining is really starting to **get to** his wife.  
Let’s sit down and rest — this heat is **getting to** me.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
hang on	hang on & hangs on	hanging on	hung on	hung on

**1. hang on** (to) *p.v.* When you **hang on** or **hang on** to something, you hold it tightly so that you will not fall or be hurt. **Hold on** is similar to **hang on**.

I fell off the horse because I wasn’t **hanging on** tightly enough.  
If she’d **hung on** to my hand, she wouldn’t have fallen off the cliff.

**2. hang on** *p.v. [informal]* When you **hang on**, you wait for a short time. **Hold on** is the same as **hang on**.

**Hang on** for a minute — I’ll be right back.  
Judy’s coming to the phone now — can you **hang on**?

start off	start off & starts off	starting off	started off	started off
-----------	------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

**1. start off** (with/by) *p.v.* When an activity or event **starts off**, it begins. When you **start** an activity or event **off** with something, you begin with it. When you **start** an activity or event **off** by doing something, you begin by doing it.

The singer **started** the concert **off** with a song from her latest CD.  
Many speakers like to **start off** a speech by telling a joke.

**2. start off** *p.v.* When people or things **start off** a certain way, they are this way at the beginning of a process that changes them. **Start out** is similar to **start off**.

The day **started off** nice, but it got cold and cloudy.  
I thought the movie was good, but it **started off** kind of boring.

Infinitive				
	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
throw away	throw away & throws away	throwing away	threw away	thrown away

**1. throw ...away** *p.v.* When you **throw** something **away**, you dispose of it by



Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
hold on	hold on & holds on	holding on	held on	held on

**1. hold on** (to) *p.v.* When you **hold on** or **hold on** to something, you hold it tightly so that you will not fall or be hurt. **Hang on** is similar to **hold on**.

*When the horse jumped over the fence, I **held on** as hard as I could.*  
***Hold on** to the rail when you get out of the bathtub — it's slippery.*

**2. hold on** (to) *p.v.* When you **hold on** or **hold on** to people, you hold them tightly to protect them or to prevent them from leaving. When you **hold on** or **hold on** to things, you hold them tightly to protect them or to prevent them from being taken.

*Sam grabbed the robber's legs and **held on** while the guard handcuffed her.*  
*We were **holding on** to each other as the tornado passed.*

**3. hold on** *p.v. [informal]* When you **hold on**, you wait for a short time. **Hang on** is the same as **hold on**.

*Can you **hold on** just a little longer? I'll be right with you.*  
*I've been **holding on** for 15 minutes. I can't wait any longer.*

pay back	pay back & pays back	paying back	paid back	paid back
----------	----------------------	-------------	-----------	-----------

**1. pay ...back** *p.v.* When you **pay** people **back**, you give them money that you borrowed from them.

*Would you lend me \$200? I'll **pay** you **back** next Friday when I get paid.*  
*Mark has never been **paid back** for all his sister's medical bills.*

**2. pay ...back** (for) *p.v.* When you **pay** people **back** or **pay** people **back** for something bad they have done to you, you do something bad to them.

*I'll **pay** that guy **back** for the terrible things he's done to me if it takes the rest of my life.*  
*Jake shot Hank to **pay** him **back** for turning him in to the police.*

take up on	take up on & takes up on	taking up on	took up on	taken up on
------------	--------------------------	--------------	------------	-------------

**1. take ...up on** *p.v.* When you **take** people **up on** an offer, you accept their offer.

*My brother has invited us many times to visit him in Hawaii, and last winter we **took** him **up on** the offer.*  
*Nicole has never **taken** me **up on** my offer to lend her the money she needs for her dental bills.*

Infinitive	present tense	-ing form	past tense	past participle
turn around	turn around & turns around	turning around	turned around	turned around

**1. turn ... around** *p.v.* When you **turn around**, you move a vehicle or your body so that it faces the opposite direction. When you **turn** something **around**, you move it so that it faces the opposite direction.

*Someone called my name, and I **turned around** to see who it was.*

*You should **turn** this house plant **around** so that the other side can get some light.*

**2. turn ... around** *p.v.* When you **turn around** a bad situation, a failing business, a losing game, and so on, you improve it so that it is successful.

***Turning** this money-losing company **around** is going to take several years.*

*The quarterback completed four passes in the last five minutes of the football game and completely **turned it around**.*

**turnaround** *n.* A **turnaround** is a major improvement in a bad situation, a failing business, a losing game, and so on.

*We won the game in a last-minute **turnaround**.*

*This company was losing money, but there's been a major **turnaround** since the new manager took over.*

wear out

**wear out & wears out**

**wearing out**

**wore out**

**worn out**

**1. wear ... out** *p.v.* When something **wears out** or you **wear** it **out**, it becomes damaged or weak from use and age and is no longer usable.

*People who live in the city **wear out** their car brakes faster than people who live in the country.*

*The carpet in the hallway **wore out** and had to be replaced.*

**worn-out** *part.adj.* When something is **worn-out**, it has become damaged or weak from use and age and is no longer usable.

*I need new running shoes. These are totally **worn-out**.*

**2. wear ... out** *p.v.* When something **wears** you **out**, it makes you very tired.

*Playing with his grandchildren really **wore** Fred **out**.*

*Shoveling snow for three hours would **wear** anyone **out**.*

**worn-out** *part.adj.* When something has made you very tired, you are **worn-out**.

*I have to sit down and rest for a minute — I'm **worn-out**.*

**EXERCISE 50a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. I lent Sally \$1,000 last year, but she still hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Children usually get too big for their clothes long before the clothes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_.

3. The company's new CEO promised the shareholders that he would \_\_\_\_\_ the company \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Judy told me that she said all those terrible things about me at work to \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ for stealing her boyfriend.
5. Dr. Wood's new book \_\_\_\_\_ with preventive medicine.
6. Carrying those boxes of books up to the attic \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Like so many things in life, this problem \_\_\_\_\_ money.
8. Jim drove right past Bob's house, so he had to \_\_\_\_\_ and go back.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ to my hand, Susie — it's very crowded here, and I don't want you to get lost.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ that problem yesterday, so you don't need to worry about it anymore.
11. Linda isn't sure who she'll go to the dance with, but she said she might \_\_\_\_\_ Todd \_\_\_\_\_.
12. It was so windy that I had to \_\_\_\_\_ to a signpost to keep from falling over.
13. Mike has invited me to his house for dinner several times, but I've never \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ the offer.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ just a minute! Where do you think you're going?

**EXERCISE 50b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Tom's been waiting for ten minutes. What has Tom been doing?
2. My shoes have holes in the bottom, and now I can't wear them. What happened to my shoes?
3. In Question 2, how would you describe my shoes?
4. The country's economy was bad, but now it's improving. What is the country's economy doing?
5. The main thing that Lydia will consider when she chooses a college is how good the MBA program is. What is important to Lydia in choosing a college?
6. You called Betty and asked her to go to a movie. What did you do?



Keep at it!

- 7. Bill’s baseball team was way behind, but they ended up winning the game. What would you call the game?
- 8. Mike lent Frank \$20, and tomorrow Frank is going to give Mike \$20. What is going to happen to Mike tomorrow?
- 9. Sarah asked me if I would like her to come to my house to help me with my homework, and I said yes. What did I do?
- 10. Ms. Cummings will do whatever she needs to do to solve the problem after dinner. What will Ms. Cummings do after dinner?
- 11. The purse snatcher couldn’t take my mother’s purse because she held it tightly in her hand. What did my mother do to her purse?
- 12. Shampooing the carpet was a lot of work, and it made Janice really tired. What did shampooing the carpet do to Janice?
- 13. In Question 12, how did Janice feel after shampooing the carpet?

EXERCISE 50c — **Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.**

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_

EXERCISE 50d, Review — **Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from this section and previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

beat-up, 44	mixed up, 44	turned off, 45
built-in, 46	pissed off, 44	turned on, 45
clogged up, 49	stressed-out, 44	worn-out, 50
grossed out, 43	switched off, 48	
locked up, 44	switched on, 48	

- 1. Trying to take care of my family and work full-time has made me really \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. You should get rid of those \_\_\_\_\_ shoes and buy some new ones.
- 3. I felt really \_\_\_\_\_ after dancing the merengue with Maria.
- 4. Maria seemed a little \_\_\_\_\_ when she saw my big belly hanging over my belt.
- 5. While I was driving on the interstate, about a billion bugs splattered all over the windshield.  
I was really \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. My car looks pretty \_\_\_\_\_, but it runs all right.
- 7. This sink is all \_\_\_\_\_. We'll have to call a plumber.
- 8. Could you help me with my calculus homework? I don't understand it at all, and I'm totally \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9. You should keep guns \_\_\_\_\_ if there are children in the house.
- 10. Mike's really \_\_\_\_\_ about having to work on Sunday. He was planning to go to the football game, but now he can't.
- 11. All computers today have a \_\_\_\_\_ CD-ROM drive.
- 12. I like to leave the radio \_\_\_\_\_ when I'm not home so that burglars will think that someone is at home.
- 13. It's very hot in here. Why is the air conditioner \_\_\_\_\_?

EXERCISE 50e, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

build in/into, 46	get on, 49	throw away, 49	turn off, 45
clog up, 49	get to, 49	turn down, 45	turn on, 45
get ahead, 49	hang on, 49	turn in, 45	turn out, 45
get back to, 49	make for, 46	turn into, 45	turn up, 45

- 1. Jake was nice when he was a boy, but as he got older he \_\_\_\_\_ a criminal.
- 2. Stop bothering me about washing the dishes. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ it when I have time.

Keep at it!

- 3. The teacher said, "After you \_\_\_\_\_ your tests, you can leave."
- 4. These stereo speakers weren't added later. They were \_\_\_\_\_ right \_\_\_\_\_ the wall.
- 5. Business has been very good; in fact, this may \_\_\_\_\_ to be our best year ever.
- 6. I'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ you — I don't have time to talk now.
- 7. If I had known you wanted those old clothes, I wouldn't have \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. It was getting dark, so I \_\_\_\_\_ the light.
- 9. I've gained so much weight that I can't \_\_\_\_\_ these pants \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10. Having a good education helped me to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 11. \_\_\_\_\_. I'm almost ready.
- 12. It's too hot in here. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ the heat \_\_\_\_\_ a little?
- 13. My father said, "\_\_\_\_\_ the TV \_\_\_\_\_ and do your homework."
- 14. Who put all this stuff in the sink and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_?
- 15. The champagne, flowers, and gourmet dinner \_\_\_\_\_ a very special evening.
- 16. It's hot in here. Who keeps \_\_\_\_\_ the heat?

EXERCISE 50f, Review — **Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from this section and previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

ask out, 50	get ahead, 49	hold on, 50	start off, 49
come down to, 50	get back to, 49	pay back, 50	take up on, 50
deal with, 50	get to, 49	put in/into, 47	turn around, 50
freak out, 46	give out, 43	run out, 47	wear out, 50

- 1. I like to go to the supermarket on Saturday because they \_\_\_\_\_ free samples.
- 2. My teacher said that my project wasn't very good and that it was obvious that I hadn't \_\_\_\_\_ much effort \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 3. Don't lend money to Marty. He'll never \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_.



4. Thanks for inviting me to go sailing with you. I just might \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ the offer someday.
5. Sergeant Jones \_\_\_\_\_ the problem in his usual efficient manner.
6. We're \_\_\_\_\_ of coffee. Can you make some more?
7. Jim likes Maria, but he's too shy to \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Nowadays, it's hard to \_\_\_\_\_ in the business world if you don't know something about computers.
9. Janice was talking to her father on the other telephone line when I called, so she asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ for just a minute while she said good-bye to him.
10. Ann used to have a lot of problems, but she has \_\_\_\_\_ her life \_\_\_\_\_, and now she is very happy and successful in her job.
11. I called the restaurant manager to complain about the bad food we were served yesterday, and she said she would investigate and \_\_\_\_\_ me.
12. Heather was very excited that she had \_\_\_\_\_ go backstage after the concert and meet the band.
13. We had a hard time deciding which of the two houses to buy. We liked both of them, but it \_\_\_\_\_ which one was in a better school district.
14. I'm not as young as I used to be. That 15-mile hike \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
15. I hate walking through cemeteries at night. It really \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_.
16. The president of the company \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting \_\_\_\_\_ by welcoming everyone.

They *burned* it  
*down*.

3. He *called in* Dr. Shapiro.  
He *called* Dr. Shapiro *in*.  
He *called* her *in*.

4. Our teacher *handed  
back* the papers.  
Our teacher *handed* the  
papers *back*.  
Our teacher *handed*  
them *back*.

5. I *set up* the ironing  
board.  
I *set* the ironing board  
*up*.  
I *set* it *up*.

**5d**

1. She *set* it *up*.  
2. It was *set up*.  
3. They're *piling up*.  
4. They're *piled up*.  
5. He *handed* it *back*.  
6. It *broke down*.  
7. It's *broken-down*.  
8. He had a *break-  
down*.  
9. They *burned* it  
*down*.  
10. It *burned down*.  
11. He *broke down*.  
12. He had a *break-  
down*.  
13. She was angry  
because I  
didn't *call in*.  
14. She *set* it *up*.  
15. It's *set up*.  
16. He *broke in*.  
17. You *found out* that  
Ali's excuse was a  
big lie.

**5e**

1. put up with  
2. felt up to  
3. Stay off  
4. come off  
5. looking  
forward to  
6. go along with  
7. threw up  
8. goes in for  
9. talked down to  
10. get ... over with

**6a**

1. coming down with  
2. went through with  
3. come up with  
4. get around to  
5. got ... out of  
6. get ... out of  
7. boils down to  
8. monkey around  
with  
9. get out of  
10. gone back on

**6b**

1. He *went through  
with* it.  
2. You didn't *get  
around* to it.  
3. You told him you'd

*get around* to it  
tomorrow.

4. She *gets* a lot of sat-  
isfaction *out* of it.  
5. She *came up with* a  
way to manufacture  
them more cheaply.  
6. It *boils down to*  
location.  
7. I feel like I'm *coming  
down with* a cold.  
8. You'll *monkey  
around with* it.  
9. You *got* it *out* of her.  
10. She *went back on*  
her promise.

**6c**

1. wrap ... up  
2. plan for  
3. looked ... up  
4. cheated on  
5. look at  
6. finds out  
7. going after  
8. pointed to  
9. put ... to  
10. pile up  
11. handed ... back  
12. burned down

**6d**

1. wrap ... UP  
2. PLAN for  
3. looked ... UP  
4. CHEATED on  
5. LOOK at  
6. finds OUT  
7. GOING after  
8. POINTED to  
9. put ... TO  
10. pile UP  
11. handed ... BACK  
12. burned DOWN

**7a**

1. let out  
2. holding ... up  
3. ran over  
4. let out  
5. cut ... up  
6. pointed out  
7. let ... out  
8. taken in  
9. took ... in  
10. taking ... apart  
11. holding up  
12. took in  
13. hold up  
14. see about  
15. let out  
16. held up  
17. ran over  
18. pointed ... out  
19. ran over  
20. take ... in  
21. take ... in  
22. held up  
23. run over  
24. see about  
25. hold up

**7b**

1. The cook *cut up* the  
meat.  
The cook *cut* the meat  
*up*.

The cook *cut* it *up*.  
2.

The snowstorm *held up*  
air travelers.

The snowstorm *held* air  
travelers *up*.

The snowstorm *held*  
them *up*.

3. Don't *let out* the dog.  
Don't *let* the dog *out*.  
Don't *let* it *out*.

4. The real estate agent  
*pointed out* the  
swimming pool.

The real estate agent  
*pointed* the swim-  
ming pool *out*.

The real estate agent  
*pointed* it *out*.

5. The truck *ran over* the  
man.

The truck *ran* the man  
*over*.

The truck *ran* him *over*.  
6.

I'm going to *take apart*  
the broken  
doorknob.

I'm going to *take* the  
broken doorknob  
*apart*.

I'm going to *take* it  
*apart*.

7. The tailor *took in* the  
pants.

The tailor *took* the  
pants *in*.

The tailor *took* them *in*.

**7c**

1. You're going to *see  
about* changing to a  
different room.  
2. They haven't *held  
up*.  
3. She's going to *take*  
them *in*.  
4. He was *taken in* by  
the salesman.  
5. I was *run over* by a  
car.  
6. He *pointed* them  
*out*.  
7. It *held up* the  
game.  
8. She's *cutting* a piece  
of paper *up*.  
9. They're *holding* it *up*.  
10. She *held* the bank  
*up*.  
11. There was a *holdup*.  
12. You *took* it *in*.  
13. He *took* it *apart*.  
14. It *ran over*.  
15. They *took* you *in*.  
16. He *let* it *out*.  
17. You *ran over* and  
grabbed it.  
18. She *let out* a scream.  
19. It has *held up*.  
20. He *let* them *out*.  
21. He *took* it *in*.

22. It's *running over*.

23. You're *letting* them  
*out*.

**7d**

1. go through with  
2. come off  
3. got out of  
4. get around to  
5. monkeying around  
with  
6. boil down to  
7. figure out  
8. put ... on  
9. went after  
10. gone back on  
11. came up with  
12. looking forward to  
13. dozed off  
14. came down with

**8a**

1. fallen over  
2. burned out  
3. fought back  
4. tear down  
5. work in  
6. pick out  
7. picked out  
8. burn ... out  
9. rung ... up  
10. heard of  
11. fell ... over  
12. burned out  
13. hear of  
14. fight back

**8b**

1. The sheriff *burned out*  
the escaped  
convicts.  
The sheriff *burned* the  
escaped convicts  
*out*.  
The sheriff *burned* them  
*out*.

2. Bill has *picked out*  
a new car.  
Bill has *picked* a new car  
*out*.  
Bill has *picked* it *out*.

3. The clerk hasn't *rung up*  
these CDs yet.  
The clerk hasn't *rung*  
these CDs *up* yet.  
The clerk hasn't *rung*  
them *up* yet.

4. The new owners have  
*torn down* the  
garage.  
The new owners have  
*torn* the garage  
*down*.

The new owners have  
*torn* it *down*.

5. The mayor tried to *work  
in* a tour of the fac-  
tory.  
The mayor tried to *work*  
a tour of the factory  
*in*.

The mayor tried to *work  
it in*.

**8c**

1. He said he wouldn't  
*hear of* it.  
2. It's *burned* itself  
*out*.  
3. He's *rung* them *up*.  
4. They've *picked* it  
*out*.  
5. She couldn't *fight  
back* the tears.  
6. It *burned out*.  
7. It's *burned-out*.  
8. They *fell over*.  
9. It was *burned-out*.  
10. It's *burned out*.  
11. You didn't *fight  
back*.  
12. You've *worked* it  
*in*.  
13. You asked him if  
he's ever *heard of*  
the new seafood  
restaurant in the  
mall.  
14. They *tore* it *down*.  
15. He *fell* all over him-  
self.

**8d**

1. took ... apart  
2. pull through  
3. shown up  
4. ran over  
5. taken in  
6. fall for  
7. cut ... up  
8. held up  
9. pointed out  
10. looked ... up  
11. let ... out  
12. gave in  
13. get ... over with  
14. see about  
15. goes in for  
16. put up with

**9a**

1. give up  
2. broke out  
3. getting along  
4. work up  
5. gave ... up  
6. catch up  
7. hang up  
8. worked up  
9. catch up  
10. get along  
11. gave up  
12. hang up  
13. chickened out  
14. hook up  
15. catch up  
16. broken out  
17. hook up

**9b**

1. on  
2. to  
3. on  
4. of  
5. with  
6. with  
7. of  
8. to  
9. on



## 9c

1. Tonight I'm going to try to *hook up* my fax machine.
2. Tonight I'm going to try to *hook* my fax machine *up*.
3. Tonight I'm going to try to *hook* it *up*.

4. After my accident, I had to *give up* scuba diving.
5. After my accident, I had to *give* scuba diving *up*.
6. After my accident, I had to *give* it *up*.

7. You can *hang up* your coat in the closet.
8. You can *hang* your coat *up* in the closet.

9. You can *hang* it *up* in the closet.

## 9d

1. You want to *catch up*.
2. She has to *give* it *up*.
3. She needs to *catch up*.
4. I was *worked up*.
5. *Hooking up* a computer to a printer is easy.
6. It's *hooked up*.
7. They're going to try to *break out*.
8. It would be called a *breakout*.
9. They don't *get along*.
10. You *gave up* on it.
11. Fights *break out*.
12. He *worked up* the courage to ask his boss for a raise.
13. He didn't *chicken out*.
14. They told him to *give up*.
15. She's *working up* to it.
16. She *hung up* on him.

## 9e

1. heard of
2. piled up
3. put ... to
4. fallen over
5. looked at

6. pick ... out
7. ran into
8. pointed to
9. hand ... back
10. cheating on
11. work ... in
12. fight back
13. rang up
14. found out
15. torn down
16. burned out

## 10a

1. hand ... out
2. screw ... up
3. fallen off
4. gave up
5. screwed ... up
6. laid off
7. growing up
8. kick back
9. went ahead
10. fill ... in
11. go ahead
12. fall off
13. lay off
14. fill ... in
15. kick back
16. fill in
17. Grow up

## 10b

1. grown-ups
2. screwup
3. kickbacks
4. handouts
5. fill-in
6. handout
7. layoffs
8. falloff
9. go-ahead

## 10c

1. You haven't *filled in* all the spaces.
2. You haven't *filled* all the spaces *in*.
3. You haven't *filled* them *in*.
4. Is the teacher *handing out* the tests?
5. Is the teacher *handing* the tests *out*?
6. Is the teacher *handing* them *out*?
7. The company is going to *lay off* my brother.
8. The company is going to *lay* my brother *off*.
9. The company is going to *lay* him *off*.

10. I'm sorry I *screwed up* your plan.
11. I'm sorry I *screwed* your plan *up*.
12. I'm sorry I *screwed* it *up*.

## 10d

1. You *went ahead* with it.
2. She told you to *fill* it *in*.
3. It's *filled in*.
4. She's *screwing* it *up*.
5. It's *screwed up*.
6. I *kick back* \$3,000 to the mayor.
7. It's a *kickback*.
8. She was *laid off*.
9. He *screwed* you *up*.
10. You *grew up* there.
11. It's for *grown-ups*.
12. It will *fall off*.
13. It would be called a *falloff*.
14. She told him to *lay off*.
15. He's *filling in* for Omar.
16. They'll be *handed out*.
17. She *filled* her *in*.

## 10e

1. takeoff
2. breakdown
3. hookup
4. breakout
5. holdup
6. setup
7. put-on

## 10f

1. work up
2. gave up
3. pick out
4. hook up
5. get along
6. talk down to
7. catch up
8. chickened out

## 11a

1. cut ... off
2. back up
3. back up
4. work out
5. backing ... up
6. cut ... off
7. back ... up
8. follows up
9. drop ... off
10. backed ... up
11. wake up
12. work out
13. take out
14. back up
15. worked out
16. works out
17. drops off
18. cut off
19. taking ... out
20. back up
21. cut ... off
22. fell off
23. try ... out
24. woke ... up
25. worked out

26. try out
27. take out
28. worked out
29. cut off
30. took ... out
31. taken ... out

## 11b

1. Did you *back up* your work?
2. Did you *back* your work *up*?
3. Did you *back* it *up*?
4. They're *cutting off* the power.
5. They're *cutting* the power *off*.
6. They're *cutting* it *off*.
7. I *dropped off* Frank at the airport.
8. I *dropped* Frank *off* at the airport.
9. I *dropped* him *off* at the airport.

10. Mom asked me to *take out* the garbage.
11. Mom asked me to *take* the garbage *out*.
12. Mom asked me to *take* it *out*.

13. Alex *tried out* his new bicycle.
14. Alex *tried* his new bicycle *out*.
15. Alex *tried* it *out*.
16. Mike has *woken up* Ali.
17. Mike has *woken* Ali *up*.
18. Mike has *woken* him *up*.

## 11c

1. It's his *backup* camera.
2. It's the *cutoff* date.
3. She's his *back-up*.
4. I gave it a *tryout*.
5. She made a *follow-up* visit.
6. Your *workout* clothes got dirty.
7. You ate *takeout* food.
8. There was a *backup* on the interstate.
9. There has been a *falloff*.
10. She didn't make a *backup*.

11. There's a *dropoff*.
12. You gave it a *workout*.

## 11d

1. They *cut* it *off*.
2. You bought *takeout* food.
3. *Working out* is good for my health.
4. You're going to *try* it *out*.
5. They're letting you give their service a *tryout*.
6. It *cut* them *off*.
7. They were *cut off*.
8. I'm *backing* it *up*.
9. It's a *backup*.
10. She's *following up*.
11. My *workout* routine is difficult.
12. He *backed up* his accusation with photographs.
13. She wants to *try out*.
14. It *backs* it *up*.
15. It's a *backup*.
16. She *drops* her *off*.
17. It's a *follow-up* appointment.
18. It's not *working out* the way she expected.
19. He took Judy *out*.
20. It *works out* to \$9,000.
21. You've never *woken up* at 3:30 in the morning.

## 11e

1. lay off
2. handed out
3. grew up
4. screwed up
5. go ahead
6. fell off
7. stay off
8. looking for
9. coming from
10. feel up to
11. screw ... out of
12. kick back
13. go along with
14. give ... back
15. fill in
16. heard of

## 12a

1. sign ... out
2. came up
3. put up
4. came across
5. signed out
6. fell through

7. puts up
8. back off
9. fallen through
10. come up
11. put up
12. screw ... on
13. sign in
14. put up
15. screwed ... on
16. put ... up
17. came up
18. come across
19. put up
20. comes across
21. came up
22. put ... up
23. coming up

## 12b

1. He'd *backed off*.
2. He had *signed in*.
3. She'd *fallen through*.
4. He had *put up* a fight.
5. It had *come across* well.
6. She had *put up* the money.
7. He'd said that it was *coming up*.
8. He'd *screwed* it *on*.
9. It was *screwed on*.
10. It had *put* them *up*.
11. Something had *come up*.
12. It had *fallen through*.
13. It had *come up*.
14. They'd *put up* a fence.
15. I had *come across* some old newspapers.
16. He'd *come up* to New York.
17. She had *signed out*.

## 12d

1. pay for
2. followed up
3. thrown up
4. fallen off
5. put to
6. work out
7. drop ... off
8. woke ... up
9. try ... out
10. back up
11. pointed to
12. wrap ... up
13. cut off
14. planned for
15. take out
16. go after

## 13a

1. let ... off
2. called off
3. hit on
4. light up
5. tracked ... down



6. lighting up
7. closed off
8. left off
9. hit on
10. handed in
11. let ... off
12. left off
13. hand in
14. let off
15. hand in

**13b**

1.  
The bride hasn't *called off* the wedding.  
The bride hasn't *called* the wedding *off*.  
The bride hasn't *called* it *off*.
2.  
Are they *closing off* the gallery?  
Are they *closing* the gallery *off*?  
Are they *closing* it *off*?
3.  
The accountant *handed in* her report.  
The accountant *handed* her report *in*.  
The accountant *handed* it *in*.
4.  
Have you *left off* Carmen?  
Have you *left* Carmen *off*?  
Have you *left* her *off*?
5.  
The judge *let off* the pickpocket.  
The judge *let* the pickpocket *off*.  
The judge *let* him *off*.
6.  
I told him not to *light up* the cigarette.  
I told him not to *light* the cigarette *up*.  
I told him not to *light* it *up*.
7.  
The EPA *tracked down* the polluters.  
The EPA *tracked* the polluters *down*.  
The EPA *tracked* them *down*.
- 13c**
1. It was *tracked down*.
2. They were *handed in*.
3. They're always *let off*.
4. She was *hit on*.
5. It was *left off*.
6. It was *called off*.
7. It's being *closed off*.
8. It's *closed off*.
9. It was *lit up*.
10. It was *lit up*.

**13d**

1. burned down
2. taken off

3. talked down to
4. set up
5. screwed out of
6. let out
7. called in
8. pointed out
9. run into
10. piled up
11. given back
12. handed back
13. taken apart
14. planned for
15. run over
16. looked at

**14a**

1. wound up
2. fill ... out
3. put away
4. stick ... up
5. dress up
6. dries up
7. put ... away
8. winding up
9. stuck ... up
10. winding ... up
11. dressed up
12. dries up
13. wind ... up
14. stick up
15. filled out
16. put away
17. stuck up
18. put ... away
19. used ... up
20. butts in

**14b**

1. dried up
2. dressed up
3. filled out
4. stuck-up
5. used up
6. wound up
7. put away

**14c**

1.  
Janice *dressed up* her son.  
Janice *dressed* her son *up*.  
Janice *dressed* him *up*.
2.  
The sun quickly *dries up* the water.  
The sun quickly *dries* the water *up*.  
The sun quickly *dries* it *up*.
3.  
Filling out the form isn't necessary.  
Filling the form out isn't necessary.  
Filling it out isn't necessary.

4.  
Ed *put away* six beers in an hour.  
Ed *put* six beers away in an hour.  
Ed *put* them away in an hour.
5.  
They *stuck up* notices.  
They *stuck* notices *up*.

They *stuck* them *up*.  
6.  
I'm *winding up* my clock.  
I'm *winding* my clock *up*.  
I'm *winding* it *up*.

**14d**

1. He *wound up* in the hospital.
2. She kept *butting in*.
3. It *dried up*.
4. He *put* them *away*.
5. They're *put away*.
6. They're *dried up*.
7. You *wound* it *up*.
8. It is *wound up*.
9. She *dressed up*.
10. She was *dressed up*.
11. He *filled* it *out*.
12. It was *filled out*.
13. He *used* it *up*.
14. It's *used up*.

**14e**

1. hung up
2. paid for
3. hooked up
4. cutoff
5. broken-down
6. set up
7. filled in
8. screwed up
9. caught up
10. worked up
11. grown-up
12. cut up
13. burned-out
14. backed up
15. wake-up
16. piled up

**15a**

1. blew ... away
2. set ... up
3. came through
4. fix ... up
5. tell on
6. comes through
7. heading/headed for
8. fix ... up
9. comes through
10. heading/headed for
11. go with
12. dried out
13. blow ... away
14. come through
15. set ... up
16. go with
17. came through
18. blown away
19. went with
20. came through
21. went with
22. head back
23. go with

**15b**

1. He's going to *fix* you *up* with a table next to the fireplace.
2. She's sure that her father will *come through*.
3. It's going to *blow* him *away*.
4. He'll *fix* it *up*.
5. It will be *fixed up*.
6. He won't *tell on* her.

7. It's going to *blow* them *away*.
8. They won't *come through* it.
9. She'll *fix* herself *up*.
10. She'll be *fixed up*.
11. I'm going to *head for* Tucson.
12. I'm going to *head back* to San Diego.
13. He won't *fix* Mike *up* with his sister.
14. She isn't going to *go with* blue.
15. It's going to *blow away* the competition.
16. He's going to *come through* town.
17. It's going to *dry up*.
18. It'll be *dried up*.

**15d**

1. came up
2. fell through
3. light ... up
4. put up
5. track down
6. lit up
7. closed off
8. screw ... on
9. call ... off
10. back off
11. hand in
12. left ... off
13. sign in
14. signed out
15. let ... off
16. came across

**16a**

1. thinking about
2. carry ... on
3. counting on
4. go for
5. believe in
6. get through
7. count on
8. get through
9. held off
10. put ... past
11. carried on
12. hold off
13. went for
14. going for
15. carry on
16. get ... through
17. believe in
18. carry on
19. believe in
20. get through
21. goes for
22. get through
23. count on

**16b**

1. She *goes for* it.
2. She didn't *get through* studying until 11:00 P.M.
3. They *carried* them *on*.
4. They kept *carry-on* bags with them.
5. She's *thinking about* spending the summer in Bolivia.

6. He doesn't *believe in* it.
7. He couldn't *carry on* his career as a dancer.
8. You *held off* having children.
9. I wouldn't *put* steal-ing *past* him.
10. She's going to try to *get through* to her.
11. I can't *count on* him.
12. He *carried on*.
13. You can't *count on* it.
14. They *believe in* monsters.

**16d**

1. stuck-up
2. fixed up
3. used up
4. put away
5. wound up
6. wrapped up
7. filled out
8. dried up
9. dressed up
10. screwed on
11. closed off
12. lit up

**16e**

1. wound up
2. goes in for
3. put up with
4. looking forward to
5. give up
6. feel up to
7. see ... about
8. get around to
9. get out of
10. get ... over with
11. left off
12. worked out
13. broke down
14. took ... in
15. put ... up
16. broke out
17. butt in

**17a**

1. came over
2. falling apart
3. rip ... up
4. heading/headed into
5. got back at
6. came over
7. worn down
8. go about
9. grow out of
10. falling apart
11. wear ... down
12. fell apart
13. come over
14. grows out of

**17b**

- (any two of the possible sentences shown are acceptable)
1.  
Frequently Ms. Taylor comes over.  
Ms. Taylor frequently comes over.

Ms. Taylor *comes over frequently*.

2. Sometimes these cheap toys *fall apart*. These cheap toys *sometimes fall apart*.

3. Nervously he went about making the bomb. He *nervously went about making the bomb*. He went about making the bomb *nervously*.

4. Eventually Sally will *grow out of* her childish behavior. Sally will *eventually grow out of* her childish behavior. Sally will *grow out of* her childish behavior *eventually*.

5. Reluctantly Jim *headed into* the swamp. Jim *reluctantly headed into* the swamp. Jim *headed reluctantly into* the swamp. Jim *headed into* the swamp *reluctantly*.

6. Suddenly Pat *ripped up* Mike's letter. Pat *suddenly ripped up* Mike's letter. Pat *ripped up* Mike's letter *suddenly*.

7. Soon Frank will *get back at* Todd. Frank will *soon get back at* Todd. Frank will *get back at* Todd *soon*.

8. Gradually he *wore down* my resistance. He *gradually wore down* my resistance. He *wore down* my resistance *gradually*.

**17c**

1. It was *ripped up*.  
2. It was *ripped up*.  
3. It's *falling apart*.  
4. They *came over*.  
5. He doesn't know how to *go about* applying for a mortgage.  
6. We're going to *head into* the city.  
7. She *grew out of* it.  
8. They've *worn down*.  
9. They're *worn down*.

10. He's *gotten back at* you.  
11. They *came over* before Columbus.  
12. She *came over* and looked at my paper.  
13. He *fell apart*.  
14. She'll *grow out of* it soon.  
15. It's *falling apart*.  
16. They're trying to *wear her down*.

**17d**

1. find out  
2. get along  
3. go through with  
4. chickened out of  
5. set up  
6. work in  
7. fight back  
8. came down with  
9. monkey around with  
10. kicking back  
11. heard of  
12. boils down to  
13. come up  
14. fell over  
15. go ahead

**18a**

1. get off  
2. break through  
3. tell ... apart  
4. get off  
5. line up  
6. stood around  
7. goes beyond  
8. get ... off  
9. figured on  
10. get off  
11. lined up  
12. get ... off  
13. broke through  
14. Get off  
15. lift up  
16. get off  
17. line up  
18. Get off

**18b**

1. He said he'd *get it off* the table.  
2. You can't *tell* them apart.  
3. He can't *lift it up*.  
4. He said he hadn't *figured on* snow in May.  
5. She *lined up* a great band.  
6. It's *lined up*.  
7. He said it *goes beyond* that.  
8. They *broke through* it.  
9. He *gets off* at 5:00.  
10. I *got off* with a warning.  
11. He *lined up* the desks.  
12. They're *lined up*.  
13. She asked you to *get off* the phone.

14. You *stood around* waiting for the bus.  
15. He said you'd *get Sundays off*.  
16. They have to be *lined up*.  
17. He *got off* the train.  
18. He told him to *get off* the grass.

**18d**

1. went for  
2. thought about  
3. held off  
4. goes with  
5. came through  
6. counting on  
7. told on  
8. put ... past  
9. come over  
10. goes along with  
11. head for  
12. head back  
13. carried on  
14. get off  
15. grown out of  
16. believe in

**19a**

1. heat ... up  
2. pulled over  
3. bring ... back  
4. cool ... off  
5. go back  
6. brought back  
7. hand over  
8. brought back  
9. aiming at  
10. bring ... over  
11. warm up  
12. aim ... at  
13. handed ... over  
14. cooled off  
15. aimed at  
16. goes back  
17. warm up  
18. went back  
19. cools off  
20. pulled over  
21. warm up

**19b**

1. Could you *bring back* my tool kit.  
Could you *bring* my tool kit *back*.  
Could you *bring it back*.  
2. I'll *bring over* your tool kit.  
I'll *bring* your tool kit *over*.  
I'll *bring it over*.  
3. The air conditioner quickly *cooled off* my apartment.  
The air conditioner quickly *cooled* my apartment *off*.  
The air conditioner quickly *cooled it off*.  
4. Todd *handed over* his wallet.  
Todd *handed* his wallet *over*.  
Todd *handed it over*.

5. The sheriff *pulled over* the suspects. The sheriff *pulled* the suspects *over*. The sheriff *pulled* them *over*.

6. The drivers are *warming up* their trucks. The drivers are *warming* their trucks *up*. The drivers are *warming* them *up*.

**19c**

1. It *warmed* right *up*.  
2. I'll *go* right *back* to work.  
3. It *cooled* right *off*.  
4. You would *pull* right *over*.  
5. He *aimed* it right *at* him.  
6. She told you to *give* it right *back*.  
7. He told her to *hand* it right *over*.  
8. She *brought* it right *over*.

**19d**

1. broke through  
2. standing around  
3. went beyond  
4. track down  
5. headed into  
6. backed off  
7. come up with  
8. hit on  
9. fell through  
10. wind up  
11. tell ... apart  
12. figure on  
13. came across  
14. lifted up  
15. put up  
16. let ... off

**20a**

1. go off  
2. went around  
3. go on  
4. go off  
5. hang around  
6. ended up  
7. lies around  
8. hangs around  
9. start out  
10. go around  
11. stay up  
12. ended up  
13. lying around  
14. went around  
15. go on  
16. goes off  
17. going around  
18. go off  
19. stay up  
20. goes around  
21. hangs around  
22. go around  
23. went on  
24. went around  
25. Go on  
26. go on  
27. went on

28. went around  
29. goes around  
30. go on

**20b**

1. I'm going to *lie around* watching TV.  
2. She *went around* making decorating plans.  
3. It *ended up* in Australia.  
4. It *goes off* at 2:00.  
5. He asked, "What's *going on*?"  
6. He *goes around* telling awful jokes.  
7. She *stayed up* all night.  
8. He *hangs around* the house.  
9. It didn't *go off*.  
10. He *went around* wearing a Hawaiian shirt.  
11. They *go on* automatically.  
12. They didn't get a hot dog because I didn't buy enough to *go around*.  
13. You have to *go around* the potholes.  
14. You *ended up* buying the red car.  
15. You couldn't *go on*.  
16. She *started out* thinking it would take only a few weeks.

**20d**

1. screwed ... out of  
2. cooled off  
3. ripped ... up  
4. blow ... away  
5. gave up  
6. work up  
7. paid for  
8. heard of  
9. came over  
10. called off  
11. see ... about  
12. go about  
13. dry out  
14. aimed at  
15. broke out  
16. bring ... over

**21a**

1. take ... out on  
2. step on  
3. picking on  
4. looked around  
5. settling down  
6. looked over  
7. settle ... down  
8. zip ... up  
9. settled down  
10. look around  
11. think ahead  
12. step on

**21b**

1. He ought to *look it over*.  
2. I *looked around*.



3. They *settled down*.  
 4. I should *zip it up*.  
 5. It's *zipped up*.  
 6. She didn't *think ahead*.  
 7. He *picks on* him.  
 8. He *took it out on* her.  
 9. He *stepped on it*.  
**21c**  
 1. Business in this restaurant *should/ought to fall off* in January.  
 2. They *should/ought to be winding up* the investigation.  
 3. These cheap shoes *shouldn't hold up* more than three months.  
 4. Jim flies from Florida to Boston every year in April, and it's April now. Jim *should/ought to come up to* Boston soon.  
 5. It almost always gets cooler in October, and it's October 1st today, so it *should/ought to cool off* soon.  
 6. Raul's disease is not serious, so he *should/ought to pull through*.  
 7. Francisco almost never works past 5:00, and it's 4:50 now. He *should/ought to get off* in a few minutes.  
 8. Lydia likes skiing a lot, so if you suggest that we go skiing next weekend, she *should/ought to go for* the idea.  
 9. The enemy soldiers have been trying to smash a hole in the wall of the fort for two hours, and they *should/ought to break through* soon.  
 10. Sally said she would come to my house at 5:30 and it's 5:40 now. She *should/ought to come over* soon.  
 11. This work normally takes four hours to finish, so if you start at 9:00 you *should/ought to get through* around 1:00.  
 12. The train almost always passes through town at 3:25, and it's 3:20 now, so the train *should/ought to come through* town in five minutes.  
 13. I put a lot of wood on the fire, so it *shouldn't burn out* before morning.  
 14. The car heater is on maximum, so it *should/ought to warm up* soon.  
**21d**  
 1. went around  
 2. Hand ... over  
 3. goes off  
 4. pull over  
 5. line up  
 6. stayed up  
 7. falls apart  
 8. get back at  
 9. started out  
 10. hang around  
 11. end up  
 12. brought back  
 13. lie around  
 14. go on  
 15. rang up  
 16. go back  
**22a**  
 1. eat up  
 2. plug ... up  
 3. burns ... up  
 4. clear ... up  
 5. pay up  
 6. cleared up  
 7. count up  
 8. cleared up  
 9. burn up  
 10. wipe up  
 11. heat ... up  
 12. burn up  
 13. ate up  
**22b**  
 1. They *burned up* the wood.  
 They *burned* the wood *up*.  
 They *burned it up*.  
 2. He ought to *clear up* the misunderstanding.  
 He ought to *clear* the misunderstanding *up*.  
 He ought to *clear it up*.  
 3. Would you *count up* the votes?  
 Would you *count* the votes *up*?  
 Would you *count them up*?  
 4. Have they *eaten up* all the candy?  
 Have they *eaten* all the candy *up*?  
 Have they *eaten it up*?  
 5. I can't *plug up* the hole.  
 I can't *plug* the hole *up*.  
 I can't *plug it up*.  
 6. *Wipe up* that water right now!  
*Wipe* that water *up* right now!  
*Wipe it up* right now!  
**22c**  
 1. I *plugged* it *up*.  
 2. It's *plugged up*.  
 3. You're *heating it up*.  
 4. It'll be *heated up*.  
 5. He hasn't *counted up* his money.  
 6. I'll *pay it up*.  
 7. It'll be *paid up*.  
 8. They *burned them up*.  
 9. They're *burned up*.  
 10. It *cleared* right *up*.  
 11. She's *wiping it up*.  
 12. He *eats* his food right *up*.  
**22d**  
 1. count on  
 2. go with  
 3. Think ahead  
 4. signed in  
 5. signed out  
 6. put away  
 7. hand ... in  
 8. go with  
 9. dress up  
 10. looked around  
 11. step on  
 12. dry up  
 13. Zip up  
 14. takes ... out on  
 15. heading/headed for  
 16. head back  
**23a**  
 1. make ... up  
 2. Watch out  
 3. cut down  
 4. cut down  
 5. Stay out  
 6. hold out  
 7. made up  
 8. drop out  
 9. make up  
 10. crack down  
 11. got away  
 12. hold ... out  
 13. gotten away  
 14. stay out  
 15. holding out  
 16. make up  
 17. gotten away  
 18. get away  
 19. stayed out  
 20. cuts ... down  
 21. hold out  
 22. made up  
 23. make ... up  
**23b**  
 1. on  
 2. on  
 3. of  
 4. with  
 5. for  
 6. for  
 7. of  
**23c**  
 1. They're *holding out* for a 10 percent raise.  
 2. They're *holdouts*.  
 3. They *made up*.  
 4. He *dropped out*.  
 5. He's a *dropout*.  
 6. I *made up* my mind.  
 7. She told me to *cut down* on tennis.  
 8. They're *holding out*.  
 9. They're *holdouts*.  
 10. They *stayed out* until 3:00 A.M.  
 11. It has to *hold out*.  
 12. He *made up* a story.  
 13. It was *made-up*.  
 14. He has *gotten away* with it.  
 15. I have to *watch out* for big trucks.  
 16. They're going to *crack down* on crime.  
 17. It's a *crackdown*.  
**23d**  
 1. grown out of  
 2. hold off  
 3. wipe up  
 4. think about  
 5. get through  
 6. tell ... apart  
 7. break through  
 8. counted up  
 9. aimed at  
 10. falling apart  
 11. went for  
 12. put past  
 13. burned up  
 14. believes in  
 15. stand around  
 16. come over  
**24a**  
 1. slow down  
 2. Shake up  
 3. come down  
 4. traded ... in  
 5. come down  
 6. Stopping over  
 7. shaken up  
 8. showed ... off  
 9. let up  
 10. come down  
 11. print ... out  
 12. shook ... up  
 13. stop over  
**24b**  
 1. shake-up  
 2. stopover  
 3. comedown  
 4. letup  
 5. trade-ins  
 6. slowdown  
 7. printout  
 8. show-off  
**24c**  
 1. The rain *slowed down* traffic.  
 The rain *slowed* traffic *down*.  
 The rain *slowed it down*.  
 2. He *printed out* his letter.  
 He *printed* his letter *out*.  
 He *printed it out*.  
 3. The bad news has *shaken up* Jim and Nancy.  
 The bad news has *shaken* Jim and Nancy *up*.  
 The bad news has *shaken* them *up*.  
 4. I got \$5,000 for *trading in* my old car.  
 I got \$5,000 for *trading* my old car *in*.  
 I got \$5,000 for *trading it in*.  
 5. Chelsea's parents *showed off* her perfect report card.  
 Chelsea's parents *showed* her perfect report card *off*.  
 Chelsea's parents *showed it off*.  
**24d**  
 1. You *printed* them *out*.  
 2. It's a *printout*.  
 3. He's going to *come down* to New Orleans.  
 4. He *shows off*.  
 5. He's a *show-off*.  
 6. You'll *trade it in*.  
 7. It's a *trade-in*.  
 8. He *shook things up*.  
 9. It was a *shake-up*.  
 10. She's *come down* in life.  
 11. It was a *comedown*.  
 12. It *let up*.  
 13. It was a *letup*.  
 14. It *slowed it down*.  
 15. It was a *slowdown*.  
 16. I *stopped over*.  
 17. It was a *stopover*.  
 18. It *shook him up*.  
 19. He was *shaken up*.  
**24e**  
 1. follow-up  
 2. crackdown  
 3. dropout  
 4. lineup  
 5. tryout  
 6. workout  
 7. backup  
 8. drop-off  
**24f**  
 1. stay out  
 2. lift ... up  
 3. goes beyond  
 4. told on  
 5. watch out  
 6. figure on  
 7. cool ... off  
 8. holding out  
 9. bring ... over  
 10. look around  
 11. settle down  
 12. step on  
 13. counted up  
 14. wipe up  
 15. hung up



## 25a

- hurry up
- settle for
- had ... on
- lighten up
- knocked ... over
- do with
- plan ahead
- think up
- hurry ... up
- lighten ... up
- have ... on

## 25b

- He *had* a red shirt *on*.
- He won't *settle for* less.
- She's *planning ahead*.
- He *knocked* him *over*.
- He told him to *hurry up*.
- It had to *do with* my income taxes.
- He should *lighten up*.
- She's *thinking up* a Halloween costume.

## 25d

- zipped up
- warmed up
- cleared up
- dried up
- made-up
- paid up
- shaken up
- ripped up
- lined up
- warmed up
- plugged up
- burned up
- worn down

## 25e

- come down
- hook up
- screw ... on
- show off
- called in
- stops over
- trade in
- stuck ... up
- cleared up
- let up
- warm up
- slow down
- hand out
- print ... out
- gone back

## 26a

- get ... together
- start ... up
- go over
- open ... up
- went up
- put ... together
- shut off
- go up
- let ... in on
- go over
- goes up
- go over
- put ... together
- opens up

- goes up
- go over
- get ... together
- gets together
- went over
- open ... up
- Put ... together
- goes up
- start up

## 26b

- I wish they would *open up* a branch office near me.
- I wish they would *open* a branch office *up* near me.
- I wish they would *open* one *up* near me.
- Lydia *put together* the food processor.
- Lydia *put* the food processor *together*.
- Lydia *put* it *together*.
- Do you know how to *shut off* the photocopier?
- Do you know how to *shut* the photocopier *off*?
- Do you know how to *shut* it *off*?

- Push this button to *start up* the generator.
- Push this button to *start* the generator *up*.
- Push this button to *start* it *up*.

## 26c

- He *went over* it.
- He gave it a good *going-over*.
- She *went up* to the king and gave him the petition.
- He *let you in on* a secret.
- They're going to *get together*.
- It's called a *get-together*.
- It *starts up* from the hard disk.
- It's the *start-up* disk.
- It *went over* well.
- It *shuts off* automatically.
- It's called the *shutoff* point or the *shutoff* temperature.
- I quit my job so that I could *start up* my own company.
- It's a *start-up* company.
- I *put* it *together*.
- It *goes up* to December 31.
- It *opens up*.

## 26d

- settle for
- lighten up
- knocked ... over
- ended up
- hurry up
- takes ... out on
- looked ... over
- Put ... on
- plan ahead
- gone off
- picked on
- think up
- do with
- showing off
- go on
- have ... on

## 27a

- tore ... off
- wiped ... off
- knock off
- dries off
- bite ... off
- wear off
- wash ... off
- knocked off
- broke off
- Knock ... off
- worn off
- broke down
- knock off
- wore off
- knock ... off

## 27b

- Alex has *bitten off* the head of the gingerbread man.
- Alex has *bitten* the head of the gingerbread man *off*.
- Alex has *bitten* it *off*.
- The movers *broke off* the cup handle.
- The movers *broke* the cup handle right *off*.
- The movers *broke* it right *off*.
- Please *dry off* the dishes.
- Please *dry* the dishes *off*.
- Please *dry* them *off*.
- Don't *knock off* the ashtray.
- Don't *knock* the ashtray *off*.
- Don't *knock* it *off*.
- Can I *tear off* these mattress tags?
- Can I *tear* these mattress tags *off*?
- Can I *tear* them *off*?
- The janitor *washed off* the blood.
- The janitor *washed* the blood right *off*.
- The janitor *washed* it right *off*.

- She didn't *wipe off* the milk.
- She didn't *wipe* the milk *off*.
- She didn't *wipe* it *off*.

## 27c

- You *washed* it *off*.
- He *broke* them *off*.
- They're *broken off*.
- It *bit* it right *off*.
- It *wore off*.
- It's *worn off*.
- You *knocked* it *off*.
- I *wiped* it *off*.
- It's *wiped off*.
- I have to *dry* it *off*.
- It's *dried off*.
- I *tore* it *off*.
- It's *torn off*.

## 27d

- cut off
- pay up
- let up
- thought ahead
- cleared ... up
- go over
- put ... together
- came down
- opened up
- ate ... up
- heats ... up
- gone up
- let ... in on
- trade ... in
- started up
- plugged ... up

## 28a

- break up
- messed ... up
- give ... away
- beef up
- call ... up
- carried out
- stand up
- broke up
- messed ... up
- stood ... up
- broke ... up
- carry ... out
- broke up
- call ... back
- given ... away
- broke up
- called ... back
- give ... away

## 28b

- The White House *beefed up* security.
- The White House *beefed* security *up*.
- The White House *beefed* it *up*.
- The police are *breaking up* the protest.
- The police are *breaking* the protest *up*.
- The police are *breaking* it *up*.

- A trained technician ought to *carry out* the experiment.
- A trained technician ought to *carry* the experiment *out*.
- A trained technician ought to *carry* it *out*.
- The foundation *gave away* the money.
- The foundation *gave* the money *away*.
- The foundation *gave* it *away*.
- Susie always *messes up* the bathroom.
- Susie always *messes* the bathroom *up*.
- Susie always *messes* it *up*.

- Todd *stood up* Heather.
- Todd *stood* Heather *up*.
- Todd *stood* her *up*.

## 28c

- It will be *carried out* by Dr. Wood.
- It was *broken up*.
- It was *messed up*.
- It was *messed up*.
- He was *stood up*.
- She wasn't *called back*.
- It was *given away*.
- It's being *beefed up*.
- It's *beefed up*.
- They'll be *called up*.

## 28d

- backed up
- torn down
- used ... up
- woken up
- taken in
- taken out
- blown away
- torn down
- laid off
- cut off
- ripped up
- held up
- handed out
- held up
- dropped off
- tracked down

## 29a

- make ... out
- look out
- coming apart
- make ... out
- drop in
- flip out
- made out
- ran across
- asking for
- lucked out
- ask for
- made ... out
- I *flipped out*.
- He might *ask* Santa Claus *for* a new bicycle.

## 29b

- I *flipped out*.
- He might *ask* Santa Claus *for* a new bicycle.

3. You *ran across* your college roommate.  
 4. He *made* the check out to Fred Baker.  
 5. It's *made out*.  
 6. You might *drop in* on her.  
 7. It's *coming apart*.  
 8. I *lucked out*.  
 9. You can't *make it out*.  
 10. He told her to *look out* for cars.
- 29d**  
 1. cutoff  
 2. warm-up  
 3. fixer-upper  
 4. takeout  
 5. holdouts  
 6. crackdown  
 7. start-ups  
 8. shutoff  
 9. handover  
 10. stickup
- 29e**  
 1. lighten up  
 2. stood ... up  
 3. messed ... up  
 4. settle for  
 5. do with  
 6. gave ... away  
 7. call ... up  
 8. call ... back  
 9. broke up  
 10. dry off  
 11. carry out  
 12. knock ... off  
 13. went over  
 14. zip ... up  
 15. go up  
 16. think up
- 30a**  
 1. locked ... out  
 2. put out  
 3. locked ... in  
 4. put ... out  
 5. sort ... out  
 6. punched ... in  
 7. put out  
 8. wash up  
 9. punched out  
 10. put ... out  
 11. lock in  
 12. locked out  
 13. spaced out  
 14. sorted out  
 15. put ... out  
 16. washed up  
 17. put ... out  
 18. put out
- 30b**  
 1. He *locked in* the crazy guy.  
 He *locked* the crazy guy *in*.  
 He *locked* him *in*.  
 2. Jim *locked out* his wife.  
 Jim *locked* his wife *out*.  
 Jim *locked* her *out*.  
 3. Did you *punch in* Rosa?  
 Did you *punch* Rosa *in*?  
 Did you *punch* her *in*?
4. Would you *punch out* Linda and Erik?  
 Would you *punch* Linda and Erik *out*?  
 Would you *punch* them *out*?  
 5. They couldn't *put out* the fire.  
 They couldn't *put* the fire *out*.  
 They couldn't *put* it *out*.  
 6. The bright lights *spaced out* Janice.  
 The bright lights *spaced* Janice *out*.  
 The bright lights *spaced* her *out*.
- 30c**  
 1. punched out  
 2. locked in  
 3. sorted out  
 4. locked out  
 5. sorted out  
 6. spaced-out  
 7. put out  
 8. punched in
- 30d**  
 1. You *put* it *out*.  
 2. You're going to *lock* them *out*.  
 3. They're *locked out*.  
 4. He *spaced out*.  
 5. He is *spaced-out*.  
 6. She told you to *wash up*.  
 7. It's *put out*.  
 8. She *punched* him *in*.  
 9. He's *punched in*.  
 10. I should *sort* them *out*.  
 11. They're *sorted out*.  
 12. You *locked* him *in*.  
 13. He's *locked in*.  
 14. He was *put out*.  
 15. He was *put out*.  
 16. They can't *punch out* before 4:30.  
 17. They're *punched out*.  
 18. She didn't *put* herself *out*.
- 30e**  
 1. messed up  
 2. beefed-up  
 3. shut off  
 4. worn off  
 5. torn off  
 6. washed off  
 7. closed off  
 8. made out  
 9. lit up  
 10. broken off  
 11. wiped off  
 12. dried off  
 13. made-up
- 30f**  
 1. Dropping out  
 2. filled out  
 3. trade ... in  
 4. standing up  
 5. had ... on
6. asked ... for  
 7. hurry up  
 8. knock ... over  
 9. opened up  
 10. wash ... off  
 11. wipe ... off  
 12. carries out  
 13. drop in  
 14. working out  
 15. headed into  
 16. made ... out  
 17. butt in
- 31a**  
 1. ruled out  
 2. cut out  
 3. do away with  
 4. cut ... out  
 5. do without  
 6. put off  
 7. care for  
 8. look into  
 9. done away with  
 10. cut out  
 11. care for  
 12. cut out  
 13. planned on  
 14. put off  
 15. planning on
- 31b**  
 1. I *put* it *off*.  
 2. He *cut out* acting like such a big shot.  
 3. He said that nothing has been *ruled out*.  
 4. They don't *care for* him.  
 5. It *did away with* child labor.  
 6. I'll have to *do without* it.  
 7. You're going to *look into* having it painted.  
 8. You can *plan on* freezing to death.  
 9. She was *put off*.  
 10. She was *put off*.  
 11. They suspected that he had been *done away with* by a coworker.  
 12. He *cut* it *out*.  
 13. He *cared* for it.
- 31d**  
 1. go about  
 2. make out  
 3. made up  
 4. coming apart  
 5. get back at  
 6. lucked out  
 7. beefed up  
 8. cut down  
 9. flipped out  
 10. ran across  
 11. crack down  
 12. asking for  
 13. get away  
 14. drop in  
 15. got off  
 16. look out
- 32a**  
 1. fell out  
 2. came out
3. coming out  
 4. sticking out  
 5. comes out  
 6. went out  
 7. stick ... out  
 8. cleaned ... out  
 9. left out  
 10. Go out  
 11. empty ... out  
 12. come out  
 13. go out  
 14. come out  
 15. clear ... out  
 16. fell out  
 17. come out  
 18. clear out  
 19. came out  
 20. emptied out  
 21. going out  
 22. stick ... out  
 23. go out  
 24. coming out  
 25. cleaned ... out  
 26. come out  
 27. come out  
 28. clean ... out  
 29. sticks out
- 32b**  
 1. of  
 2. of  
 3. to  
 4. with  
 5. for/in favor of  
 6. against  
 7. with, over  
 8. of  
 9. to  
 10. with  
 11. of
- 32c**  
 1. My son *cleaned out* the basement.  
 My son *cleaned* the basement *out*.  
 My son *cleaned* it *out*.  
 2. I need to *clear out* the storeroom.  
 I need to *clear* the storeroom *out*.  
 I need to *clear* it *out*.  
 3. Sarah *emptied out* the boxes.  
 Sarah *emptied* the boxes *out*.  
 Sarah *emptied* them *out*.  
 4. The factory *left out* an important part.  
 The factory *left* an important part *out*.  
 The factory *left* it *out*.  
 5. Don't *stick out* your neck.  
 Don't *stick* your neck *out*.  
 Don't *stick* it *out*.
- 32d**  
 1. It's *coming out*.  
 2. They *cleared out*.  
 3. It *cleared out*.  
 4. You're going to *go out* with her.
5. He didn't *come out* of the battle alive.  
 6. You *left* him *out*.  
 7. He feels *left out*.  
 8. It *cleaned* me *out*.  
 9. They *came out* with a new CD.  
 10. He *sticks out*.  
 11. They *came out for/in* favor of the Republican candidate.  
 12. He *fell out* with him.  
 13. They had a *falling-out*.
- 32e**  
 1. cut ... out  
 2. do without  
 3. sort ... out  
 4. spaced out  
 5. watch out  
 6. punch ... in  
 7. look into  
 8. holding out  
 9. put out  
 10. punch out  
 11. do away with  
 12. rule ... out  
 13. wash up  
 14. lock in  
 15. care for  
 16. put off
- 33a**  
 1. help ... out  
 2. catch on  
 3. fall behind  
 4. pulled ... off  
 5. blow up  
 6. goofs around  
 7. blow up  
 8. come about  
 9. pulled over  
 10. fall behind  
 11. know about  
 12. catch on  
 13. Blow up  
 14. caught on  
 15. fall behind  
 16. knows about  
 17. blow ... up
- 33b**  
 1. at  
 2. over  
 3. to  
 4. in  
 5. with
- 33c**  
 1. It didn't *catch on*.  
 2. She's *helping* him *out*.  
 3. They *pulled* it *off*.  
 4. He *goofs around*.  
 5. They *blow* them *up*.  
 6. He *blows up*.  
 7. She *knows about* it.  
 8. They *fell behind*.  
 9. She asked me to explain how the situation *came about*.  
 1. rule ... out  
 2. put off



3. put out
4. look into
5. came out
6. fell out
7. spaced out
8. go around
9. cut out
10. plan on
11. sorted ... out
12. gave ... away
13. do without
14. sticks ... out
15. empty ... out
16. go out

## 34a

1. stick to
2. floating around
3. stick around
4. take ... back
5. led up to
6. take ... back
7. stick to
8. taken back
9. put ... up to
10. stick to
11. stands for
12. took ... back
13. stick ... to
14. took ... back
15. stands for
16. take ... back
17. stand for
18. do ... over
19. leading up to
20. take ... back
21. going around

## 34b

1. STICK to
2. FLOATING around
3. stick AROUND
4. take ... BACK
5. led UP to
6. take ... BACK
7. STICK to
8. taken BACK
9. put ... UP to
10. STICK to
11. STANDS for
12. took ... BACK
13. STICK ... to
14. took ... BACK
15. STANDS for
16. take ... BACK
17. STANDS for
18. do ... OVER
19. leading UP to
20. take ... BACK
21. going AROUND

## 34c

1. She *took it back*.
2. They *led up to it*.
3. I've *done it over*.
4. You *took it back*.
5. He *sticks to it*.
6. He won't *stand for it*.
7. It *took him back*.
8. He *stuck around*.
9. It's been *floating around*.
10. She asked you what "Ph.D." *stands for*.
11. He *put you up to it*.

## 34d

1. came out

2. came about
3. wears off
4. shake ... up
5. plan ahead
6. get together
7. goofs around
8. put together
9. bitten off
10. fell behind
11. stayed out
12. caught on
13. let ... in on
14. stop over
15. pull ... off
16. print ... out

## 35a

1. left ... behind
2. tricked ... into
3. went by
4. living with
5. narrowed ... down
6. make of
7. holds against
8. fooling around
9. goes by
10. Living with
11. Leaving ... behind
12. fooled around
13. went by
14. fool around
15. live with
16. go by
17. left behind
18. go by

## 35b

1. She'll have to learn to *live with it*.
2. You *hold it against* him.
3. They're *fooling around*.
4. He has to *live with* them.
5. He *narrowed it down*.
6. I *fool around*.
7. He *tricked her into* giving him money.
8. She asked him what he *made of* the test results.
9. It *went by* you.
10. They're going to *leave her behind*.
11. It *went by* quickly.

## 35d

1. lucked out
2. lay around
3. flip out
4. stayed up
5. stand for
6. take back
7. hangs out
8. lead up to
9. messed up
10. do ... over
11. broke up
12. floating around
13. coming apart
14. stick around
15. ended up
16. run across

## 36a

1. puts down
2. calmed down

3. goes down
4. run down
5. fell down
6. sit down
7. ran over
8. go down
9. put down
10. backed down
11. goes down
12. lay ... down
13. sat ... down
14. put ... down
15. calm down
16. go down
17. lay down
18. gone down
19. Put ... down
20. run down
21. went down
22. Putting ... down
23. run down

## 36b

1. The jockey *calmed down* the horse.
- The jockey *calmed* the horse *down*.
- The jockey *calmed it down*.
2. The mechanic *laid down* her tools.
- The mechanic *laid* her tools *down*.
- The mechanic *laid* them *down*.

3. I *put down* my books.
- I *put* my books *down*.
- I *put* them *down*.

4. The taxi *ran down* the traffic cop.
- The taxi *ran* the traffic cop *down*.
- The taxi *ran* him *down*.

## 36c

1. He *ran down* the list.
2. He gave me a *run-down* of the car's options.
3. He *calmed it down*.
4. It's *rundown*.
5. It *went down* well.
6. He *put her down*.
7. It was a *put-down*.
8. He *sat down*.
9. It *backed down*.
10. She *put my name down*.
11. They *laid* them *down*.
12. I *fell down*.

## 36d

1. spaced-out
2. torn off
3. paid up
4. punched in
5. burned up
6. punched out
7. plugged up
8. locked in
9. locked out

10. shaken up
11. sorted out
12. left out
13. put out
14. cleaned out
15. emptied out
- 36e**
1. washed up
2. care for
3. caught on
4. came about
5. stuck to
6. make out
7. locked ... out
8. make of
9. put ... off
10. pulled ... off
11. did without
12. went out
13. blew up
14. planning on
15. cleaned ... out
16. narrowed ... down

## 37a

1. cover ... up
2. cover ... up
3. brush ... off
4. pay off
5. comes on
6. let ... down
7. came on
8. talk to
9. Hanging out
10. brushed ... off
11. pay ... off
12. comes on
13. coming on
14. left over
15. coming on
16. paying off

## 37b

1. payoff
2. leftovers
3. letdown
4. brush-off
5. payoff
6. come-on
7. cover-up
8. hangout
9. talking-to

## 37c

1. He *hangs out* there.
2. It's a *hangout*.
3. You told him to *come off it*.
4. I had \$100 *left over*.
5. It *comes on*.
6. He *let her down*.
7. She's going to *pay it off*.
8. It's *paid off*.
9. She *talked to* him.
10. She gave him a *talking-to*.
11. It *comes on*.
12. I ate *leftovers*.
13. He *paid him off*.
14. It was a *payoff*.
15. He tried to *cover* them *up*.
16. It was a *cover-up*.
17. He *brushed her off*.

18. He gave her the *brush-off*.
19. He said, "*Come on*."
20. It was a *letdown*.
21. You felt *let down*.

## 37d

1. put-down
2. breakup
3. get-together
4. grown-ups
5. lockout
6. blowup
7. lookout
8. giveaway
9. going-over
10. cutouts
11. rundown

## 37e

1. hold ... against
2. narrowed ... down
3. emptied ... out
4. go by
5. caught on
6. pulled ... off
7. make of
8. fool around
9. leave ... behind
10. done away with
11. Living with
12. calmed down
13. fall down
14. go down
15. put ... down
16. sit down

## 38a

1. keep from
2. keep ... to
3. kept ... up
4. Keep at
5. keeping ... down
6. keep off
7. keep to
8. keep up
9. keep ... away
10. keep up
11. keep up
12. keep ... off
13. keep up
14. keep ... down
15. keep ... from
16. keep on
17. keep ... on
18. keep ... to
19. keep away

## 38b

1. He asked you to *keep it down*.
2. You asked her to *keep it to* \$4,000.
3. You can't *keep from* falling asleep.
4. You have to *keep at it*.
5. It's hard to *keep up* with the political situation in Washington.
6. She *kept on* running.
7. I've got to *keep away*.
8. She thinks he's *keeping something from* her.



8. stop off
9. grosses ... out
10. Shut up
11. ran up
12. blown out
13. given out
14. ran up

## 43b

1. of
  2. to
  3. on
  4. to
  5. in
  6. at
- 43c**
1. The wind *blew out* the candle.
  - The wind *blew* the candle *out*.
  - The wind *blew* it *out*.
  2. They might have *given out* the information.
  - They might have *given* the information *out*.
  - They might have *given* it *out*.
  3. She *ran up* a \$4,000 bill.
  - She *ran* a \$4,000 bill *up*.
  - She *ran* it *up*.
  4. Can I *try on* these pants?
  - Can I *try* these pants *on*?
  - Can I *try* them *on*?
  5. The smell may have *grossed out* everyone.
  - The smell may have *grossed* everyone *out*.
  - The smell may have *grossed* them *out*.

## 43d

1. She should have *tried* it *on*.
2. It *gave out*.
3. It was a *run-up*.
4. It must have *grossed* him *out*.
5. He must have been *grossed out*.
6. They *ran up* to her.
7. She wouldn't have *headed toward* Detroit.
8. She *blew* it *out*.
9. *Shutting him up* is nearly impossible.
10. She asked him how he could have *run up* such a large credit card bill.
11. He *stopped off* in Denver.
12. You had a *blowout*.

## 43e

1. leftover
2. chopped up
3. covered up
4. rundown
5. broken in

6. paid off
7. let down
8. crossed off
9. checked in
10. checked out
11. sold out
12. plugged in
13. filled up
14. straightened out
15. put off

## 43f

1. sneaked into
2. sneak out
3. keep off
4. coming back
5. go into
6. kept ... on
7. get back
8. gotten behind
9. keep from
10. Keep at
11. keep ... to
12. burst out
13. keep up
14. wiped out
15. keep ... away
16. kept ... down

## 44a

1. locked ... up
2. carried away
3. pisses ... off
4. stressing ... out
5. kicked out
6. beat up
7. mix ... up
8. lock up
9. ripped ... off
10. mixes ... up

## 44b

1. The thugs *beat up* the woman.
- The thugs *beat* the woman *up*.
- The thugs *beat* her *up*.
2. The hotel manager *kicked out* the rock group.
- The hotel manager *kicked* the rock group *out*.
- The hotel manager *kicked* them *out*.
3. The cops are going to *lock up* the crook.
- The cops are going to *lock* the crook *up*.
- The cops are going to *lock* her *up*.

4. *Mixing up* the twins is easy.
- Mixing* the twins *up* is easy.
- Mixing* them *up* is easy.
5. Getting a tattoo must have *pissed off* your father.
- Getting a tattoo must have *pissed* your father *off*.

Getting a tattoo must have *pissed* him *off*.

6. The contractor was accused of *ripping off* homeowners.

The contractor was accused of *ripping* homeowners *off*.

The contractor was accused of *ripping* them *off*.

7. All these problems are *stressing out* the staff.

All these problems are *stressing* the staff *out*.

All these problems are *stressing* them *out*.

## 44c

1. He *ripped* him *off*.
2. It was a *rip-off*.
3. She's going to *kick* them *out*.
4. I *locked up*.
5. It's *locked up*.
6. It's easy to *mix* them *up*.
7. It *pissed* him *off*.
8. He was *pissed off*.
9. She's *mixed up*.
10. It's *stressing* me *out*.
11. I'm *stressed-out*.
12. They were *beat up*.
13. He was *locked up*.
14. He was *locked up*.
15. She got *carried away*.
16. They *beat* him *up*.
17. I have to *mix* them *up*.

## 44d

1. cover ... up
2. paid off
3. takes over
4. keep ... down
5. keep on
6. broken in
7. keep away
8. bringing ... up
9. keep from
10. stuck ... with
11. keep ... off
12. keep ... to
13. help ... out
14. kept at
15. put ... up to
16. keep ... up

## 45a

1. turn out
2. turn in
3. turned ... off
4. turns over
5. turned on
6. turn ... in
7. turned in
8. turned up
9. turn ... into
10. turn ... on
11. turn ... up
12. turn ... down
13. turn ... off
14. turned ... on

15. turn over
16. turn up
17. turning in
18. turn off
19. turned ... on
20. turned down
21. turning out
22. turn ... over
23. turn out
24. turning out
25. turn in
26. turning out
27. turn ... in

## 45b

1. They *turn into* butterflies.
2. He *turned up*.
3. It *turned* him *off*.
4. He thinks it's a *turnoff*.
5. He was *turned off*.
6. It *turns* you *on*.
7. You think it's a *turn-on*.
8. You feel *turned on*.
9. I'm *turning* it *up*.
10. *Turnover* is very low.
11. It *turns out* 25,000 cars every year.
12. She didn't *turn* it *up*.
13. She hasn't *turned up* anything.
14. It was *turned into* a Chinese restaurant.
15. It *turned out* orange.
16. She couldn't *turn* him *down*.
17. It will probably *turn over* \$4 million.
18. He hasn't *turned* his paper *in*.
19. She's not going to *turn* him *in*.
20. There wasn't enough room because so many people *turned out*.
21. The *turnout* was large.
22. He *turned* it *over*.

## 45d

1. get ... back
2. ran up
3. gotten up
4. tried ... on
5. Get out
6. get there
7. grossing ... out
8. get into
9. head toward
10. get out
11. lock up
12. beaten up
13. stopped off
14. getting behind
15. getting over
16. carried away

## 46a

1. talk ... into
2. build in
3. bump into
4. freak out
5. talk ... out of
6. conned ... into

7. bumped into
8. make for
9. con ... out of
10. made for

## 46b

1. She's trying to *talk* you *into* helping her paint her house.
2. He *bumped into* Raul.
3. He's trying to *con* me *out of* everything I own.
4. It will *make for* an uncomfortable evening.
5. He *conned* her *into* selling him her house for a lot less than it's worth.
6. She's *freaking out*.
7. A shelf was *built into* it.
8. It's *built-in*.
9. No one can *talk* him *out of* quitting his job.

## 46d

1. lockup
2. comeback
3. wipeout
4. Check-in
5. checkout
6. mix-up
7. break-in
8. pickup
9. takeover
10. run-up
11. blowout

## 47a

1. run out
2. put ... into
3. pull out
4. comes in
5. cut back
6. ran out
7. moving into
8. put ... in
9. brush up
10. move in
11. comes in
12. putting ... in
13. put in
14. come in
15. move out
16. runs out
17. put ... in
18. coming in



# THE

# ULTIMATE

# PHRASAL VERB BOOK

**SECOND EDITION**

Updated to reflect questions found on various recent ESL tests, this book presents 400 common phrasal verbs as they are used in everyday English. Phrasal verbs are verbs combined with prepositions or adverbs. Becoming familiar with phrasal verbs and understanding how they are commonly used as nouns (for example, "breakup" and "show-off"), or as adjectives ("spaced-out, broken-down, stressed-out" and many others) is essential to speaking and understanding modern English. Students preparing for the TOEFL or other ESL exams will find this book's many examples and exercises especially helpful.

**BARRON'S**

ISBN-13: 978-0-7641-4120-1  
ISBN-10: 0-7641-4120-1

EAN  5 1499 >

9 780764 141201

**\$14.99** Canada **\$17.99**  
[www.barronseduc.com](http://www.barronseduc.com)